

AUTHENTIC CHINESE

课本 2 Textbook



真|实|中|文

Miao-Fen Tseng 曾妙芬 ◎主编

Junyao Wu
Ying-Sin Chen
Shi Jiang
Jia Xu
Luoyi Cai

吴君瑶
陈盈心
蒋诗 ◎编著
徐嘉
蔡罗一



PHOENIX
TREE
PUBLISHING INC.

AUTHENTIC CHINESE

课本 2 Textbook



真|实|中|文

Miao-Fen Tseng 曾妙芬 ◎主编

Junyao Wu
Ying-Sin Chen
Shi Jiang
Jia Xu
Luoyi Cai

吴君瑶
陈盈心
蒋诗 ◎编著
徐嘉
蔡罗一



PHOENIX
TREE
PUBLISHING INC.

Published by Phoenix Tree Publishing Inc.
Copyright © 2024 Miao-Fen Tseng et al.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, sold, or used in any form or by any means including but not limit to photocopying, recording, offline and online distribution, translating, archiving or storing or using in electronic or mechanical methods for display, or in any other manner, without prior written permission from the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

Phoenix Tree Publishing Inc., headquartered in Chicago, Illinois, U.S.A., has the exclusive rights to publish, sell, distribute, communicate, display, transmit, and reproduce this publication worldwide.

Authentic Chinese Textbook 2

By Miao-Fen Tseng et al.

ISBN: 9781625753434

Library of Congress Control Number: 2024906896

First Edition

First Printing: April 2024

Printed in China



Phoenix Tree Publishing Inc.

5660 N. Jersey Ave · Chicago, IL 60659

Phone: 773.250.0707 · Fax: 773.250.0808

Email: marketing@phoenixtree.com

For information about special discounts for bulk purchases,
please contact the publisher at the address above.

Find out more about Phoenix Tree Publishing at
www.phoenixtree.com

Contents

Preface	VI
---------------	----

Scope and Sequence	XX
--------------------------	----

Abbreviations of Grammar Terms	XXVII
--------------------------------------	-------

Cast of Characters	XXVIII
--------------------------	--------

第一课 参观校园

Lesson 1 Campus Tour	1
----------------------------	---

学习目标 Learning Objectives	2
--------------------------------	---

对话一 Dialogue 1	3
----------------------	---

语法 Grammar	10
------------------	----

对话二 Dialogue 2	16
----------------------	----

语法 Grammar	21
------------------	----

我学了 What I Have Learned	25
-------------------------------	----

通关卡 Exit Tickets	27
------------------------	----

词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	34
---------------------------------	----

阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	36
---------------------------	----

文化角 Culture Corner	39
--------------------------	----

第二课 学校生活

Lesson 2 School Life	44
----------------------------	----

学习目标 Learning Objectives	45
--------------------------------	----

对话一 Dialogue 1	46
----------------------	----

语法 Grammar	53
------------------	----

对话二 Dialogue 2	58
语法 Grammar	65
我学了 What I Have Learned	72
通关卡 Exit Tickets	76
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	82
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	84
文化角 Culture Corner	85

第三课 天气

Lesson 3 Weather 91

学习目标 Learning Objectives	92
对话一 Dialogue 1	93
语法 Grammar	99
对话二 Dialogue 2	101
语法 Grammar	106
我学了 What I Have Learned	109
通关卡 Exit Tickets	114
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	121
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	124
文化角 Culture Corner	126

第四课 在中国餐馆吃饭

Lesson 4 Eat at a Chinese Restaurant 133

学习目标 Learning Objectives	134
对话一 Dialogue 1	135
语法 Grammar	143
对话二 Dialogue 2	146
语法 Grammar	154
我学了 What I Have Learned	157
通关卡 Exit Tickets	161

词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	167
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	170
文化角 Culture Corner	172

第五课 买东西

Lesson 5 Shopping 178

学习目标 Learning Objectives	179
对话一 Dialogue 1	180
语法 Grammar	187
对话二 Dialogue 2	193
语法 Grammar	200
我学了 What I Have Learned	204
通关卡 Exit Tickets	209
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	215
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	218
文化角 Culture Corner	220

第六课 去中国城吃火锅

Lesson 6 Go to Chinatown to Eat a Hot Pot 226

学习目标 Learning Objectives	227
对话一 Dialogue 1	228
语法 Grammar	234
叙述 Narrative	238
语法 Grammar	243
我学了 What I Have Learned	249
通关卡 Exit Tickets	253
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	262
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	265
文化角 Culture Corner	267

第七课 电影和音乐

Lesson 7 Film and Music 273

学习目标 Learning Objectives	274
对话一 Dialogue 1	275
语法 Grammar	285
对话二 Dialogue 2	288
语法 Grammar	296
我学了 What I Have Learned	298
通关卡 Exit Tickets	303
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	309
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	312
文化角 Culture Corner	314

第八课 运动比赛

Lesson 8 Sports Game 321

学习目标 Learning Objectives	322
对话一 Dialogue 1	323
语法 Grammar	332
英子的日记 Yingzi's Diary	334
语法 Grammar	339
我学了 What I Have Learned	343
通关卡 Exit Tickets	347
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	352
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	355
文化角 Culture Corner	357

第九课 省水省电

Lesson 9 Energy and Water Saving 364

学习目标 Learning Objectives	365
对话一 Dialogue 1	366

语法 Grammar	373
对话二 Dialogue 2	375
语法 Grammar	382
我学了 What I Have Learned	385
通关卡 Exit Tickets	391
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	398
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	402
文化角 Culture Corner	403

第十课 暑假计划

Lesson 10 Summer Plan 408

学习目标 Learning Objectives	409
对话一 Dialogue 1	410
语法 Grammar	417
一封邮件 An Email	419
语法 Grammar	425
我学了 What I Have Learned	427
通关卡 Exit Tickets	431
词汇挑战 Vocabulary Challenge	437
阅读阶梯 Reading Ladder	441
文化角 Culture Corner	443

Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category 448

Vocabulary Index (Chinese-English) 468

Answer Keys 502

Preface

Authentic Chinese is new, fresh, and innovative. Offering everything that teachers and students need for a successful class, it makes learning engaging, communicative, and most essentially, authentic. The comprehensive set of included materials has long been awaited by teachers and students in middle and high schools in the United States. It is recommended that the textbook, Volume II, be used for one year in Level II in high school and for two years in middle school. Printed materials include the textbook, workbook, task workbook, and character workbook. An online interactive platform complements the workbook to foster individual learning by providing instant feedback and scoring for learners to self-pace and self-check their learning progress. To save teachers' preparation time, resources are compiled and organized for free downloads; these include PowerPoint slides, test items, Quizlets for vocabulary learning, and supplementary authentic materials.

The textbook for *Authentic Chinese* aligns with the curricular framework articulated in the World-Readiness Standards for Learning Languages endorsed by American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages (ACTFL). It also follows the guidelines for the Advanced Placement (AP) Chinese Language and Culture Course and Exam created by the College Board in the United States. Adhering to the guiding principles for material development, *Authentic Chinese* reaffirms effective classroom-based principles and strategies critically needed by novice and seasoned Chinese language educators in American secondary school settings.

The ultimate goal of the textbook, Volume II, is to develop learners' communication competence necessary for functioning in authentic, everyday contexts. A string of topics is connected and sequenced to reflect beginners' common interests in immediate life experience. Along these lines, comprehensive materials are created to help learners not only perform well in class but also transform their learning experience to be able to communicate spontaneously with native speakers in Chinese-speaking settings. *Authentic Chinese* is thus designed to simulate and unfold topics and activities that are relevant, interesting, and motivating, to bring about active learning and full engagement.

Task-supported language teaching is fundamental to *Authentic Chinese*. Based firmly in research and proven effective in practice, proficiency-based and task-supported language teaching is increasingly central to language learning in the digital and global era. This

pedagogical and curricular paradigm places communicative goals and student-centeredness at the heart of teaching, material development, curriculum design, and assessment, all of which come into play to account for a successful class. The underlying meanings and beliefs in this approach set the tone for everything that is developed in the textbook. Tasks, regardless of type, are designed carefully to supplement the learning materials in the textbook.

In an ideal Chinese language class, learning is interactive, collaborative, and authentic, as interaction is crucial in language learning. To become a global citizen who is culturally proficient, linguistically competent, and civically responsible, learners also need ample opportunities to develop their cognitive abilities, such as problem solving, critical thinking, and analytical skills that go beyond what a fixed curriculum can offer. Nowadays, learning a language is becoming much more fluid and multifaceted. It can no longer be achieved through a fixed mindset. Therefore, encouraging learners to go out of their comfort zone and be willing to take risks to challenge themselves requires another level of work and effort beyond what regular teaching hours normally entail.

Teaching a language class has never before been as complicated as it is now. After the burst of the COVID-19 pandemic, diversity, equity, and inclusion have emerged as core missions that educators advocate in many disciplines, especially language teaching and learning. Making teaching and learning more inclusive and diversified cannot be achieved in a simple or linear way. We need multiple, dynamic ways of thinking and doing to meet the needs of teachers and learners in response to rapid and complex global changes. Chinese language teachers have been looking for a set of learning materials that are easy to adopt and adapt to fulfill diversified needs of learners. This textbook, Volume II, emerges at the right time to meet the needs of teachers and learners in learning Mandarin Chinese.

The following eight winning features make this textbook a great choice for learning materials at the novice level. These eight features offer a high level of practicability and applicability in different teaching contexts. Relevance to learners' interest and immediate life experience is the core of content coverage. Teachers can flexibly adjust and determine what works for their own classes, while making the curriculum as inclusive as possible to cater to individual learners' needs. The eight winning features, some of which are groundbreaking, are as follows:

1. Connect with learners' daily life experience through a storyline.

The topics of the ten lessons in this volume center on immediate daily life experiences that are of great interest to students in middle and high schools in the United States. The topics are

age-appropriate, level-appropriate, and intrinsically motivating. Each lesson is composed of two parts, consisting mainly of two dialogues that feature asking and responding to questions instrumental to the mastery of fundamental language elements. The dialogues connect learners' experience with the real world and reflect language use and cultural norms among teenagers in modern China. They are linguistically authentic and culturally enriched. Cultural elements are embedded in each topic, so learners develop awareness of cultural differences between China and the United States.

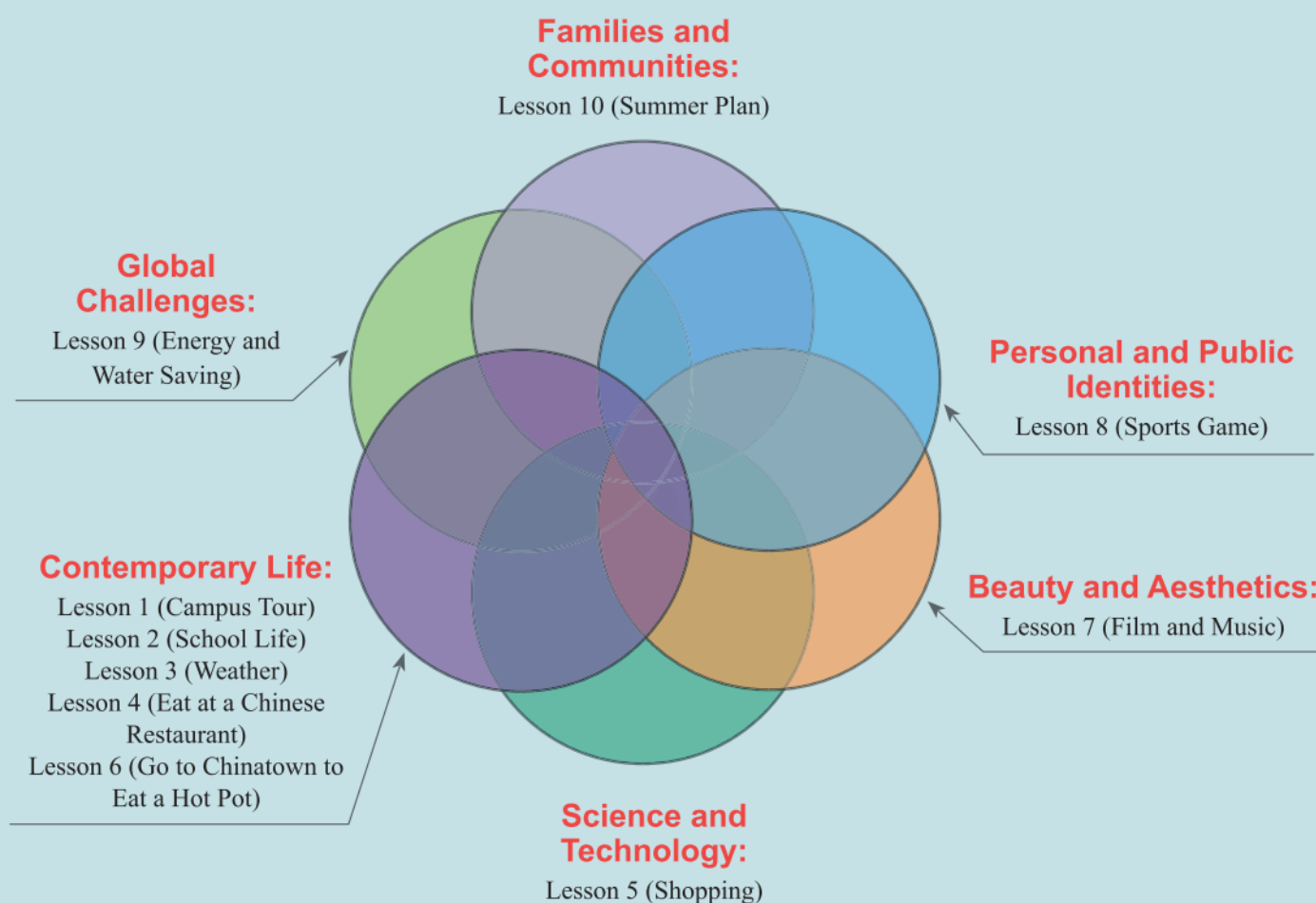
Lessons 1–10 create a storyline that begins Moli's visit to the high school where David, Li Ming, and Yingzi study in New York. Moli is a transfer student with African American heritage. After she is warmly welcomed by her classmates, an eye-opening and inspirational journey unfolds. On this journey, she fully immerses herself in learning Chinese language and culture in the dynamic metropolitan city. Together, she and Li Ming, Yingzi, and David exchange ideas about school life and extracurricular activities, taste authentic hot pot in Chinatown, complete a transaction in online shopping, and discuss a Chinese movie, summer activities, and global energy saving. Over the course of their conversations, interesting perspectives on cultural differences between American and Chinese norms naturally emerge. The storyline resembles the school experience of Chinese language learners, making the scenarios relatable and applicable. This helps learners easily connect with the characters and what they do and say in the textbook.



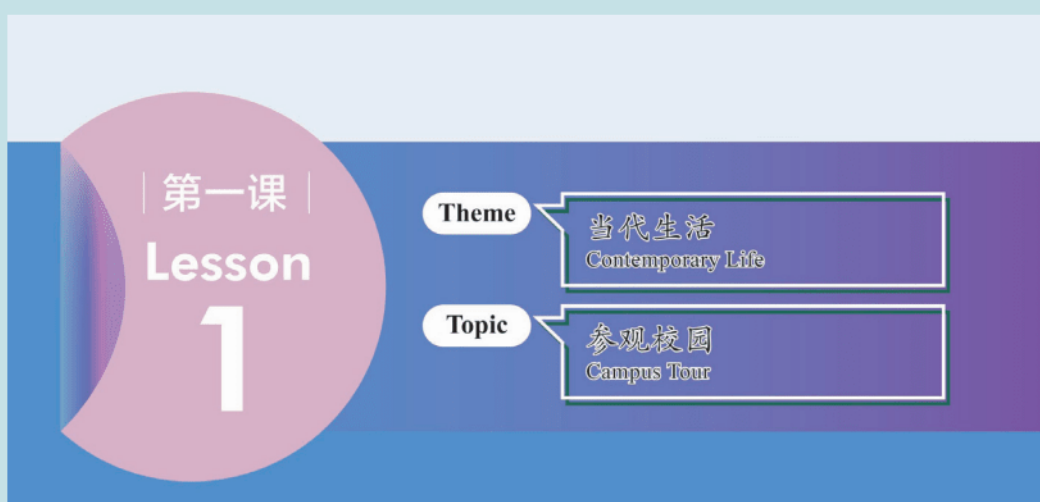
2. Identify AP Chinese themes that embrace topics in lessons.

The textbook content and topics are organized into six overarching themes: contemporary life, families and communities, individual and public identities, beauty and aesthetics, science and technology, and global challenges. They embrace many subthemes and topics across different

proficiency levels. Like the textbook in Volume I, this textbook links each lesson to one of these six themes, with the goal of building a robust vertical team up to AP Chinese. Each theme is likely to connect and overlap with one or more of the remaining themes. Therefore, a theme is determined by considering the focus, salience, and relevance of the content covered in that lesson. The following summarizes the lessons under the big umbrella of six themes.



Each lesson identifies a theme that embraces its topic.



3. Use Exit Tickets to assess Learning Objectives.

In each lesson, **Learning Objectives** outline target language functions across three communicative modes: interpretive, interpersonal, and presentational. They set clear learning objectives for learning outcomes. **What I Have Learned** provides sample mappings between the target language functions and required language patterns, formulaic expressions, and key vocabulary needed to master those language functions. Core grammatical structures and key words are constantly recycled and spiraled up to build a solid foundation for what is required to master the language. **Exit Tickets** are created for teachers to monitor learners' performance any time until the end of a lesson, and whenever possible, to differentiate learning in light of individual pace and performance. The seamless connections among the three layers of design help teachers keep track of learners' progress, identify areas for improvement, and celebrate individual learners' achievements. Considering the needs of each local classroom, teachers can flexibly select all or some of the Exit Tickets to assess learning outcomes, as formative or summative assessments.

Learning Objectives

 **Learning Objectives**
学习目标

In Lesson 1, I will learn to...

Interpretive

- » identify locations by referring to landmarks.
- » identify the duration of an action that continues until the present and has the possibility to continue.
- » identify the duration of an action that lasted for a certain length of time in the past but stopped sometime in the past.
- » comprehend how long someone has or had lived in a place.
- » comprehend a short discussion about the people with whom I study in a class.
- » comprehend a short discussion about where one is heading.

Interpersonal

- » start a brief conversation to welcome a school visitor.
- » ask about different locations at school.
- » ask whether two places are close to or far from each other.
- » ask how long someone has or had been doing something.
- » ask how long someone has or had lived in a place.
- » ask where someone is heading and why.

Presentational

- » describe locations of school classrooms and facilities with added comments.
- » describe the duration of doing something in the past and present with added comments.
- » compliment someone's Chinese in two patterns.

Language Functions

What I Have Learned

What I Have Learned
我学了……

Language Functions

I Start a brief
conversation with
a school visitor.A: 你是 (add a name here) 吗? 你
好, 我叫 (add a name here),
欢迎你来我们学校!B: 你好, (add a name here), 很
高兴认识你!A: 老师让我带你参观一下校园,
我们走吧!

B: 太好了, 谢谢你!

Language Forms

II Ask and respond
to questions about
different locations
at school.

A: 中文教室在哪儿?

B: 在图书馆 (的) 旁边。

A: 图书馆 (的) 对面是什么地方?

B: 是体育馆。

A: 离这儿远不远?

B: 不远, 很快就到了。

A: 那餐厅呢?

B: 餐厅离这儿很近, 也很方便, 就
在操场和大礼堂 (的) 中间。

A: 你能带我去餐厅看看吗?

B: 没问题, 跟我走吧。



Exit Tickets 通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Start a brief conversation with a school visitor.

A: 你是……吗? 你好, 我叫……, 欢迎你来我们学校!

B: 你好, ……., 很高兴认识你!

A: (老师让) 我带你参观一下校园, 我们走吧!

B: 太好了, 谢谢你!

Exit Ticket 2

Ask and respond to questions about different locations at school.

A: 请问, (Place 1) 在哪儿?

B: 在 (place 2) + location word。

A: (Place 3) + location word 是什么地方?

B: 是 (place 4)。

A: 离这儿远不远 / 近不近?

B: 不远 / 很近, 很快就到了 / ……分钟就到了。

A: 那 (place 5) 呢?

B: (Place 5) 离这儿很近, 也很方便, 就在 (place 6) 和 (place 7) 中间。

A: 你能带我去 (place 5) 看看吗?

B: 没问题, 跟我走。

Places:

学校, 教室, 餐厅, 图书馆, 体育馆, 大礼堂, 操场, 停车场

Location words:

旁边, 左边, 右边, 对面, 中间, 前面, 后面, 上面, 下面, 外面, 里面

Exit Tickets: Language
functions + language forms +
actionable template

4. Visualize a real China through a wide array of authentic materials.

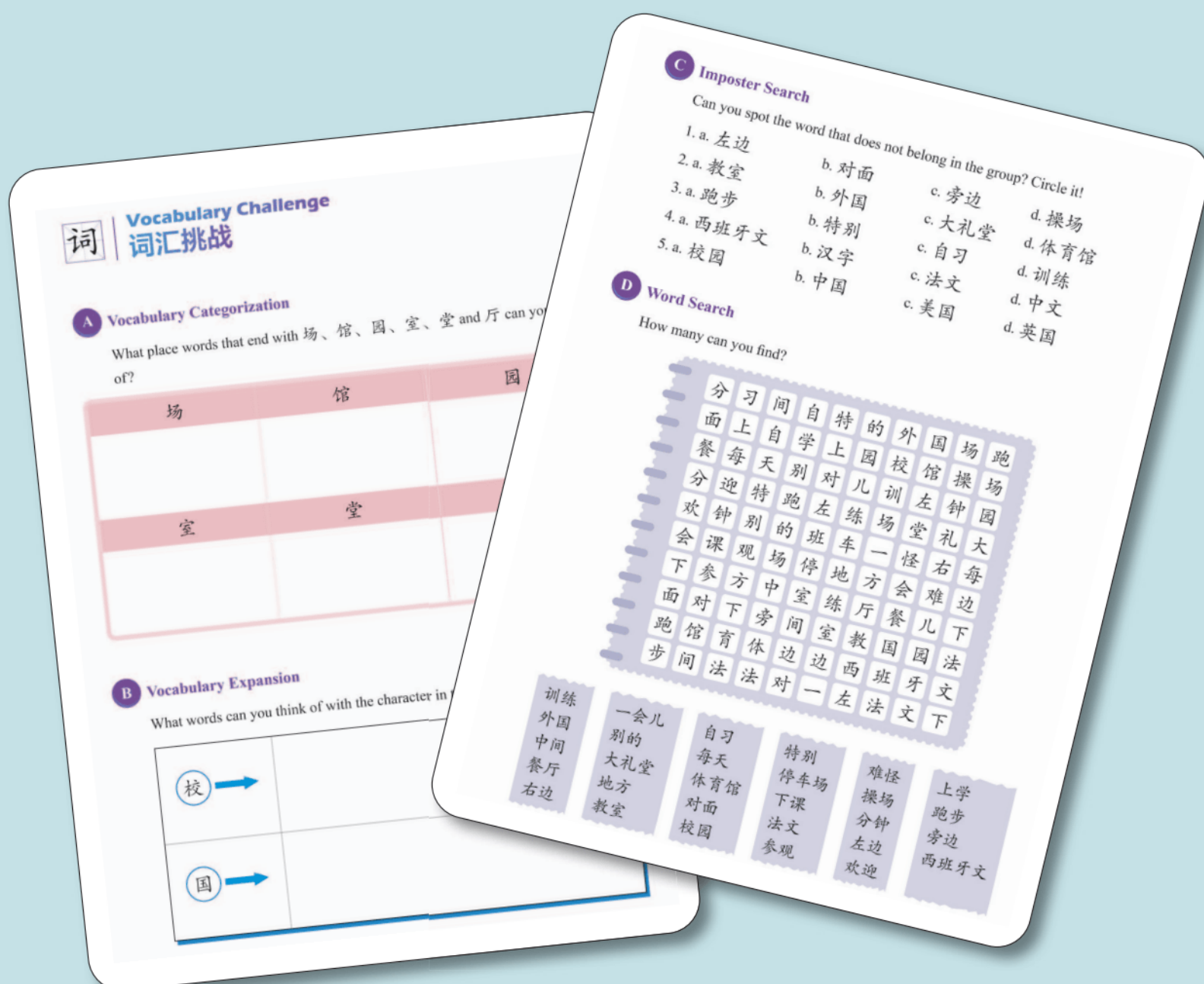
Authentic materials are crucial. They complement texts and strengthen understanding of language and cultural elements, while empowering learners and building their confidence. This textbook includes a wide collection of photos and images to help learners experience and visualize the new landscape of evolving China. Each lesson begins with several authentic photos coupled with one or two prompts for a preliminary exploration of a given topic, as a warm-up activity. To impart a good understanding of certain words or expressions related to cultural products, practices, and perspectives, photos also appear in the section of grammar notes and elsewhere to help learners enhance their understanding of the content and grasp some cultural nuances. There is a wide range of linguistically and culturally enriched authentic materials. Photos and images remain the main source of authentic materials in the textbook; other sources of authentic materials may be found in the free, online sources that are compiled to complement those in the textbook.



快递小哥 (kuàidī xiǎogē) is one of the most trendy words in China nowadays. Can you guess what it means?

5. Consolidate vocabulary learning through Vocabulary Challenge.

The Vocabulary Challenge section is designed with various features to enhance students' vocabulary learning abilities. As learners have already accumulated a significant amount of vocabulary, a more systematic approach to learning is needed to assist them in forming meaningful associations with vocabulary. In each lesson, multiple forms of activities, such as Vocabulary Categorization, Vocabulary Expansion, Vocabulary Collocation, Antonyms, and King of Idioms, are created to enhance learners' skills in classifying and inducing language knowledge. Progressing from individual words to phrase collocation and sentence structure exercises spirals up language learning to build a solid foundation. Vocabulary Challenge, utilizing engaging game modes such as Imposter Search, Word Search, and Sentence Sudoku (in Character Workbook), not only captures students' attention but also makes Chinese learning enjoyable, fostering a playful yet highly effective learning process that significantly enhances learning outcomes.



6. Strengthen reading through Reading Ladders.

Reading Ladders develop reading fluency, strengthen literacy skills, and help learners infer meaning from contextual clues. Each Reading Ladder is presented in the form of a dialogue, a reading passage, or a story, with increasing difficulty and complexity as learning proceeds. Each lesson has a short reading piece that connects to authentic Chinese culture, in a dynamic and multimodal way. The central figures, whenever mentioned, are well-known people who have made significant changes in different areas in China. Key words and structures are recycled and reviewed to help learners internalize and consolidate learning. Whenever necessary, words that have not been introduced are annotated at the end of the reading. Reading Ladders can be used for independent reading at any time or at the end of a lesson to reinforce and extend reading skills as a teaching activity or assignment.



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯

它比高铁快，比飞机方便，可是很少人知道

现在，人们的生活越来越方便。在一个城市里，你可以开车，也可以坐地铁、骑共享单车。如果要去别的城市，你可以坐飞机，还可以坐高铁。所以，出门真的很方便。

在中国，很多人出门都会坐高铁。除了出国要坐飞机以外，不管是工作还是出去玩，高铁都是最方便的，而且也比坐飞机便宜。除了高



铁和飞机以外，中国还有一个很好的交通工具，这种交通工具比高铁快，也比飞机方便，可是很少人知道。你知道是什么交通工具吗？

这种交通工具叫磁悬浮列车。中国的北京、上海和长沙都有磁悬浮列车。磁悬浮列车非常快，可是为什么没有很多人坐呢？

让我来告诉你吧！如果你想从上海机场到市中心，你可以坐地铁，也可以坐磁悬浮列车。坐地铁要花一

个小时十五分钟，只要六块钱。如果你坐磁悬浮列车的话，八分钟就到了，可是要花五十块钱，然后你还得

坐地铁进市中心。现在你知道为什么很少人坐磁悬浮列车了吧？

	dìtiě hào xiàn 地铁2号线	dìtiě hào xiàn cíxúánfú 地铁2号线+磁悬浮	jīchǎng dàbā 机场大巴	chūzūchē 出租车
时间	1小时15分	1小时	1-12.5小时	1-2.5小时
价格	¥6	¥54	¥20-30	¥150-300
好处	价格低	最快	方便，不用换车	方便
tuījiàn zhǐshù 推荐指数	★★★★★	★★★★	★★★	★★

注释 Notes

- ① 交通工具 jiāotōng gōngjù: means of transportation
- ② 磁悬浮列车 cíxúánfú lièchē: the Maglev
- ③ 长沙 Chángshā: the capital city of Hunan province in China
- ④ 地铁2号线 dìtiě èr hào xiàn: subway line 2
- ⑤ 机场大巴 jīchǎng dàbā: airport shuttle
- ⑥ 出租车 chūzūchē: taxi
- ⑦ 推荐指数 tuījiàn zhǐshù: recommendation score

7. Deepen understanding of China in Culture Corner.

In addition to the main texts in each lesson, Culture Corner adds interesting information to further underscore aspects of China's evolving culture that are of interest to teenagers in the United States. Culture Corner is an integral part of this textbook. In alignment with the theme of each lesson, this section introduces, showcases, and explains trending topics in Chinese culture. Cultural topics in this volume include authentic Chinese names, family members, birthday celebrations, hobbies, dream jobs, school life, dumplings and festivals, pandas, lucky numbers, and garbage classification and collection. The Culture Corner also helps develop students' self-learning abilities by giving them an international experience and promoting learning through critical reading, speaking, and exploring cultural differences. By engaging reading material about the cultural landscape in China, students can deepen their understanding of Chinese culture and build the skills necessary to navigate cultural differences in a globalized world.



Respecting the elderly and loving the young, or 尊老爱幼 (zūnlǎo-àiyòu), is still a highly regarded traditional value in Chinese society today. This value shines brightly during the Chongyang Festival, 重阳节 (Chóngyángjié), held on the ninth day of the ninth lunar month. The number nine, 九 (jiǔ), carries a meaning of longevity, which aligns with the festival's theme of celebrating the long lives of the elderly. On this day, young people show their care for the elderly by spending quality time with family, visiting or calling their parents or grandparents to express their love and support. Many young people also choose to volunteer, especially during the Chongyang Festival or on weekends. They visit nursing homes, engaging in activities like reading to residents, helping with chores, making dumplings, or even staging talent shows. These acts of kindness emphasize the societal respect for the elderly.

Equally important is the dedication to children's well-being in Chinese culture. Their health, safety, and education are prioritized. This commitment can be seen in various ways, from the Hope Project and child protection facilities in public spaces to efforts that guarantee educational rights. Moreover, there's the treasured tradition of 支教 (zhījiào). Backed by their community, young students travel to rural areas, bringing with them snacks, supplies, donated books, and a passion to teach subjects such as English, math, art, and music to rural children.

- ◉ Has anyone had a chance to volunteer in a nursing home or school?
- ◉ How was your experience?
- ◉ What type of volunteer work do you hope to do in the future?

Let's discuss with your classmates and teacher.



Culture Corner
文化角

火锅 Hot Pot

Have you ever enjoyed a hot pot meal with your friends? It is called 火锅 (huǒguō) in Chinese and has been popular for over two thousand years. Did you know that there are over thirty different types of hot pot in China? Each region has its own unique style. Here are two famous hot pot styles that you might want to try.



2. Beijing Style Hot Pot 老北京火锅 (lǎo Běijīng huǒguō)

This hot pot style is typically served in a copper Mongolian pot filled with either clear water or a lightly flavored broth. You can add ingredients like tender mutton slices and a variety of vegetables to the pot. And did you know that in Beijing, hot pot is referred to as 涮羊肉 (shuān yángrou)? And the locals love to dip their hot pot ingredients in a sesame-based sauce called 芝麻酱 (zhīmajiang). Are you excited to try this delicious hot pot style on your next trip to Beijing?



老北京火锅 (lǎo Běijīng huǒguō)

23 Sichuan Hot Pot 四川火锅 (Sīchuān huǒguō)

If you are a fan of spicy food, then you have to try Sichuan Hot Pot, with its spicy 麻辣 (má là) flavor, packed with butter, Sichuan peppercorn, and red hot chili.

Have you heard of trellis hot pot 九宫格火锅 (jiǔgōnggé huǒguō)? It is a really popular type of Sichuan Hot Pot, which is divided into nine grids, each containing its own temperature and mix of butter and chili oil. This means that you can cook your ingredients in different ways and get a variety of flavors and textures. It is a unique and fun dining experience!



九宫格火锅 (jiǔgōnggé huǒguō)



鸳鸯锅 (yuānyang guō)

But, if the spices are too much for you, there is another option: the double-flavor hot pot 鸳鸯锅 (yuānyang guō). The pot is divided into two sections so everyone can enjoy hot pot, no matter their spice tolerance. Plus, it is a representation of the tai chi symbol (yin and yang), which shows that the Chinese people are inclusive and open to different perspectives.

Have you had hot pot before? How did you like it? Which one do you want to try next? Please discuss with your classmates and teacher in class.

8. Complete student-centered tasks at ease.

The complementary task workbook includes a collection of different types of student-centered tasks. All pedagogical and authentic tasks in the task workbook closely align with each lesson's Learning Objectives and correspond to the matching of functions and forms exemplified in What I Have Learned. The language template shown in each Exit Ticket further shapes and determines the task type and how that task can be implemented. Each task has clear instructions, steps for completing the task, and one or more handouts, templates, and samples, all of which help ease the learning process. Materials that are required to implement tasks, either in class or outside of class, are ready for immediate use. The task workbook is a new and welcome addition to the textbook and saves a lot of preparation time for teachers. To make it more convenient for teaching preparation, a digital version is available for teachers to modify and download to meet their classroom needs. Teachers can consult the task workbook to choose what they need for their class and students. Principles and strategies for how to choose, use, and implement a wide array of tasks are included to give teachers some guidance on this process before they dive in to the full batch of tasks.

Task 3 Information gap: Find the places!

A Student: Ask your partner to find the following places:

1. 大礼堂	2. 教师 (jiàoshī) 停车场	3. 电脑教室	4. 中文教室
5. 西班牙文教室	6. 操场	7. 篮球场	

Ask: _____ 在哪儿?

Respond: Place 1 (的) + location word + 是 + place 2。

Place 2 + 在 + place 1 + (的) + location word。

Place 3 + 在 + place 1 和 place 2 + (的) + 中间。

Location words: 旁边、左边、右边、前面、后面、上面、下面、外面、对面、里面、中间

B Student: Ask your partner to find the following places:

1. 学生停车场	2. 图书馆	3. 餐厅	4. 英文教室
5. 法文教室	6. 音乐教室	7. 体育馆	

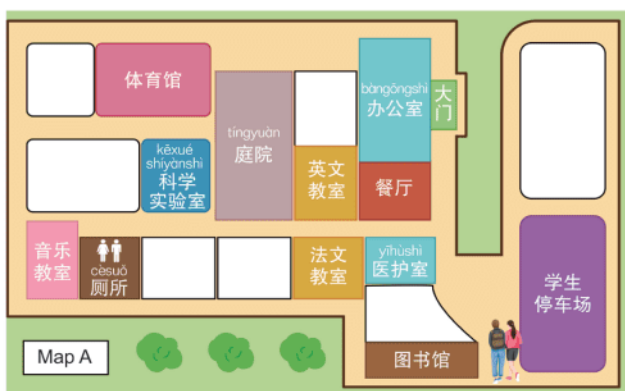
Ask: _____ 在哪儿?

Respond: Place 1 (的) + location word + 是 + place 2。

Place 2 + 在 + place 1 + (的) + location word。

Place 3 + 在 + place 1 和 place 2 + (的) + 中间。

Location words: 旁边、左边、右边、前面、后面、上面、下面、外面、对面、里面、中间



This textbook is a groundbreaking and forward-thinking resource in material development in the field of teaching Chinese as a foreign language. As a final note for users, it is highly recommended that teachers constantly consult students on different aspects of learning as their learning journey unfolds. With the teachers and learners working together, the journey will culminate in a transformative and impactful experience and create a robust learning community in Mandarin Chinese.

 **Task 4 Interview: 你下课以后要去哪儿?**

Step 1 Write down where you are going after Chinese class, and why you are going there.

我下课以后要去 (place) + (activity)。

我下课以后要去 _____ + _____。

Step 2 Walk around the classroom, interview five classmates, ask where they are going and why, and write down their responses in the chart.

你下课以后要去哪儿?

名字	现在好	为什么?
Example: 英子	体育馆	参加球队训练

Step 3 Select three classmates from the chart and share their plans to the whole class.

 **Task 7 Interview: Show your talent!**

Option 1

Step 1 The following is a list of skills and talents. Check the ones you know how to do and describe how long you have or had learned it.

	你会不会……? 你会……吗?	你……了多长时间 / 多久 / 几年 / 几个月了?
Example: 说中文	☒ 会 ☐ 不太会 ☐ 不会	10 个月
说外文 (中文、 韩文、日文、法 文、西班牙语)	☐ 会 ☐ 不太会 ☐ 不会	
唱外文歌 (中文、 韩文、日文、法 文、西班牙语)	☐ 会 ☐ 不太会 ☐ 不会	
跳舞	☐ 会 ☐ 不太会 ☐ 不会	
游泳	☐ 会 ☐ 不太会 ☐ 不会	

XVII

Acknowledgments

Writing a textbook is never an individual act. It relies on tremendous effort from a team of experts. This textbook is the product of a long thought process and constant revisions, requiring a high level of energy and a big commitment. The working team is an amazing think tank. Its members show genuine interest in and dedication to exploring new ideas and innovation. From the very beginning, we established a team spirit that we envisioned would work to produce the quality that we expected from this project. Everyone has been so open-minded, resilient, welcoming of critiques, and agile in making changes. Most of the writing has involved problem-solving and critical-thinking tasks. It is an exploratory journey indeed.

Strong will and perseverance are the momentum that moves things forward. I cannot express enough thanks to my teammates who have worked on this book so tirelessly and diligently, strictly following many deadlines. From what I can recall, we have never missed or postponed a task. This admirable team spirit and work ethic make us such a strong team.

In addition to acknowledging my teammates' efforts, I am also indebted to the editorial team at Phoenix Tree Publishing for their timely, professional, constructive suggestions on improvements. Their feedback is truly appreciated and was pivotal to creating a textbook that truly exceeds expectations. The illustration team has produced many drawings and sketches so efficiently in response to our needs and suggestions. I am grateful to them for creating a colorful world for learners. Thanks to their efforts, the textbook and workbook are much more visually appealing and content enriched than a black-and-white version would have been.

A cohort group of volunteer teachers, colleagues, and friends also supports *Authentic Chinese* in many different ways. We made so many phone calls and sent so many messages via email and social media, asking their opinions about ideas. These conversations resulted in many aha moments that enlightened me and the entire working team and made the writing process a truly inspirational and precious learning experience. Quite a number of Chinese language educators have contributed to the idea-generating process. It is only due to their selfless sharing and timely assistance that this edition was released in time. When we look back at the long journey that we have all come along, we just cannot imagine how we could have gotten it done without their valuable input and their willingness to pitch in when we needed them.

The photos and images printed in the textbook were selected from over five thousand photos. A single photo in the book might be chosen from several hundreds of photos taken by a couple of people. All in all, our goal was to do our very best to present different lenses of authenticity to enable learners to get a real feel for the cultural phenomena in a real and modern China. On behalf of the working team, I would like to credit the following generous and kind people for helping us capably complete the textbook for teachers and students. Their names are arranged in alphabetical order.

Nate Abbott, Jerjiann Chen, Xiaohua Chen, I-Jung Chiu, Yiling Chiu, Amy Chou, Aiden Dumm, Ying-Yue Hsu, Enjie Huang, Joyce Huang, Shu-Chi Huang, Yushan Huang, Tailin Jiang, Yuhua Ke, Lei Li, Fumei Liao, Guangchu Shi, Hsi-ching Wang, Senhao Wu, Xiaohua Wu, Yanrong Wu, Suwu Ye.

The thank you list would not be complete without significant loved ones and family members. Our work was completed on numerous evenings, weekends, and holidays, when people would prefer to rest and spend time with family for leisure activities. And when online meetings were longer than expected, our family members were left alone without our company. Our deepest thanks to them for their sacrifice, support, and love.

Scope and Sequence

Lessons	Themes and Topics	Contexts	
1	Contemporary Life <i>Campus Tour</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduce school facilities and locations. 2. Why is your Chinese so good? 	
2	Contemporary Life <i>School Life</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Talk about classes. 2. Talk about after-school activities. 	
3	Contemporary Life <i>Weather</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Chat about the weather in the United States. 2. Chat about weather in the United States and China. 	
4	Contemporary Life <i>Eat at a Chinese Restaurant</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Order food at a Chinese restaurant. 2. Pay a bill at a Chinese restaurant. 	
5	Science and Technology <i>Shopping</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discuss online shopping. 2. Discuss payment methods. 	

Learning Objectives, Exit Tickets, and Language Functions

- | | |
|--|---|
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Start a brief conversation with a school visitor. 2. Ask and respond to questions about different locations at school. 3. Ask and respond to questions about how long someone has been doing something or had done something with added information. 4. Ask and respond to questions about where someone is heading and why. |
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discuss the courses you are taking this semester, explain which courses and teachers you like or dislike the most, and provide reasons. 2. Discuss your daily schedule at school and after school (including courses, student activities, and clubs). 3. Give a report on the courses that you are taking this semester and comment on the courses and teachers. 4. Present your daily schedule and share comments (including classes and activities at/ after school). 5. Compare a daily schedule in an American high school to one in a Chinese high school and add comments. |
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discuss weather forecast to plan for an activity. 2. Exchange ideas about your favorite season and weather. 3. Talk about the weather of a city and compare it to the weather of another city. 4. Ask about someone's past experience by using "verb + 过". 5. Report a weather forecast. 6. Present the weather (including all four seasons) that you like and dislike, with added comments. 7. Describe the weather of a city and compare it to that of another city. |
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Engage in a conversation between a waiter and a guest ordering food. 2. Exchange comments about food flavor and preference. 3. Complete a transactional dialogue about paying a bill. 4. Describe your experience ordering and tasting food at a Chinese restaurant. |
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Engage in a dialogue about online shopping with comments until a transaction is completed. 2. Exchange ideas about shopping online and in stores, using common phrases for bargaining. 3. Discuss different payment methods and express opinions about advantages and disadvantages. 4. Talk about experiences of shopping online and in stores. 5. Summarize current payment methods in China and the United States, express thoughts about the best option for the future, and provide justification. |

Lessons	Themes and Topics	Contexts	
6	Contemporary Life <i>Go to Chinatown to Eat a Hot Pot</i>	1. Talk about how to get to Chinatown. 2. Film a vlog.	
7	Beauty and Aesthetics <i>Film and Music</i>	1. Watch a Chinese film. 2. Sing Chinese songs at a KTV.	
8	Personal and Public Identities <i>Sports Game</i>	1. Chat about a sports game. 2. Describe a sports game.	
9	Global Challenges <i>Energy and Water Saving</i>	1. Talk about school power and water saving. 2. Talk about home power and water saving.	
10	Families and Communities <i>Summer Plan</i>	1. Discuss summer plans. 2. Describe a summer trip to China.	

	Learning Objectives, Exit Tickets, and Language Functions
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Engage in a conversation about going to a place using transportation methods (including event, place, transportation methods, time length, and comments). 2. Discuss daily transportation methods and give comments. 3. Create a vlog to share personal experience eating a hot pot or any Chinese dishes at a Chinese restaurant. 4. Describe daily transportation methods and talk about personal experiences of using at least two more transportation methods with comments.
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Interact with a host upon entering a Chinese house. 2. Exchange comments on 皮影戏 and talk about one 皮影 shadow puppet that you wish to make. 3. Discuss your experience and favorite music, and comment on genres. 4. Describe the movie 孙子从美国来 (<i>A Grandson from America</i>) and share your comments. 5. Introduce your favorite singer or band/group.
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discuss a sports game and players. 2. Exchange thoughts and values about team spirit versus heroism. 3. Describe a sports game with Wh-word information.
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Talk about why someone feels upset. 2. Discuss ways to save power. 3. Discuss ways to save water at home. 4. Present resolutions to save power. 5. Present resolutions to save water at home.
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discuss summer plans about travel, a part-time job, and community service. 2. Exchange opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home. 3. Express opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home. 4. Describe your summer plan in an email.

Lessons	Language Patterns	Culture Corner
1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Location words and expressions Structure 1: Place 1 (的) + location word + 是 + place 2 Structure 2: Place 2 + 在 + place 1 + (的) + location word Place 1 + 离 (lí) + place 2 + adverb + 远/近 (yuǎn/jìn) (close to... / far away from...) 一 (yī) + verb 1 + 就 (jiù) + verb 2 怎么这么/那么 (zěnmě zhème /nàme)…… Subject + verb + object + verb + 了 (le) + duration of time (+了) 每 (měi; every, each) + measure word + noun + 都 (dōu; both, all) …… 	Smart Campuses in China 智慧校园
2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> The measure word 门 (mén) ……的时候, …… (…de shíhou, …; When..., ...) (I) 有的……, 有的……(Yǒude…, yǒude…; Some..., and some...) Verb + resultative complement (+ object) (I) 如果……的话, …… (rúguǒ…dehuà, …; If...; ...) The measure word 节 (jié) Verb + resultative complement (+ object) (II) Connectors 先……, 再……, 然后再…… (xiān…, zài…, ránhòu zài…; First..., then..., and then...) 听起来 (tīng qǐlái; sounds like) + adjective The adverb 好 (hǎo; very) Verb (了) + duration of time + (的) + noun ……的时候, …… (…de shíhou, …; When..., ...) (II) 	School Life 学校生活
3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 是 (shì; “to be” verb) vs. 会 (huì; will) in a weather forecast Verb + 过 (guò) + object, emphasizing past experiences 不但 (búdàn) ……, 而且 (érqiě) …… (not only..., but also...) A 跟 (gēn) B 一样 (yíyàng) + adjective (A is as + adjective + as B) A 比 (bǐ) B + 更 (gèng; even more) + adjective 	Experience the Beauty of China during All Four Seasons 天南海北四季游

Lessons	Language Patterns	Culture Corner
4	1. 来 (lái) + number + measure word + noun (+ 吧!) 2. Subject + duration of time + 没(有) (méi/méiyǒu) + verb/verbal phrase + 了 (le) 3. A 没有 (méiyǒu) B 那么 (nàme) + adjective (A is not as + adjective + as B) 4. Repetition of adjectives: Adjective + adjective + 的 (de)	Table Manners 餐桌礼仪
5	1. The 是 (shì) ……的 (de) construction: Emphasis on Wh-word information 2. Adjective 是 (shì) adjective, 就是 (jiùshì) …… (..., but...) 3. 什么 (shénme) + (noun) + 都 (dōu) + (不/没有) + verb/adjective 4. 连 (lián; even) + subject/object + 都/也 (dōu/yě) + (没/不) + verb/verbal phrase 5. Sentential final particle 吧 (ba) indicating uncertainty	Mobile Payment and WeChat Red Packet 手机支付和微信红包
6	1. 从 (cóng) place 1 + verb 到 (dào) + place 2 + 要 (yào) + duration of time 2. 不管 (是) A 还是 B, ……都…… (bùguǎn shì… háishi…, …dōu…; no matter A or B, ...) 3. A 比 (bǐ) B + adjective + 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr) (A is a bit more... than B) 4. 先 (xiān) verb 1, 再 (zài) verb 2, 最后 (zuìhòu) verb 3 (First, ... , then, ..., last, ...) 5. 两个多小时 (liǎnggè duō xiǎoshí; Over two hours) 6. Verb + 得/不 (de/bu) + 下 (xià); Potential complements	Hot Pot 火锅
7	1. (Subject) 想/要 (xiǎng/yào) verb 什么 (shénme) + (object), 就 (jiù) verb 什么 (shénme) + (object) (do whatever you would like/want to do) 2. An attribute + 的 (de) + subject/object = a relative clause 3. Subject + 从来没/没有 (cónglái méi/méiyǒu) + verb 过 (guò) + object (...have never done something) 4. A或者/或 (huòzhě/huò) B (A or B in a statement)	Music Show 音乐节目

Lessons	Language Patterns	Culture Corner
8	1. 不管 (bùguǎn) + question word, (subject) 都 (dōu) (no matter...) 2. 越 (yuè) + verb + 越 (yuè) + adjective (is getting more and more...) 3. Sentence 1, 后来 (hòulái; later, afterward), sentence 2 4. 又 (yòu) + verb 1 + 又 (yòu) + verb 2	Chasing Your Dreams as an Athlete 追梦运动员
9	1. A 比 (bǐ) B adjective + number + measure word 2. Existential sentence: Place + 里 (lǐ) + 有/没有 (yǒu/méiyǒu) + something or someone 3. 多久 (duōjiǔ) + verb + number + 次 (cì) + object? 4. 等到.....的时候 + 再 + verbal phrase (děngdào...de shíhou + zài + verbal phrase; wait until the time when)	Environmental Protection 环境保护
10	1. 快要 (kuàiyào) + verb/verbal phrase + 了 (le) (is about to) 2. Adjective 地 (de) + verb phrase 3. Subject verb 来 (lái) verb 去 (qù), 还是 (háishi)	Respect the Elderly and Love the Young 尊老爱幼

Abbreviations of Grammar Terms

1	adj.	adjective
2	adv.	adverb
3	conj.	conjunction
4	interj.	interjection
5	misc.	miscellaneous
6	mv.	modal verb
7	mw.	measure word
8	n.	noun
9	nu.	numeral
10	p.	particle
11	phr.	phrase
12	pn.	proper noun
13	pron.	pronoun
14	prep.	preposition
15	t.	time word
16	v.	verb
17	vo.	verb plus object
18	vc.	verb plus complement

Cast of Characters



Let's meet the characters in the book



Wang Dawei

王大卫

David Wang is an American student. He is in 10th grade and has an elder brother who is also in high school. He loves learning Chinese very much and is enthusiastic about Chinese language and culture.



Jin Yingzi

金英子

Yingzi was born in Korea. She has a younger brother in 6th grade and a younger sister in 9th grade. She is in 11th grade now and knows some Korean and Chinese. Her parents are permanent residents in the United States but are not US citizens yet.



Li Ming

李明

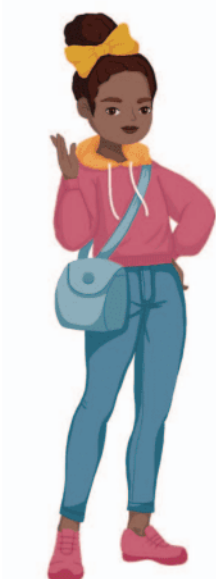
Li Ming was born in the United States. He is in 10th grade and loves Chinese language and culture. He has two elder sisters who also study in high school. His parents were born in China and immigrated to the United States. They speak both Chinese and English at home.



Lin Meixin

林美心

Ms. Lin is a Chinese language teacher. She was born in Beijing, China. She has a son and a daughter.



Zhang Moli

张茉莉

Molly Johnson was born in the United States with Africa-American heritage. She is a 10th grader and lived in Shanghai, China, due to her parents' work before returning to the United States. She has an older brother in college and a younger sister in 6th grade. Molly has a global mindset and a passion for Chinese culture.

| 第一课 | Lesson 1

Theme

当代生活
Contemporary Life

Topic

参观校园
Campus Tour

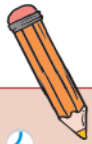


What does your school look like? Is it like what you see in the pictures above?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 1, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » identify locations by referring to landmarks.
- » identify the duration of an action that continues until the present and has the possibility to continue.
- » identify the duration of an action that lasted for a certain length of time in the past but stopped sometime in the past.
- » comprehend how long someone has or had lived in a place.
- » comprehend a short discussion about the people with whom I study in a class.
- » comprehend a short discussion about where one is heading.

Interpersonal

- » start a brief conversation to welcome a school visitor.
- » ask about different locations at school.
- » ask whether two places are close to or far from each other.
- » ask how long someone has or had been doing something.
- » ask how long someone has or had lived in a place.
- » ask where someone is heading and why.

Presentational

- » describe locations of school classrooms and facilities with added comments.
- » describe the duration of doing something in the past and present with added comments.
- » compliment someone's Chinese in two patterns.



Dialogue 1

对话一



Yingzi and Moli are meeting each other in front of the school lobby.



英子



茉莉



你是茉莉吗？你好，我叫英子，欢迎你来我们学校！

你好，英子，很高兴认识你！



林老师让我带你参观一下校园，我们走吧！

太好了，谢谢你！





这是我们的中文教室，**右边**^①是西班牙文教室，
左边^①是法文教室。

中文教室的**对面**^①是什么地方？



是图书馆。

哦！那学生餐厅在哪儿？





餐厅在^①学校大门的旁边。

离这儿远不远^②？



不远，一分钟就到了。

那我一下课就^③能去餐厅吃饭了。



对，从中文教室去餐厅很方便。

那是体育馆吗？



对，体育馆在^①餐厅和大礼堂中间。

太好了！我可以在那儿打球吗？



可以啊，你一定会很喜欢这个体育馆。

我还喜欢跑步，我们学校有操场吗？



有啊！就在学校外面的停车场旁边。

Pinyin Dialogue 1

Yingzi and Moli are meeting each other in front of the school lobby.



Yīngzǐ



Mòlì



Nǐ shì Mòlì ma? Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Yīngzǐ, huānyíng nǐ lái wǒmen xuéxiào!

Nǐ hǎo, Yīngzǐ, hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ!



Lín lǎoshī ràng wǒ dài nǐ cānguān yíxià xiàoyuán, wǒmen zǒu ba!

Tài hǎo le, xièxie nǐ!



.....



Zhèshì wǒmen de Zhōngwén jiàoshì, **yòubiān**^① shì Xībānyáwén jiàoshì, **zuǒbiān**^① shì Fǎwén jiàoshì.

Zhōngwén jiàoshì de **duìmiàn**^① shì shénme dìfang?



Shì túshūguǎn.

Ò! Nà xuéshēng cāntīng zài nǎr?





Cāntīng **zài** xuéxiào dàmén **de pángbiān**^①.

Lí zhèr **yuǎn bu yuǎn**^②?



Bù yuǎn, yì fēnzhōng jiù dàole.

Nà wǒ **yí** xià kè **jiù**^③ néng qù cāntīng chī fàn le.



Duì, cóng Zhōngwén jiàoshì qù cāntīng hěn fāngbiàn.

Nà shì tǐyùguǎn ma?



Duì, tǐyùguǎn **zài** cāntīng hé dàlǐtáng **zhōngjiān**^①.

Tài hǎo le! Wǒ kěyǐ zài nàr dǎ qiú ma?



Kěyǐ ā, nǐ yídìng huì hěn xǐhuan zhè gè tǐyùguǎn.

Wǒ hái xǐhuan pǎo bù, wǒmen xuéxiào yǒu cāochǎng ma?



Yǒu ā! Jiù zài xuéxiào wàimiàn de tíngchēchǎng pángbiān.

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	茉莉	茉莉	Mòlì	<i>pn.</i>	character's name
2.	欢迎	歡迎	huānyíng	<i>v.</i>	to welcome
3.	带	帶	dài	<i>v.</i>	to lead; to bring; to carry; to take along
4.	参观	參觀	cānguān	<i>v.</i>	to look around; to tour; to visit
5.	校园	校園	xiàoyuán	<i>n.</i>	campus
6.	走	走	zǒu	<i>v.</i>	to walk; to go
7.	教室	教室	jiàoshì	<i>n.</i>	classroom
8.	右边	右邊	yòubiān	<i>n.</i>	right side; right
9.	西班牙文	西班牙文	Xībānyáwén	<i>n.</i>	Spanish (language)
10.	左边	左邊	zuǒbiān	<i>n.</i>	left; the left side
11.	法文	法文	Fǎwén	<i>n.</i>	French (language)
12.	对面	對面	duìmiàn	<i>n.</i>	opposite side; across (the street); to be face to face
13.	地方	地方	dìfang	<i>n.</i>	place
14.	哦	哦	ò	<i>interj.</i>	oh
15.	餐厅	餐廳	cāntīng	<i>n.</i>	dining hall; dining room; restaurant
16.	旁边	旁邊	pángbiān	<i>n.</i>	side; beside

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
17.	离	離	lí	<i>v.</i>	to be away from; (in giving distances) from
18.	远	遠	yuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	far; distant
19.	分钟	分鐘	fēnzhōng	<i>n.</i>	minute
20.	下课	下課	xià kè	<i>vo.</i>	to finish class; to get out of class
21.	从	從	cóng	<i>prep.</i>	from
22.	体育馆	體育館	tǐyùguǎn	<i>n.</i>	gymnasium; stadium
	体育	體育	tǐyù	<i>n.</i>	physical education; sports
23.	大礼堂	大禮堂	dàlǐtáng	<i>n.</i>	auditorium; assembly hall
24.	中间	中間	zhōngjiān	<i>n.</i>	between; middle
25.	跑步	跑步	pǎo bù	<i>vo.</i>	to run; to jog
26.	操场	操場	cāochǎng	<i>n.</i>	sports field
27.	停车场	停車場	tíngchēchǎng	<i>n.</i>	parking lot



Grammar

语法

1. Location words and expressions

A location word is composed of a direction word 上 (shàng), 下 (xià), 前 (qián), 后 (hòu), 外 (wài), 里 (lǐ), 左 (zuǒ), 右 (yòu), 旁 (páng), and 边/面 (biān/miàn), 对面 (duìmiàn), 中间 (zhōngjiān), as indicated in the commonly used location words below. 东 (dōng), 南 (nán), 西 (xī), and 北 (běi) are four common direction words that often show up on Chinese maps.

	上	下
边	上边	下边
面	上面	下面



	前	后
边	前边	后边
面	前面	后面



	里	外	对
边	里边	外边	×
面	里面	外面	对面



	左	右	旁
边	左边	右边	旁边
面	左面	右面	×

中间



	东	南	西	北
边	东边	南边	西边	北边
面	东面	南面	西面	北面



To put a direction word in a sentence, simply add it right after the name of a place, with the possessive 的 (de) being optional.

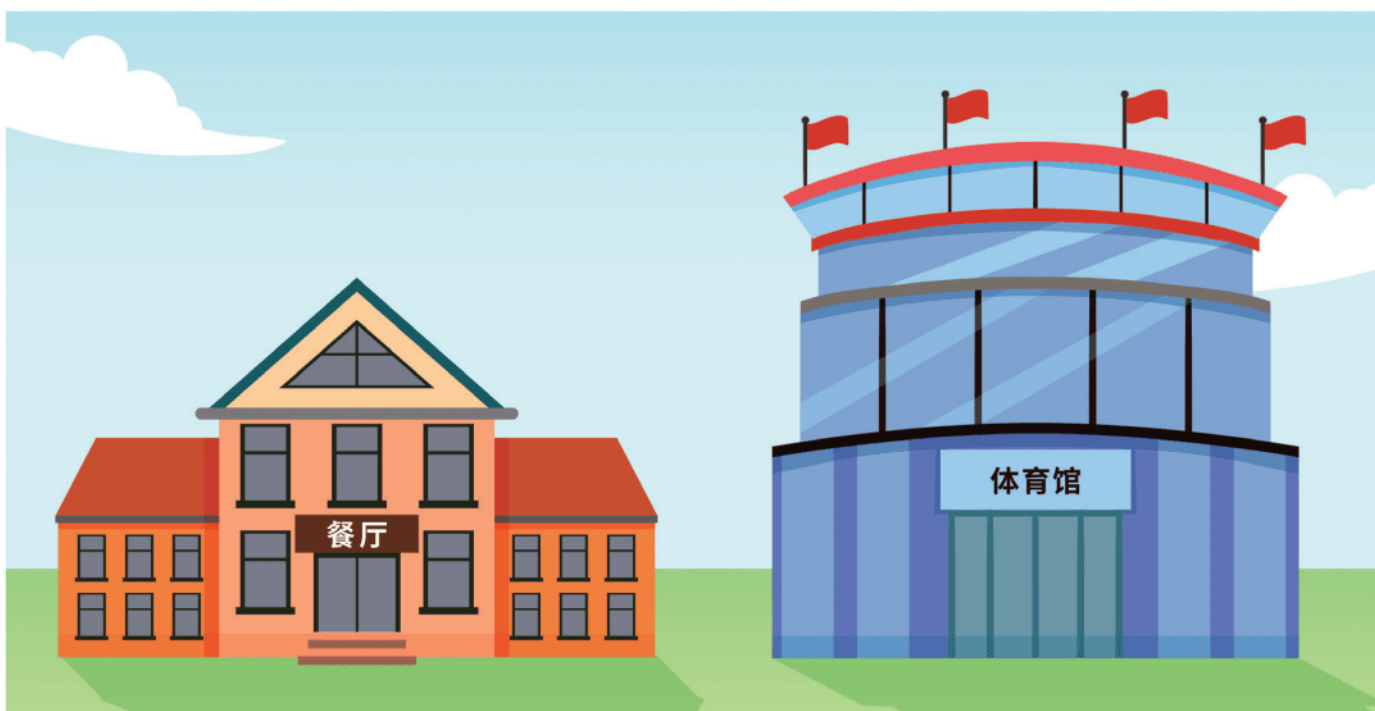
Structure 1: Place 1 (的) + location word + 是 + place 2



中文教室 (的) 对面是图书馆。

Zhōngwén jiàoshì (de) duìmiàn shì túshūguǎn.

Across from the Chinese language classroom is the library.



餐厅（的）旁边是体育馆。

Cāntīng (de) pángbiān shì tǐyùguǎn.

Next to the restaurant is the gymnasium.



学校（的）右边是停车场。

Xuéxiào (de) yòubiān shì tíngchēchǎng.

To the right of the school is the parking lot.

The above three sentences with the “to be” verb 是 (shì) can be converted to the following structure, with the position word 在 (zài) at the beginning of a prepositional phrase:

Structure 2: Place 2 + 在 + place 1 + (的) + location word

图书馆在中文教室(的)对面。

Túshūguǎn zài Zhōngwén jiàoshì (de) duìmiàn.

The library is across from the Chinese language classroom.

体育馆在餐厅(的)旁边。

Tǐyùguǎn zài cāntīng (de) pángbiān.

The gymnasium is next to the restaurant.

停车场在学校(的)右边。

Tíngchēchǎng zài xuéxiào (de) yòubiān.

The parking lot is on the right of the school.

2. Place 1 + 离 (lí) + place 2 + adverb + 远 / 近 (yuǎn/jìn) (close to... / far away from...)

The structure “Place 1 + 离 (lí) + place 2 + adverb + 远/近 (yuǎn/jìn)” describes the distance between two places.

Structure: Place 1 + 离 + place 2 + adverb + 远/近

学校离地铁站不太远。

Xuéxiào lí dìtiězhàn bú tài yuǎn.

The school is not too far from the subway.

中文教室离英文教室不远。

Zhōngwén jiàoshì lí Yīngwén jiàoshì bù yuǎn.

The Chinese language classroom is not far from the English language classroom.

餐厅离图书馆很近。

Cāntīng lí túshūguǎn hěn jìn

The restaurant is very close to the library.

学校大门离停车场不近。

Xuéxiào dàmen lí tíngchēchǎng bú jìn.

The gate of the school is not close to the parking lot.

3. 一 (yī) + verb 1 + 就 (jiù) + verb 2

The structure “一 (yī) + verb 1 + 就 (jiù) + verb 2” involves two actions that happen one right after the other, meaning the second action takes place right after the first action takes place.

Structure: 一 + verb 1 + 就 + verb 2

妈妈一回家就开始做饭。

Māma yì huí jiā jiù kāishǐ zuò fàn.

My mom began to cook right after she got home.

我一到学校就跟同学聊天。

Wǒ yí dào xuéxiào jiù gēn tóngxué liáo tiān.

I chatted with my classmates right after I arrived at school.

老师一进教室就说：“你们早！”

lǎoshī yí jìn jiàoshì jiù shuō: “nǐmen zǎo!”

My teacher said, “Good morning, everyone!” right after entering the classroom.



Dialogue 2

对话二



Class is dismissed. David and Moli are getting ready to leave the Chinese language classroom.



大卫



茉莉



茉莉，你的中文怎么这么^④好！你学中文学了几年了^⑤？

两年了。如果你去中国，你的中文也会很好！



你在中国住了多长时间？





我在上海住了两年^⑤，因为我的爸爸妈妈在那儿工作。



你跟中国学生一起上课吗？



不是，我在国际学校上学，那儿除了中国学生以外，还有很多外国学生。我每天都^⑥跟别的外国学生一起上中文课。



难怪你的中文这么好！



哈哈，听说你特别喜欢学中文，以后我们可以一起练习。



太好了！你现在要去哪儿？



我要去图书馆自习一会儿。



我要去体育馆训练，我们一起去吧！

Pinyin Dialogue 2

Class is dismissed. David and Moli are getting ready to leave the Chinese language classroom.



Dàwèi



Mòlì



Mòlì, nǐ de Zhōngwén zěnmē zhème^④ hǎo! Nǐ xué Zhōngwén xuéle jǐ nián le^⑤?

Liǎng nián le. Rúguǒ nǐ qù Zhōngguó, nǐ de Zhōngwén yě huì hěn hǎo!



Nǐ zài Zhōngguó zhùle duō cháng shíjiān?

Wǒ zài Shànghǎi zhùle liǎng nián^⑤, yīnwèi wǒ de bàba māma zài nàr gōngzuò.



Nǐ gēn Zhōngguó xuéshēng yìqǐ shàng kè ma?

Bú shì, wǒ zài guójì xuéxiào shàng xué, nàr chūle Zhōngguó xuéshēng yǐwài, hái yǒu hěnduō wàiguó xuéshēng. Wǒ měi tiān dōu^⑥ gēn biéde wàiguó xuéshēng yìqǐ shàng Zhōngwén kè.





Nánguài nǐ de Zhōngwén zhème hǎo!



Hāhā, tīngshuō nǐ tèbié xǐhuan xué Zhōngwén,
yǐhòu wǒmen kěyǐ yìqǐ liànxí.



Tài hǎo le! nǐ xiànzài yào qù nǎr?



Wǒ yào qù túshūguǎn zìxí yíhuìr.



Wǒ yào qù tǐyùguǎn xùnliàn, wǒmen yìqǐ zǒu ba!

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	住	住	zhù	<i>v.</i>	to live
2.	长	長	cháng	<i>adj.</i>	long
3.	上海	上海	Shànghǎi	<i>pn.</i>	Shanghai
4.	国际学校	國際學校	guójì xuéxiào	<i>n.</i>	international school
	国际	國際	guójì	<i>adj.</i>	international
5.	每天	每天	měi tiān	<i>t.</i>	every day
	每	每	měi	<i>pron.</i>	every; each
6.	别的	別的	biéde	<i>adj.</i>	other; else
7.	外国	外國	wàiguó	<i>n.</i>	foreign country
8.	上学	上學	shàng xué	<i>vo.</i>	to go to school; to attend school
9.	难怪	難怪	nánguài	<i>adv.</i>	(it's) no wonder (that...); (it's) not surprising (that)
10.	哈	哈	hā	<i>interj.</i>	ha
11.	特别	特別	tèbié	<i>adv./adj.</i>	especially; special; particular; unusual
12.	自习	自習	zìxí	<i>v./n.</i>	to self-study; study hall
13.	一会儿	一會兒	yíhuìr	<i>t.</i>	in a moment; a little while
14.	训练	訓練	xùnlìan	<i>v./n.</i>	to train; training



Grammar

语法

4. 怎么这么 / 那么 (zěnmě zhème/nàme)

怎么这么/那么 (zěnmě zhème/nàme) often occurs after a subject and is followed by an adverb to show the speaker's exclamation and subjective evaluation of something. In this structure, “怎么” carries a different meaning: it means “why.” Please also refer to its usage in Volume I, Lesson 10.

Structure: Subject + 怎么这么/那么 + adjective

你的中文怎么这么好？

Nǐ de Zhōngwén zěnmě zhème hǎo?

Why is your Chinese so good?

汉字怎么这么好看？

Hànzì zěnmě zhème hǎokàn?

Why are Chinese characters so pretty?

教室怎么那么黑？

Jiàoshì zěnmě nàme hēi?

Why is the classroom so dark?

这个地方怎么那么大？

Zhègè dìfang zěnmě nàme dà?

Why is this place so big?

5. Subject + verb + object + verb + 了 (le) + duration of time (+了)

Structure 1:

Subject	verb	object	verb	了	Duration of time	了.
我	学	中文	学	了	三个学期	了。

The sentence 我学中文了三个学期了 (Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xuéle sān gè xuéqī le) means “I have been learning Chinese for three semesters.” This sentence implies that the speaker is still learning Chinese up to the moment of saying the sentence. It also implies that the action of learning Chinese will continue for some time into the future.

Structure 2:

Subject	verb	object	verb	了	Duration of time.
我	学	中文	学	了	两年。

The sentence ending with 了 (le) in Structure 1 differs from the sentence that does not end with 了 (le), as in 我学中文了两年 (Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xuéle liǎng nián; I had learned Chinese for two years) in Structure 2. The sentence without 了 (le) at the end implies that learning Chinese is an action that lasted for a certain length of time in the past but stopped sometime in the past. The question in Dialogue 2, as in 你在中国住了多长时间 (Nǐ zài Zhōngguó zhùle duō cháng shíjiān), is another example without 了 (le) that also fits into this category.

See more examples of the two structures:

他吃饭吃了两个小时了。

Tā chī fàn **chīle** liǎng gè xiǎoshí **le**.

He has been eating for two hours and continues to eat.

他吃饭吃了两个小时。

Tā chī fàn **chīle** liǎng gè xiǎoshí.

He ate for two hours but is currently not eating.

她在中国住了三年了。

Tā zài Zhōngguó **zhùle** sān nián **le**.

She has been living in China for three years and continues to live there in the fourth year.

她在中国住了三年。

Tā zài Zhōngguó **zhùle** sān nián.

She lived in China for three years but no longer lives in China in the fourth year.

6. 每 (měi; every, each) + **measure word** + **noun** + 都 (dōu; both, all)

The adverb 都 (dōu; both, all) occurs after the expression that includes 每 (měi; every, each), as in 每天 (měi tiān; every day), 每个人 (měi gè rén; everyone), 每个月 (měi gè yuè; every month), and 每个星期 (měi gè xīngqī; every week) in the following sentences. It is intended to emphasize the frequency of an action or a phenomenon that is found or observed with frequency.

Note:

Note that 每天 (měi tiān; every day), 每周 (měi zhōu; every week), 每年 (měi nián; every year), and 每次 (měi cì; every time) do not include another measure word, as 天 (tiān), 年 (nián), 周 (zhōu), and 次 (cì) are measure words themselves.

Structure: 每 + measure word (+ noun) + 都 + verb

我 每 天 都 走 路 去 学 校 。

Wǒ měi tiān dōu zǒu lù qù xuéxiào.

I walk to school every day.

今 天 每 个 人 都 得 上 体 育 课 。

Jīntiān měi gè rén dōu děi shàng tǐyùkè.

Everyone must take P.E. class today.

我 的 老 师 每 个 月 都 回 家 看 爸 妈 。

Wǒ de lǎoshī měi gè yuè dōu huí jiā kàn bànmā.

My teacher goes home to visit her parents every month.

他 每 个 星 期 都 给 女 朋 友 打 电 话 。

Tā měi gè xīngqī dōu gěi nǚpéngyou dǎ diànhuà.

He calls his girlfriend every week.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Start a brief conversation with a school visitor.

A: 你是 (add a name here) 吗? 你好, 我叫 (add a name here), 欢迎你来我们学校!

B: 你好, (add a name here), 很高兴认识你!

A: 老师让我带你参观一下校园, 我们走吧!

B: 太好了, 谢谢你!

II Ask and respond to questions about different locations at school.

A: 中文教室在哪儿?

B: 在图书馆 (的) 旁边。

A: 图书馆 (的) 对面是什么地方?

B: 是体育馆。

A: 离这儿远不远?

B: 不远, 很快就到了。

A: 那餐厅呢?

B: 餐厅离这儿很近, 也很方便, 就在操场和大礼堂 (的) 中间。

A: 你能带我去餐厅看看吗?

B: 没问题, 跟我走吧。



III

Ask and respond to questions about how long someone has or had done something with added information.

A: 你的中文怎么这么好!

B: 哪里, 哪里。

A: 你学中文学了几年了?

B: 我学中文学了五年了。

A: 难怪你的中文这么好。

.....

A: 你在中国住了多长时间?

B: 我在上海住了六个月。

A: 你在那儿上什么学校?

B: 上国际学校。

A: 你的同学都是美国人吗?

B: 不是, 国际学校里有中国学生, 也有外国学生, 可是美国学生最多。

IV

Ask and respond to questions about where someone is heading and why.

A: 你现在要去哪儿?

B: 我现在要去体育馆打篮球。

A: 我要去图书馆自习。
那明天见。

B: 明天见。





Exit Tickets 通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Start a brief conversation with a school visitor.

A: 你是……吗？你好，我叫……，欢迎你来我们学校！

B: 你好，……，很高兴认识你！

A: (老师让) 我带你参观一下校园，我们走吧！

B: 太好了，谢谢你！

Exit Ticket 2

Ask and respond to questions about different locations at school.

A: 请问，(place 1) 在哪儿？

B: 在 (place 2) + location word。

A: (Place 3) + location word 是什么地方？

B: 是 (place 4)。

A: 离这儿远不远 / 近不近？

B: 不远 / 很近，很快就到了 / ……分钟就到了。

A: 那 (place 5) 呢？

B: (Place 5) 离这儿很近，也很方便，就在 (place 6) 和 (place 7) 中间。

A: 你能带我去 (place 5) 看看吗？

B: 没问题，跟我走。

Places:

学校, 教室, 餐厅, 图书馆, 体育馆, 大礼堂, 操场, 停车场

Location words:

旁边, 左边, 右边, 对面, 中间, 前面, 后面, 上面,
下面, 外面, 里面



Exit Ticket 3



Ask and respond to questions about how long someone has been doing something or had done something with added information.

Part I. Learning Chinese

A: 你学中文学了几年了?

B: 我学中文学了 (duration of time) 了。

A:

B:

(Exchange information about your class, your teacher, your classmates, and your learning experience.)

Part II. Living in a place

A: 你在 (place) 住了多长时间 / 多久 / 几年 / 几个月?

B: 我在 (place) 住了.....。

(Exchange information about the place, school, classmates, activities, etc.)

Exit Ticket 4

Ask and respond to questions about where someone is heading and why.

A: 你现在要去哪儿?

B: 我现在要去 (place) + (activity)。

A: 我要去 (place) + (activity)。那明天见。

B: 明天见。

Places:

学校, 教室, 餐厅, 图书馆, 体育馆, 大礼堂, 操场, 停车场

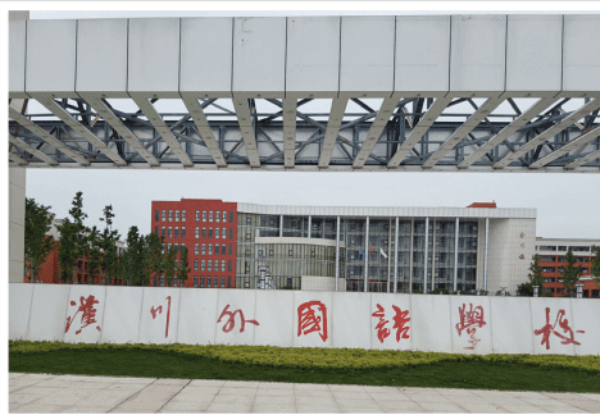
Activities:

自习, 训练, 打球, 吃午饭, 跑步, 上中文课, 看书, 停车, 做功课



Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	近	近	jìn	<i>adj.</i>	near; close to
2.	上面	上面	shàngmiàn	<i>n.</i>	on top of; above
3.	下面	下面	xiàmiàn	<i>n.</i>	under; below
4.	前面	前面	qiánmiàn	<i>n.</i>	in front of; ahead
5.	后面	後面	hòumiàn	<i>n.</i>	back; rear; behind
6.	东	東	dōng	<i>n.</i>	east
7.	南	南	nán	<i>n.</i>	south
8.	西	西	xī	<i>n.</i>	west
9.	北	北	běi	<i>n.</i>	north
10.	多久	多久	duōjiǔ	<i>pron.</i>	how long
11.	小时	小時	xiǎoshí	<i>n.</i>	hour



大门
dà mén
front entrance



操场
cāo chǎng
sports field

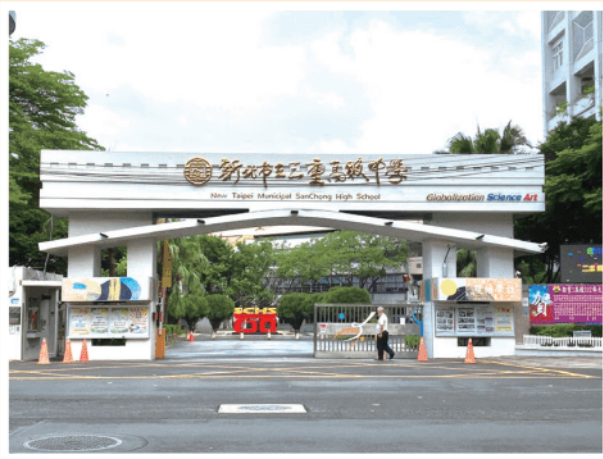


教学楼
jiào xué lóu
academic building



学生宿舍
xué shēng sù shě
student dorms

This is a private school in Hubei (Hanchuan Foreign Language School), where students learn all subjects using both Chinese and English. Would you like to be a student here?



Take a look at the entrances of three high schools in Taiwan. Which one would you like to visit?



What's the number of the classroom in the upper left picture? Do you know that Chinese students stay in the same classroom with the same classmates throughout the three years of high school? Would you like to have the same experience? Why?



How does the cafeteria look like in your school? What kind of food can you get from your cafeteria?



Is the basketball court in your school outdoor or indoor? Have you noticed that the basketball courts in China's high schools are outdoors?



Is this sports field similar to or different from the one in your school?



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Categorization

What place words that end with 场、馆、园、室、堂 and 厅 can you think of?

场	馆	园
室	堂	厅

B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

校 →	
国 →	

C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|------------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. a. 左边 | b. 对面 | c. 旁边 | d. 操场 |
| 2. a. 教室 | b. 外国 | c. 大礼堂 | d. 体育馆 |
| 3. a. 跑步 | b. 特别 | c. 自习 | d. 训练 |
| 4. a. 西班牙文 | b. 汉字 | c. 法文 | d. 中文 |
| 5. a. 校园 | b. 中国 | c. 美国 | d. 英国 |

D Word Search

How many can you find?



训练
外国
中间
餐厅
右边

一会儿
别的
大礼堂
地方
教室

自习
每天
体育馆
对面
校园

特别
停车场
下课
法文
参观

难怪
操场
分钟
左边
欢迎

上学
跑步
旁边
西班牙文

(Go to page 502 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯



jiàoxuélóu
图书馆离教学楼很近，就
jiàoxuélóu
在教学楼的左边。我们放学以
后常常去图书馆自习、看书。



jiàoxuélóu
现在我们来看看教学楼吧。我
们学校每个年级都有十个班，一个
bān
班最多有四十个学生。请你猜猜看
我们学校有多少个学生？



餐厅的右边是宿舍楼。每个宿舍都住六个人。晚上，上了自习课以后，我们会一起回宿舍。大家一回宿舍就得准备睡觉了。有时候，我们会一起聊天。如果第二天有考试，我们也会在宿舍学习一会儿，然后再睡觉。



操场的旁边就是体育馆。体育馆又大又新，所以我们都喜欢来这儿打球。



这是我们学校的操场。从大门走，两分钟就到了。你看！这儿有人在跑步，那儿有学生在训练。

你们好，我叫小亮，是汉川高中三年级的校园大使。今天我带你参观一下我们的校园。我们走吧！

这是我们的校门。在中国，每一个学校都有大门，你看，这是我们的名字——汉川高中。





让我来带你看看我们班的教室吧。我们班是三年级一
班，这是我们的教室，教室的
旁边是一个厕所，同学们上
厕所很方便。从早上七点到晚
上九点，我们都在这个教室
里，所以除了书以外，我们还
带了很多别的东西。这是我的
杯子和吸管，旁边是我的碗！



注释 Notes

- ① 教学楼 jiàoxuélóu: academic building
- ② 班 bān: class
- ③ 厕所 cèsuǒ: restroom
- ④ 上厕所 shàng cèsuǒ: use the restroom
- ⑤ 同学 tóngxué: classmates
- ⑥ 食堂 shítáng: school cafeteria
- ⑦ 大家 dàjiā: everyone
- ⑧ 宿舍楼 sùshèlóu: dorm building
宿舍 sùshè: dorm



Culture Corner

文化角

Smart Campuses in China

智慧校园

Have you heard of “smart campuses”? In Chinese, they are called 智慧校园 (zhìhuì xiàoyuán). Imagine that instead of carrying around your student ID, bank card, and cash, you can use a campus smart card 校园一卡通 (xiàoyuán yì kǎ tōng) to access everything you need at school. This card can be used for a variety of purposes, such as accessing buildings, borrowing library books, paying for food and drinks, and entering dormitories. Some schools even offer a student smart card application on smartphones, allowing you to scan your phone to pay or access menus at the cafeteria. In other schools, facial recognition payments 刷脸支付 (shuā liǎn zhīfù) are used. To make a payment, you simply stand in front of a self-service machine and have your face scanned. Isn't that cool?



xiàoyuán yì kǎ tōng
校园一卡通
campus smart card



sǎo mǎ zhīfù
扫码支付
scan cellphone to pay



shuā liǎn zhīfù
刷脸支付
facial recognition payments

- ◎ What do you think the future of smart campuses will be like?
- ◎ Do you think the use of smart cards and facial recognition payments will become more widespread, or do you think other technologies will be introduced?

Please discuss with your teacher and classmates.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

Yingzi and Moli are meeting each other in front of the school lobby.

英子：你是茉莉嗎？你好，我叫英子，歡迎你來我們學校！

茉莉：你好，英子，很高興認識你！

英子：林老師讓我帶你參觀一下校園，我們走吧！

茉莉：太好了，謝謝你！

英子：這是我們的中文教室，右邊是西班牙文教室，左邊是法文教室。

茉莉：中文教室的對面是什麼地方？

英子：是圖書館。

茉莉：哦！那學生餐廳在哪兒？

英子：餐廳在學校大門的旁邊。

茉莉：離這兒遠不遠？

英子：不遠，一分鐘就到了。

茉莉：那我一下課就能去餐廳吃飯了。

英子：對，從中文教室去餐廳很方便。

茉莉：那是體育館嗎？

英子：對，體育館在餐廳和大禮堂中間。

茉莉：太好了！我可以在那兒打球嗎？

英子：可以啊，你一定會很喜歡這個體育館。

茉莉：我還喜歡跑步，我們學校有操場嗎？

英子：有啊！就在學校外面的停車場旁邊。



Dialogue 1 in English

Yingzi and Moli are meeting each other in front of the school lobby.

Yingzi: Are you Moli? Hi, my name is Yingzi. Welcome to our school!

Moli: Hi Yingzi. Nice to meet you!

Yingzi: Teacher Lin asked me to show you around the campus. Let's go!

Moli: Great. Thank you!

Yingzi: This is our Chinese classroom. On the right is the Spanish classroom, and on the left is the French classroom.

Moli: What is on the opposite side of the Chinese classroom?

Yingzi: That's the library.

Moli: Oh! Where is the cafeteria?

Yingzi: The cafeteria is next to the entrance of the school.

Moli: Is it far from here?

Yingzi: It's not far, just a minute away.

Moli: Then as soon as I finish class, I can go to the cafeteria to eat.

Yingzi: Correct, it's very convenient to get to the cafeteria from the Chinese classroom.

Moli: Is that the gym?

Yingzi: Yes, the gym is between the cafeteria and the auditorium.

Moli: Great! Can I play ball there?

Yingzi: Of course, you will definitely like this gym.

Moli: I also like running. Does our school have a field?

Yingzi: It does! It's outside, next to the parking lot.



Dialogue 2 in traditional characters

Class is dismissed. David and Moli are getting ready to leave the Chinese language classroom.

大衛：茉莉，你的中文怎麼這麼好！你學中文學了幾年了？

茉莉：兩年了。如果你去中國，你的中文也會很好！

大衛：你在中國住了多長時間？

茉莉：我在上海住了兩年，因為我的爸爸媽媽在那兒工作。

大衛：你跟中國學生一起上課嗎？

茉莉：不是，我在國際學校上學，那兒除了中國學生以外，還有很多外國學生。我每天
都跟別的外國學生一起上中文課。

大衛：難怪你的中文這麼好！

茉莉：哈哈，聽說你特別喜歡學中文，以後我們可以一起練習。

大衛：太好了！你現在要去哪兒？

茉莉：我要去圖書館自習一會兒。

大衛：我要去體育館訓練，我們一起走吧！



Dialogue 2 in English

Class is dismissed. David and Moli are getting ready to leave the Chinese language classroom.

David: Moli, how good your Chinese is! How many years have you been learning Chinese?

Moli: Two years. If you go to China, your Chinese will also be very good!

David: How long did you live in China?

Moli: I lived in Shanghai for two years because my parents worked there.

David: In Shanghai, did you have class with Chinese students?

Moli: No, I studied at an international school. Other than Chinese students, there were also many international students. I took Chinese class with other international students every day.

David: No wonder your Chinese is this good!

Moli: Ha ha, I heard that you like to learn Chinese a lot. In the future we can practice together.

David: Great! Where are you heading to now?

Moli: I'm going to the library to study by myself for a while.

David: I'm going to the gym to get training. Let's go together!

| 第二课 | Lesson 2

Theme

当代生活
Contemporary Life

Topic

学校生活
School Life

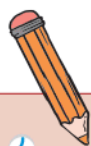


Can you guess what kind of daily activities the students are doing?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 2, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » identify courses that I am taking during a semester.
- » comprehend comments about courses and teachers, including likes, dislikes, favorites, least favorites, and explanations.
- » understand a daily schedule at school and after school, including courses, student activities, clubs, and so on.
- » recognize differences between a high school daily schedule in the United States and one in China.

Interpersonal

- » discuss courses I am taking this semester and talk about courses I like and dislike the most.
- » discuss teachers, exchange ideas, and give comments.
- » discuss daily schedule at school and after school (courses, student activities, clubs).

Presentational

- » give a report on the courses I am taking this semester and comment on the courses and teachers.
- » present my daily schedule and share comments (classes, activities at/after school.)
- » compare a high school daily schedule in the United States to one in China and add comments.



Dialogue 1

对话一



David and Moli have just left the classroom and are heading to the cafeteria.



大卫



茉莉



你这个学期有几门^①课?

我这个学期有八门课, 有中文、英文、历史、体育、两门数学课和两门科学课。



哇, 你这个学期真忙! 对了, 你没有电脑课吗?





没有，听说电脑课的老师很严格。



谁说的！电脑课的老师很好，也很有趣，是我们学校最酷的老师。



是吗？我觉得科学课的老师比较酷，上科学课的**时候**^②，我们做很多实验，太好玩了！



难怪你学得这么好！



哈哈。那你呢？你这个学期忙不忙？



忙死了！我这个学期也选了很多课。**有的**课很有意思，**有的**^③课有一点儿无聊。



你最不喜欢哪门课？



数学课，因为功课太多了，而且有很多考试。你呢？



我最不喜欢历史课，因为每天都得读很多东西，还得写文章。那你最喜欢什么课？



当然是中文课啊！除了学中文以外，我们还学习中国文化。

我也是！我真的**学到**^④了很多东西。



你在中国住了两年，上中文课应该很容易吧！

中文课不难，可是**如果**我不常练习**的话**^⑤，我的中文就会退步，所以我下个学期也要选中文课。



你真是“不落人后”！

Pinyin Dialogue 1

David and Moli have just left the classroom and are heading to the cafeteria.



Dàwèi



Mòlì



Nǐ zhè gè xuéqī yǒu jǐ mén^① kè?

Wǒ zhè gè xuéqī yǒu bā mén kè, yǒu Zhōngwén、
Yīngwén、lìshǐ、tǐyù、liǎng mén shùxuékè hé
liǎng mén kēxuékè.



Wā, nǐ zhè gè xuéqī zhēn máng! Duì le, nǐ méiyǒu
diànnǎokè ma?

Méiyǒu, tīngshuō diànnǎokè de lǎoshī hěn yángé.



Shéi shuō de! Diànnǎokè de lǎoshī hěn hǎo, yě
hěn yǒuqù, shì wǒmen xuéxiào zuì kù de lǎoshī.

Shì ma? Wǒ juéde kēxuékè de lǎoshī bǐjiào
kù, shàng kēxuékè de shíhou^②, wǒmen zuò
hěn duō shíyàn, tài hǎowán le!



Nánguài nǐ xué de zhème hǎo!

Hāhā. Nà nǐ ne? Nǐ zhè gè xuéqī máng bu máng?





Máng sǐ le! Wǒ zhè gè xuéqī yě xuǎnle hěn duō kè. **Yǒude** kè hěn yǒu yìsi, **yǒude**^③ kè yǒu yìdiǎnr wúliáo.

Nǐ zuì bù xǐhuan nǎ mén kè?



Shùxuékè, yīnwèi gōngkè tài duō le, érqǐě yǒu hěn duō kǎo shì. Nǐ ne?

Wǒ zuì bù xǐhuan lìshǐkè, yīnwèi měi tiān dōu děi dú hěn duō dōngxī, hái děi xiě wénzhāng. Nà nǐ zuì xǐhuan shénme kè?



Dāngrán shì Zhōngwénkè a! Chule xué Zhōngwén yǐwài, wǒmen hái xuéxí Zhōngguó wénhuà.

Wǒ yě shì! Wǒ zhēn de **xuédào**^④ le hěn duō dōngxī.



Nǐ zài Zhōngguó zhùle liǎng nián, shàng Zhōngwénkè yīnggāi hěn róngyì ba!

Zhōngwénkè bù nán, kěshì **rúguǒ** wǒ bù cháng liànxí **dehuà**^⑤, wǒ de Zhōngwén jiù huì tuìbù, suǒyǐ wǒ xià gè xuéqī yě yào xuǎn Zhōngwénkè.



Nǐ zhēn shì “búluò-rénhòu” !

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	学期	學期	xuéqī	<i>n.</i>	semester; term
2.	门	門	mén	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for academic courses or subjects
3.	历史	歷史	lìshǐ	<i>n.</i>	history
4.	数学	數學	shùxué	<i>n.</i>	mathematics
5.	科学	科學	kēxué	<i>n.</i>	science
6.	严格	嚴格	yángé	<i>adj.</i>	strict
7.	谁说的	誰說的	shéi shuō de	<i>phr.</i>	who said that
8.	有趣	有趣	yǒuqù	<i>adj.</i>	interesting
9.	比较	比較	bǐjiào	<i>adv./v.</i>	comparatively; relatively; rather; to compare
10.	时候	時候	shíhou	<i>n.</i>	(a point in) time; moment; (a duration of) time
11.	实验	實驗	shíyàn	<i>n./v.</i>	experiment; to experiment
12.	选	選	xuǎn	<i>v.</i>	to choose; to pick; to select; to elect
13.	有的…… 有的……	有的…… 有的……	yǒude… yǒude…	<i>misc.</i>	some..., others...
14.	有一点儿	有一點兒	yǒu yìdiǎnr	<i>adv.</i>	a bit; a little

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
15.	而且	而且	érqiě	<i>conj.</i>	(not only...) but also; moreover; in addition; furthermore
16.	读	讀	dú	<i>v.</i>	to read; to study
17.	东西	東西	dōngxi	<i>n.</i>	thing; stuff
18.	文章	文章	wénzhāng	<i>n.</i>	article; essay
19.	当然	當然	dāngrán	<i>adv.</i>	of course
20.	文化	文化	wénhuà	<i>n.</i>	culture
21.	如果…… 的话	如果…… 的話	rúguǒ… dehuà	<i>misc.</i>	if (coming after a conditional clause)
22.	退步	退步	tuìbù	<i>v.</i>	to do less well than before; to make a concession
23.	下个	下個	xià gè	<i>adj.</i>	next
24.	不落人后	不落人後	búluò-rénhòu	<i>idiom</i>	not fall behind



Grammar

语法

1. The measure word 门 (mén)

The character 门 (mén), literally meaning “door,” carries a different function in this lesson. It is a measure word used for academic subjects.

上个学期我有八门课，太累了！

Shàng ge xuéqī wǒ yǒu bā mén kè, tài lèi le!

Last semester I had eight classes. It was too exhausting!

这门课很容易，可是那门课有一点儿难。

Zhè mén kè hěn róngyì, kěshì nà mén kè yǒu yìdiǎnr nán.

This class is very easy, but that class is a little hard.

2. ……的时候，…… (…de shíhou, …; When..., ...) (I)

The sentence structure with a time expression “……的时候 (de shíhou)” is a complex sentence composed of two clauses. In Dialogue 1, it is used to talk about things that happen at a particular time. The first clause contains a verb, a verbal phrase, or an adjective that indicates a certain situation, and the second clause includes a verb or verbal phrase to describe an action.

Structure: (Subject) verb/verbal phrase/adjective 的时候, subject + verb/verbal phrase.

上中文课的时候，老师教我们写汉字、说中文。

Shàng Zhōngwénkè de shíhou, lǎoshī jiāo wǒmen xiě Hànzì, shuō Zhōngwén.

In Chinese class, the teacher teaches us to write Chinese characters and speak Chinese.

在家的**时候**，我朋友常常一边听音乐，一边做功课。

Zài jiā **de shíhòu**, wǒ péngyou chángcháng yìbiān tīng yīnyuè, yìbiān zuò gōngkè.

At home, my friend frequently listens to music while doing homework.

高兴的**时候**，妹妹喜欢唱歌。

Gāoxìng **de shíhòu**, mèimei xǐhuan chàng gē.

When my sister is happy, she likes singing.

我看电影的**时候**，妹妹打电话找我。

Wǒ kàn diànyǐng **de shíhòu**, mèimei dǎ diànhuà zhǎo wǒ.

When I was watching a movie, my younger sister called me.

3. 有的……，有的…… (Yǒude..., yǒude...; Some..., and some...)

The structure “**有的……，有的……** (Yǒude..., yǒude...)” is equivalent to “Some..., and some...” in English.

Structure: 有的……，有的……

有的人喜欢开车，**有的人**喜欢走路。

Yǒude rén xǐhuan kāi chē, **yǒude** rén xǐhuan zǒu lù.

Some people like to drive cars, and some people like to walk.

有的课很有趣，**有的**课很无聊。

Yǒude kè hěn yǒuqù, **yǒude** kè hěn wúliáo.

Some classes are interesting, and some classes are boring.

有的人在聊天，**有的人**在做运动。

Yǒude rén zài liáotiān, **yǒude** rén zài zuò yùndòng.

Some people are chatting, and some people are exercising.

4. Verb + resultative complement (+ object) (I)

The resultative complement is formed by an action verb followed by another verb that indicates the result of an action. This is the resultative complement in Dialogue 1: 到 (dào) occurs after the verb 学 (xué), indicating that the action has been successfully completed. To negate the sentence, simply add 没 (méi) before the first verb. The object can be omitted if it is understood between the speaker and listener.

看到 (校园) 了。 → 没看到 (校园)。

Kàndào (xiàoyuán) le. → Méi kàndào (xiàoyuán).

Saw the campus. → Did not see the campus.

听到 (录音) 了。 → 没听到 (录音)。

Tīngdào (lùyīn) le. → Méi tīngdào (lùyīn).

Heard the recording. → Did not hear the recording.

找到 (狗) 了。 → 没找到 (狗)。

Zhǎodào (gǒu) le. → Méi zhǎodào (gǒu).

Found the dog. → Did not find the dog.

The resultative complement can also be formed by a verb followed by an adjective, as in 写对 (xiěduì), 写错 (xiěcuò), 猜对 (cāiduì), and 猜错 (cāicuò).



这个汉字，你们读对了吗？

Zhè gè hàn zì, nǐmen dúduì le ma?

Did you all say this Chinese character right?

我读对了！

Wǒ dúduì le!

I said it right!



我读错了！

Wǒ dúcuò le!

I said it wrong!

.....



你们猜对了吗？

Nǐmen cāidui le ma?

You all take a guess. What does this mean?

我猜对了！

Wǒ cāidui le!

I guessed it right!



我猜错了！

Wǒ cāicuò le!

I guessed it wrong!

.....



你们写对了吗?

Nǐmen xiěduì le ma?

Did you guys write it correctly?

我写对了。

Wǒ xiěduì le.

I wrote it right.



我写错了。

Wǒ xiěcuò le.

I wrote it wrong.

5. 如果……的话, …… (rúguǒ…dehuà, …; If…; …)

The “If” sentence “如果……的话(dehuà), ……” carries the same meaning and function as the sentence without “的话”. It is often used as a hypothetical marker in sentences.

Structure: ……的话, ……

如果我们多运动的话, 就会很健康。

Rúguǒ wǒmen duō yùndòng dehuà, jiù huì hěn jiànkāng.

If we exercise more, we will be very healthy.

如果明天你来我家的话, 我们就可以一起看电影。

Rúguǒ míngtiān nǐ lái wǒjiā dehuà, wǒmen jiù kěyǐ yìqǐ kàn diànyǐng.

If you come to my house tomorrow, we can watch a movie together.

如果你想开车的话, 一定要让爸妈知道。

Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng kāi chē dehuà, yídìng yào ràng bànmā zhīdào.

If you want to drive the car, you must let your parents know.



Dialogue 2

对话二



Yingzi and Moli are talking in the hallway about after-school activities.



英子



茉莉



茉莉，你今天有几节^⑥课？



我今天有五节课。



这么轻松啊！

对啊，你呢？上完^⑦中文课以后，你还要上几节课？



上完中文课以后，我还要上四节课，先上物理课，再上化学课和历史课，然后再上美术课^⑧。

听起来^⑨好^⑩忙啊！你放学以后还参加社团活动吗？



当然，我参加了机器人社团。对了，我们今天有活动，欢迎你来玩！

不好意思，我今天下午要去学钢琴，下次吧！



那就下次吧！在中国，你放学以后做什么？

放学以后，我先参加社团活动，然后吃晚饭，晚上还要上晚自习。



晚自习？

对啊，我们每天都上两个小时的晚自习^⑪。



那你们有时间运动吗？

有啊！我们每天都要做早操。





什么是早操?

早操就是早上**的时候**^⑫, 大家一起做运动。



太酷了, 我也想学一学。

在中国, 我们还做眼保健操呢!



眼保健操? 听起来好特别啊! 你可以教教我吗?

没问题, 我们要用手按摩眼睛。来, 你跟我做。



Pinyin Dialogue 2

Yingzi and Moli are talking in the hallway about after-school activities.



Yīngzǐ



Mòlì



Mòlì, nǐ jīntiān yǒu jǐ jié^⑥ kè?

Wǒ jīntiān yǒu wǔ jié kè.



Zhème qīngsōng a!

Duì a, nǐ ne? Shàngwán^⑦ Zhōngwénkè yǐhòu,
nǐ hái yào shàng jǐ jié kè?



Shàngwán Zhōngwénkè yǐhòu, wǒ hái yào
shàng sì jié kè, xiān shàng wùlǐkè, zài shàng
huàxuékè hé lìshǐkè, ránhòu zài shàng
měishùkè^⑧.

Tīng qǐlái^⑨ hǎo^⑩ máng a! Nǐ fàng xué yǐhòu
hái cānjiā shètuán huódòng ma?



Dāngrán, wǒ cānjiāle jīqìrén shètuán. Duì le,
wǒmen jīntiān yǒu huódòng, huānyíng nǐ lái wán!

Bù hǎoyìsi, wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ yào qù xué
gāngqín, xià cì ba!





Nà jiù xià cì ba! Zài Zhōngguó, nǐ fàng xué yǐhòu zuò shénme?



Fàng xué yǐhòu, wǒ xiān cānjiā shètuán huódòng, ránhòu chī wǎnfàn, wǎnshàng hái yào shàng wǎnzìxí.



Wǎnzìxí?



Duì a, wǒmen měi tiān dōu shàng liǎng gè xiǎoshí de wǎnzìxí^⑪.



Nà nǐmen yǒu shíjiān yùndòng ma?



Yǒu a! Wǒmen měi tiān dōu yào zuò zǎocāo.



Shénme shì zǎocāo?



Zǎocāo jiù shì zǎoshàng de shíhou^⑫, dàjiā yìqǐ zuò yùndòng.



Tài kù le, wǒ yě xiǎng xué yi xué.



Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen hái zuò yǎnbǎojiàncāo ne!



Yǎnbǎojiàncāo? Tīng qílái hǎo tèbié a! Nǐ kěyǐ jiāojiao wǒ ma?



Méi wèntí, wǒmen yào yòng shǒu ànmó yǎnjīng. Lái, nǐ gēn wǒ zuò.

Vocabulary List 生词表



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	节	節	jié	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for class periods
2.	轻松	輕鬆	qīngsōng	<i>adj.</i>	light; relaxed; effortless
3.	完	完	wán	<i>v.</i>	(after a verb) finished doing...; to finish
4.	先	先	xiān	<i>adv.</i>	first
5.	再	再	zài	<i>adv.</i>	then (after something, and not until then)
6.	然后	然後	ránhòu	<i>conj.</i>	then (afterward); after that
7.	物理	物理	wùlǐ	<i>n.</i>	physics
8.	化学	化學	huàxué	<i>n.</i>	chemistry
9.	美术	美術	měishù	<i>n.</i>	art; fine arts
10.	听起来	聽起來	tīng qǐlái	<i>vc.</i>	to sound like
	起来	起來	qǐlái		(after a perception verb, e.g., 看) expressing preliminary judgment
11.	社团	社團	shètuán	<i>n.</i>	club
12.	活动	活動	huódòng	<i>n.</i>	activity
13.	机器人	機器人	jīqìrén	<i>n.</i>	robot
14.	不好意思	不好意思	bù hǎoyìsi	<i>phr./adj.</i>	to feel embarrassed; to find it embarrassing; to be sorry (for inconveniencing someone)

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
15.	下午	下午	xiàwǔ	<i>t.</i>	afternoon; p.m.
16.	钢琴	鋼琴	gāngqín	<i>n.</i>	piano
17.	下次	下次	xià cì	<i>t.</i>	next time
18.	晚	晚	wǎn	<i>adj.</i>	late
19.	晚自习	晚自習	wǎnzìxí	<i>n.</i>	evening study hall
20.	小时	小時	xiǎoshí	<i>n.</i>	hour
21.	大家	大家	dàjiā	<i>pron.</i>	everyone
22.	运动	運動	yùndòng	<i>v./n.</i>	to exercise; sports; exercise
23.	早操	早操	zǎocāo	<i>n.</i>	morning exercises (physical exercises commonly performed en masse at schools and workplaces in East Asian countries)
24.	眼保健操	眼保健操	yǎnbǎojiàncāo	<i>n.</i>	eye exercises
	眼	眼	yǎn	<i>n.</i>	eyes
	保健操	保健操	bǎojiàncāo	<i>n.</i>	health exercises
25.	手	手	shǒu	<i>n.</i>	hand
26.	按摩	按摩	àn mó	<i>n./v.</i>	massage; to massage
27.	眼睛	眼睛	yǎnjīng	<i>n.</i>	eyes



Grammar 语法

6. The measure word 节 (jié)

The measure word 节 (jié) is different from 门 (mén), which was introduced in Dialogue 1. 节 (jié) is a measure word used for a class or a session. It's used to count the class periods in school and often relates to time, whereas 门 (mén) is used to count various types of courses and subjects.

昨天我有六节课，可是今天只有五节课。

Zuótiān wǒ yǒu liù jié kè, kěshì jīntiān zhǐ yǒu wǔ jié kè.

Yesterday I had six classes, but today I only have five classes.

老师每天都要教很多节课。

Lǎoshī měi tiān dōu yào jiāo hěn duō jié kè.

The teacher teaches many classes every day.

7. Verb + resultative complement (+ object) (II)

In addition to “verb + 到 (dào)”, “verb + 完 (wán)” is another commonly used two-verb compound that indicates something has been completed. When a resultative complement occurs at the end of a sentence, the sentential particle 了 (le) normally goes with it.

上完(课)了	finished a class
学完(数学)了	finished learning math
吃完(晚饭)了	finished eating dinner
喝完(咖啡)了	finished drinking coffee
做完(功课)了	finished doing homework
听完(录音)了	finished listening to the sound recording
写完(汉字)了	finished writing characters
说完(话)了	finished talking
读完(书)了	finished reading a book
考完(试)了	finished taking an exam

The resultative complement 好 (hǎo) also indicates the completion of an action.

学好了	finished learning something, implying ready for something
做好了	finished doing something, implying ready for something
写好了	finished writing something, implying ready for something
准备好了	finished preparation, implying ready for something

“verb + 懂 (dǒng)” and “verb + 会 (huì)” are useful expressions for responding to your Chinese language teacher’s frequent questions that check for understanding:

听懂了吗? (Tīngdǒng le ma?; Did you understand what you heard?); 看懂了吗? (Kàndǒng le ma?; Did you understand what you saw?); 读懂了吗? (Dúdǒng le ma?; Did you understand what you read?); 学会了吗? (Xuéhuì le ma?; Did you learn how to do it?).

听懂了	listened to something and already understood
看懂了	read/watched something and already understood
读懂了	read something and already understood
学会了	learned something and already understood or knew how to do it

8. Connectors 先……, 再……, 然后再…… (xiān..., zài..., ránhòu zài...; First..., then..., and then...)

The connectors are conjunction words to sequence two or more actions.

Use “先 (xiān) …… , 再 (zài) ……” to connect two actions and “先 (xiān) …… , 再 (zài) …… , 然后再 (ránhòu zài) ……” to connect three sequential actions.

Structure: Subject 先 + action 1, 再 + action 2, 然后再 + action 3

老师要我们先去图书馆看书, 再去教室上课, 然后再去体育馆运动。

Lǎoshī yào wǒmen xiān qù túshūguǎn kàn shū, zài qù jiàoshì shàng kè, ránhòu zài qù tǐyùguǎn yùndòng.

The teacher wants us to go to the library to read first, and then go to class, and then go to the gym to exercise.

学中文的时候, 我们先听录音, 再练习说, 然后再写汉字。

Xué Zhōngwén de shíhòu, wǒmen xiān tīng lùyīn, zài liànxí shuō, ránhòu zài xiě Hànzì.

When learning Chinese, we first listen to the recording, then practice speaking, and then write Chinese characters.

回家以后，我会先吃饭，再做功课，然后再准备考试。

Huí jiā yǐhòu, wǒ huì xiān chī fàn, zài zuò gōngkè, ránhòu zài zhǔnbèi kǎoshì.

After getting home, I will eat first, then do homework, and then prepare for the test.

9. 听起来 (tīng qǐlái, sounds like) + adjective

听起来 (tīng qǐlái) is a commonly used phrase which means “sounds like,” often followed by an adjective or an adjective phrase.

Structure: Subject + 听起来 + adjective/adjective phrase



你会绕口令吗？

Nǐ huì ràokǒulìng ma?

Can you say tongue twisters?

会啊！

Huì a!

Yes, I can!



绕口令听起来很有趣，你教教我吧！

Ràokǒulìng tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuqù, nǐ jiāojiào wǒ ba!

Tongue twisters sound very interesting. Please teach me!

没问题。

Méi wèntí.

Not a problem.



The phrase 看起来 (kàn qǐ lái), which means “looks like,” can be used in a similar structure like 听起来 (tīng qǐ lái).

Structure: Subject + 看起来 + adjective/adjective phrase



林老师今天看起来很高兴。

Lín lǎoshī jīntiān kàn qǐ lái hěn gāoxìng.
Teacher Lin seems very happy today.

对啊！因为我们今天考试考得很好，所以她非常高兴。

Duì a! Yīnwèi wǒmen jīntiān kǎo shì kǎo de hěn hǎo, suǒyǐ tā fēicháng gāoxìng.

Yes! We did well on our test today, so she is very happy.



10. The adverb 好 (hǎo; very)

The character 好 (hǎo), which originally meant nice, good, or well, functions as an adverb that occurs before an adjective. It expresses surprise or an exclamation ending with a sentential final particle 啊 (a).

我最近好忙啊！

Wǒ zuìjìn hǎo máng a!

I have been so busy recently!

这个人好有趣啊！

Zhè gè rén hǎo yǒuqù a!

This person is very interesting!

眼保健操**好**特别**啊**!

Yǎnbǎojiàncāo **hǎo** tèbié **a**!

Eye exercise is so unique!

11. Verb (了) + duration of time + (的) + noun

The expression “verb (了) + duration of time + (的)” is used to describe how long a certain action lasts.

Structure: Verb (了) + duration of time + (的) + noun

看了两个小时的**电影**。

Kànle liǎng gè xiǎoshí **de** diànyǐng.

Watched a two-hour movie.

做了半小时的**早操**。

Zuòle bàn xiǎoshí **de** zǎocāo.

Did a half-hour morning exercise.

上了五十分钟的**课**。

Shàngle wǔshí fēnzhōng **de** kè.

Took a fifty-minute class.

开了一天的**车**。

Kāile yì tiān **de** chē.

Drove for one day.

我每天都**做**三十分钟的**运动**。

Wǒ měitiān dōu **zuò** sānshí fēnzhōng **de** yùndòng.

I exercise for thirty minutes every day.

12. ……的时候, …… (…de shíhou, …; When..., ...) (II)

In Dialogue 2, the structure “……的时候 (de shíhou), ……” refers to things that happen at a particular time in the past, present, or future. The first clause has a certain time adverbial, as in 早上的时候 (zǎoshàng de shíhou). The second clause includes a verb or verbal phrase to describe an action.

昨天晚上十点的时候, 姐姐听到狗在叫。

Zuótiān wǎnshàng shí diǎn de shíhou, jiějie tīngdào gǒu zài jiào.

When it was ten o'clock last night, my older sister heard a dog barking.

夏天的时候, 很多人去北京学中文。

Xiàtiān de shíhou, hěnduō rén qù Běijīng xué Zhōngwén.

When it is summer, a lot of people go to Beijing to learn Chinese.

下午两点的时候, 我们要上中文课。

Xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn de shíhou, wǒmen yào shàng Zhōngwénkè.

When it is two o'clock, we will have Chinese class.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Discuss the courses I am taking this semester, explain which courses and teachers I like or dislike the most, and provide reasons.

A: 你这个学期有几门课? 忙不忙?

B: 八门课, 忙死了!

A: 你上什么课?

B: 除了中文课以外, 我还上英文、历史、体育、美术、化学和两门数学课。你呢?

A: 我这个学期比较轻松, 只有五门课, 有的课很有意思, 有的课很无聊。你最喜欢什么课?

B: 我最喜欢中文课, 老师教得很好, 我学到了很多东西。

A: 你们上中文课的时候做什么?

B: 上中文课的时候, 我们练习写汉字、说中文, 还看了很多中文电影, 学到了很多中国文化。

A: 听起来很有趣。那你最不喜欢什么课?

B: 我最不喜欢历史课, 因为有很多功课, 考试也太难了。

II Discuss the daily schedule at school and after school (including courses, student activities, clubs, etc.).

A: 你今天有几节课?

B: 八节课。

A: 这么累啊! 上完中文课以后, 你要上什么课?

B: 上完中文课以后, 我要先上英文课, 再上科学课, 然后再上历史课。你呢?

A: 我今天很轻松, 只有五节课。上完课以后, 我要参加社团活动。

B: 你参加什么社团?

A: 机器人社团。

B: 听说你们的社团很酷。

A: 对啊! 我们最近做了一个机器人, 这个机器人会唱中文歌, 也会写书法。

B: 听起来好酷啊!

A: 这个机器人太厉害了! 你明天放学以后, 可以来看看。

B: 不好意思, 我明天没有时间。我放学以后, 要准备考试。

A: 没关系, 你可以先看看照片。





III Discuss teachers, exchange ideas, and give comments.

A: 你觉得电脑课的老师怎么样?

B: 电脑课的老师很好, 也很有趣。

A: 听说他很严格, 他的课最难。

B: 谁说的! 他很会教, 虽然电脑课有一点儿难, 可是很多人都学会了。

A: 是吗? 他给你们很多功课吗?

B: 不多, 因为上课的时候, 我们都做完了。

A: 那我下学期也要选他的课。

B: 对啊! 你一定要选他的课, 他是我们学校最酷的老师!

IV Give a report on the courses I am taking this semester and comment on the courses and teachers.

这个学期我有八门课, 是最忙的一个学期。除了中文课以外, 我还上英文、历史、体育、美术、化学和两门数学课, 有的课很有趣, 有的课有一点儿无聊。我最喜欢中文课, 因为老师教得很好, 我学到了很多东西, 也参加了很多文化活动。除了中文课以外, 我也很喜欢体育课。上课的时候, 我常常跟同学一起打篮球、玩游戏, 没有功课, 也没有考试, 又轻松又好玩。体育老师跟别的老师很不一样, 他真的很酷! 学好中文不容易, 所以我得天天练习, 如果我不这么做, 就会退步。我希望下个学期还能选中文课。



V Present my daily schedule and share comments (including classes and activities at/ after school).

今天是星期三，我有六节课，不太忙，也不太累。上完中文课以后，我要先上英文课，再上数学课，然后再上化学课。今天还有两节课要小考，可是都不难！放学以后，我要参加无人机社团。因为下个月有社团活动，很多人会来看我们练习，所以今天我跟团友在操场练习了两、三个小时，回家比较晚。明天是星期四，课最少，只有五节课，是最轻松的一天！

VI

Compare the daily schedule in an American high school to a daily schedule in a Chinese high school and add comments.

中国高中生每天都做早操和眼保健操，这听起来很有趣，也很特别。早上的时候，中国学生会一起做操，可是美国学生不在学校做这种运动。中国学生放学以后，还得在学校上晚自习，很晚才回家，我觉得他们在学校的时间太长了，没有时间做别的事。我听中文老师说，在中国，高中生不会换 (huàn; change) 教室上课，可是在美国，不一样的课有不一样的教室，所以，我们会看到很多不一样的人，也可以认识很多人。





Exit Tickets 通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Discuss the courses you are taking this semester, explain which courses and teachers you like or dislike the most, and provide reasons.

Use the following guided questions and key structures to organize your thoughts:

Guided questions

你这个学期有几门课?

最(不)喜欢什么课?

在……课上,你学到(了)很多东西/文化吗?

你觉得(……课/老师)怎么样?

你喜欢(……课/老师)吗?/你喜不喜欢(……课/老师)?

……老师+很会教吗?/教得很好吗?/教得怎么样?

Key structures and phrases

上……课的时候,……

有的课/老师……,有的课/老师……

除了……以外,……

有一点儿+累/难/多/严格/无聊

比较+容易/酷/好玩/轻松/有意思/有趣

Exit Ticket 2

**Discuss your daily schedule at school and after school
(including courses, student activities, and clubs).**

Use the following guided questions to organize your thoughts:

你今天有几节课？

上完中文课以后，你要上什么课？先……，再……，然后再……。

上完中文课以后，你还有几节课？除了……以外，我还上……课。

你今天早上 / 下午有几节课？有 / 是什么课？

你参加什么社团？

你今天放学以后要做什么？

你有时间……吗？ / 有没有时间……？



Exit Ticket 3



Give a report on the courses that you are taking this semester and comment on the courses and teachers.

See the sample paragraph on page 74 and refer to the guided questions and key structures listed for Exit Tickets 1–2.

Exit Ticket 4

Present your daily schedule and share comments (including classes and activities at/after school).

See the sample paragraph on page 75 and refer to the guided questions and key structures listed for Exit Tickets 1–2.



Exit Ticket 5



Compare a daily schedule in an American high school to one in a Chinese high school and add comments.

Use the following key words and structures to help you get a good start. GO!

Classes and activities

晚自习；做早操；有时间；做运动；做眼保健操；参加社团活动

Useful phrases and structures

每天都……；一边……，一边……；听起来

Same or different?

在（不）一样的教室学习；跟（不）一样的同学上课

Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	语文	語文	yǔwén	<i>n.</i>	literature and language
2.	文学	文學	wénxué	<i>n.</i>	literature
3.	地理	地理	dìlǐ	<i>n.</i>	geography
4.	生物	生物	shēngwù	<i>n.</i>	biology; living creature
5.	学生会	學生會	xuéshēnghuì	<i>n.</i>	student council
6.	义工	義工	yìgōng	<i>n.</i>	volunteer worker; volunteer work
7.	服务	服務	fúwù	<i>n./v.</i>	service; to serve



How many different subjects can you find in the pictures above? What are they?



Can you find the characters that the four books have in common? What do they mean? Do you know what 5 年高考 3 年模拟 (mónǐ) means?

2022 年普通高等学校招生全国统一考试

数 学

一、选择题：本题共 8 小题，每小题 5 分，共 40 分。在每小题给出的四个选项中，只有一项是符合题目要求的。

1. 若集合 $M = \{x | \sqrt{x} < 4\}$, $N = \{x | 3x \geq 1\}$, 则 $M \cap N =$

- A. $\{x | 0 \leq x < 2\}$ B. $\{x | \frac{1}{3} \leq x < 2\}$
C. $\{x | 3 \leq x < 16\}$ D. $\{x | \frac{1}{3} \leq x < 16\}$

This is the first question of the math exam in the 2022 Gaokao. Can you solve the problem and get the correct answer?



What kind of extracurricular activities do you do?



In your school, do you need to wear school uniforms?



Have you played 布袋戏 (bùdàixì) in your Chinese class before? It originated in China's Fujian Province and is practiced in the Minnan-speaking areas.



Do you want to make 版画 (bǎnhuà) to celebrate the Chinese New Year? What patterns would you choose?



What is your favorite activity in your Chinese culture class? Maybe making lanterns!



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

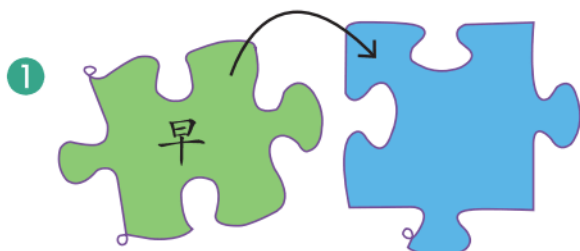
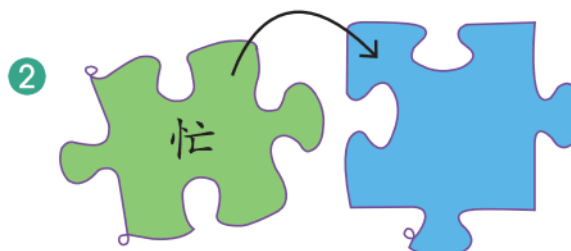
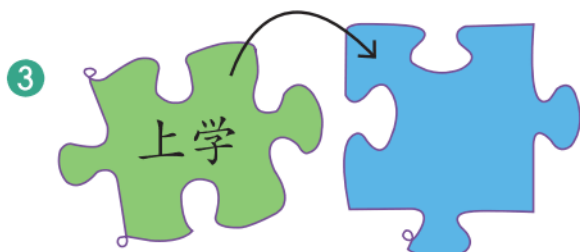
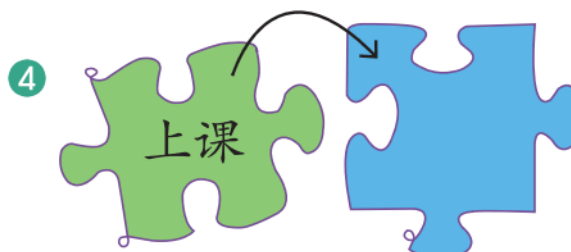
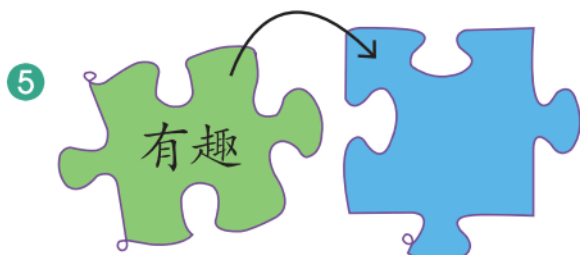
A Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

 school subjects	
 to study; to learn	
 school-related words	

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------|---------|--------|
| 1. a. 历史 | b. 数学 | c. 学期 | d. 科学 |
| 2. a. 轻松 | b. 退步 | c. 严格 | d. 有趣 |
| 3. a. 早操 | b. 晚自习 | c. 眼保健操 | d. 按摩 |
| 4. a. 谁说的 | b. 写文章 | c. 读东西 | d. 做实验 |
| 5. a. 数学 | b. 美术 | c. 物理 | d. 化学 |

D Word Search

How many can you find?



做实验
钢琴
美术
当然
有趣

早操
下午
化学
文章
严格

运动
不好意思
物理
东西
科学

小时
机器人
轻松
而且
数学

晚自习
活动
退步
有一点儿
历史

下次
社团
文化
比较
学期

(Go to page 502 to find the answer keys.)



社团招新



。环保社：



你想学习垃圾回收的方法吗？你想知道怎么样可以保护我们的环境吗？你想让我们的学校越来越干净吗？你想让我们的生活更健康吗？来参加我们环保社吧！

。篮球社：



参加篮球社，让你打篮球打得越来越好！我们每个星期四放学以后，都会一起练习打篮球。除了练习篮球以外，你还可以认识很多喜欢篮球的朋友。我们周末有时候会一起去吃饭、聊天，有时候会一边吃东西，一边看篮球赛。欢迎你来和我们一起练球！

。钢琴社：



你会弹钢琴吗？你学钢琴学了多长时间了？如果你觉得自己弹钢琴弹得不好，没关系，我们会教你，也会一起练习，还会一起去参加音乐会。钢琴社欢迎你！

。科学社：



你觉得科学难不难？如果参加科学社的话，你会觉得学科学越来越容易，也越来越有趣！每天放学以后，我们会一起做化学和物理的功课。有时候，科学老师也会来我们社团，教我们做很多有趣的实验。你知道吗？我们社团还有一个机器人，所以我们会学习怎么做机器人，让机器人帮我们工作！

注释 Notes

① 赛 sài: game

② 弹 tán: play



学校生活

School Life

Hi! If you are a high school student in China, you will probably spend more than eight hours at school each day. That's because you need to do well on the national college entrance exam, the **高考** (gāokǎo). To prepare for it, you will attend school from early in the morning until the evening from Monday to Friday, and sometimes on the weekends too. You will also attend self-study sessions, called **自习**, and take breaks to do eye exercises **眼保健操**, and morning exercise **课间操** (kèjiāncāo). While participating in these activities and school meetings, you will have to wear the school uniform **校服** (xiàofú).



校服 (xiàofú; the school uniform)

It is also common for you to work with your classmates and take care of the school environment. This system of duties is called 值日 (zhí rì), and it involves taking turns to sweep, mop, and clean windows, hallways, and even gardens and sidewalks, as well as the teacher's desk and board. Sometimes, you might see students serving meals to their classmates. This not only teaches everyone about cleanliness, but also promotes teamwork.



- ◎ What do you think about high school life in China?
- ◎ What surprises you?
- ◎ What do you wish you could try out in your own school?
- ◎ Do you have any questions about student life and community service in China?

Please discuss with your teacher and classmates. We will talk more about this in Lesson 10.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

David and Moli have just left the classroom and are heading to the cafeteria.

大衛：你這個學期有幾門課？

茉莉：我這個學期有八門課，有中文、英文、歷史、體育、兩門數學課和兩門科學課。

大衛：哇，你這個學期真忙！對了，你沒有電腦課嗎？

茉莉：沒有，聽說電腦課的老師很嚴格。

大衛：誰說的！電腦課的老師很好，也很有趣，是我們學校最酷的老師。

茉莉：是嗎？我覺得科學課的老師比較酷，上科學課的時候，我們做很多實驗，太好玩了！

大衛：難怪你學得這麼好！

茉莉：哈哈。那你呢？你這個學期忙不忙？

大衛：忙死了！我這個學期也選了很多課。有的課很有意思，有的課有一點兒無聊。

茉莉：你最不喜歡哪門課？

大衛：數學課，因為功課太多了，而且有很多考試。你呢？

茉莉：我最不喜歡歷史課，因為每天都得讀很多東西，還得寫文章。那你最喜歡什麼課？

大衛：當然是中文課啊！除了學中文以外，我們還學習中國文化。

茉莉：我也是！我真的學到了很多東西。

大衛：你在中國住了兩年，上中文課應該很容易吧！

茉莉：中文課不難，可是如果我不常練習的話，我的中文就會退步，所以我下個學期也要選中文課。

大衛：你真是“不落人後”！

**Dialogue 1 in English**

David and Moli have just left the classroom and are heading to the cafeteria.

David: How many classes do you have this semester?

Moli: This semester I have eight classes: Chinese, English, history, physical education, two math classes, and two science classes.

David: Wow, you're really busy this semester! By the way, don't you have computer class?

Moli: No, I heard the computer class teacher is very strict.

David: Who said that! The computer class teacher is nice and funny. He is the coolest teacher at our school.

Moli: Really? I think the science teacher is rather cool. During science class, we do lots of experiments. It's so fun!

David: No wonder you've learned so well!

Moli: Ha ha. What about you? Are you busy this semester?

David: Too busy! I also chose a lot of classes this semester. Some classes are interesting; some are a little boring.

Moli: What is your least favorite class?

David: Math, because there's too much homework, and we have lots of tests. What about you?

Moli: I like history class the least, because every day I have lots of readings and essays to write. Which class do you like the most?

David: Chinese class of course! Besides learning Chinese, we also learn a lot about Chinese culture.

Moli: Me too! I really have learned a lot.

David: You lived in China for two years, Chinese class should be very easy!

Moli: Chinese class isn't hard, but if I don't practice often, my Chinese will regress. So, I will also take Chinese class next semester.

David: You really are someone who doesn't fall behind!



Dialogue 2 in traditional characters

Yingzi and Moli are talking in the hallway about after-school activities.

英子：茉莉，你今天有幾節課？

茉莉：我今天有五節課。

英子：這麼輕鬆啊！

茉莉：對啊，你呢？上完中文課以後，你還要上幾節課？

英子：上完中文課以後，我還要上四節課，先上物理課，再上化學課和歷史課，然後再上美術課。

茉莉：聽起來好忙啊！你放學以後還參加社團活動嗎？

英子：當然，我參加了機器人社團。對了，我們今天有活動，歡迎你來玩！

茉莉：不好意思，我今天下午要去學鋼琴，下次吧！

英子：那就下次吧！在中國，你放學以後做什麼？

茉莉：放學以後，我先參加社團活動，然後吃晚飯，晚上還要上晚自習。

英子：晚自習？

茉莉：對啊，我們每天都上兩個小時的晚自習。

英子：那你們有時間運動嗎？

茉莉：有啊！我們每天都要做早操。

英子：什麼是早操？

茉莉：早操就是早上的時候，大家一起做運動。

英子：太酷了，我也想學一學。

茉莉：在中國，我們還做眼保健操呢！

英子：眼保健操？聽起來好特別啊！你可以教教我嗎？

茉莉：沒問題，我們用手按摩眼睛。來，你跟我做。

**Dialogue 2 in English**

Yingzi and Moli are talking in the hallway about after-school activities.

Yingzi: Moli, how many classes do you have today?

Moli: Today I have 5 classes.

Yingzi: So easy!

Moli: Yes, and you? After Chinese class, how many classes do you have?

Yingzi: After Chinese class, I still have four classes. First I go to physics class, then I take chemistry and history class, and then I take art class.

Moli: That sounds busy! After school do you still join club activities?

Yingzi: Of course, I'm in Robotics Club. By the way, today there's an event; you're welcome to come and play!

Moli: Sorry, this afternoon I'm learning piano. Next time!

Yingzi: Okay, next time! In China, what did you do after school?

Moli: After school, first I would participate in club activities, then I would have my dinner. And then, I would attend the evening study hall.

Yingzi: Evening study hall?

Moli: Yes, every day we had two hours of study hall at night.

Yingzi: Then did you have time to exercise?

Moli: Yes! Every day we did morning exercises.

Yingzi: What's morning exercise?

Moli: Morning exercises occurs in the morning, when everyone does the exercises together.

Yingzi: That's so cool. I want to learn that too.

Moli: In China, we also did eye exercises!

Yingzi: Eye exercises? That sounds unique! Could you teach me?

Moli: No problem, we will use our hands to massage the eyes. Come on, follow me.

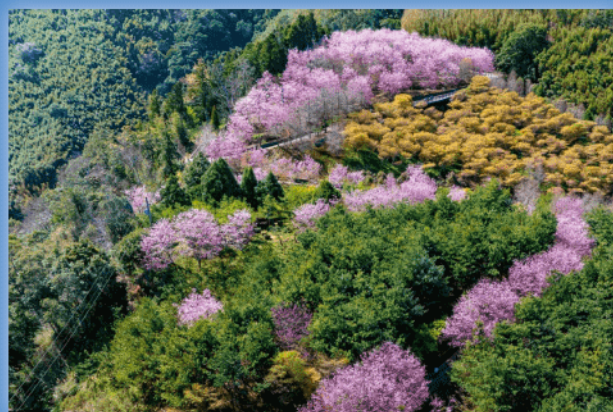
| 第三课 |
Lesson
3

Theme

当代生活
Contemporary Life

Topic

天气
Weather

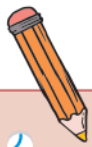


What is your favorite season? Why?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 3, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » identify information about a weather forecast.
- » comprehend information about different types of weather and activities.
- » understand the descriptions of weather in different seasons.
- » recognize the similarities and differences of weather in two places.

Interpersonal

- » discuss the weather forecast to plan for an activity.
- » ask and respond to a question about past experience.
- » ask someone if he or she likes a certain type of weather.
- » ask and respond to questions about the weather in different seasons and one's likes and dislikes.
- » discuss and compare the weather of two places (days, seasons).

Presentational

- » describe daily weather according to the weather forecast.
- » describe my likes and dislikes about different types of weather and activities.
- » talk about the most beautiful season, my favorite season, and activities.
- » compare the similarities and differences of weather in two places (on two days or in two seasons).



Dialogue 1

对话一



After class, David and Yingzi are chatting in the cafeteria.



大卫

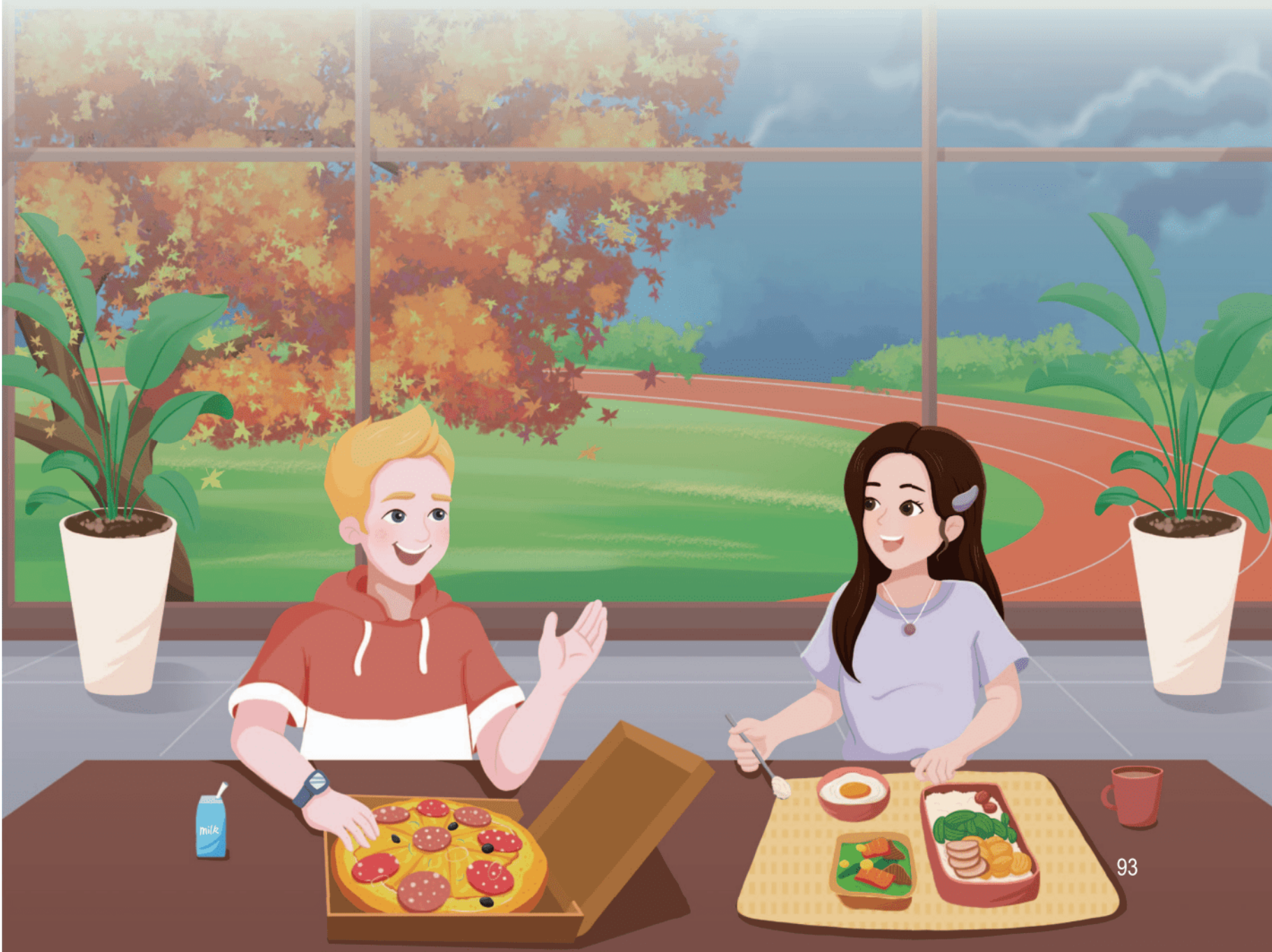


英子



你今天想去中国城吃饭吗?

我们看看天气预报吧! 今天会^①下雨吗?





我看看……会！今天是阴天，白天会下雨，晚上可能会刮风。

那明天的天气怎么样？



明天^①是晴天，不冷不热。

明天多少度？



最高气温是七十华氏度，最低气温是六十华氏度。

太好了，那就明天去吧！我们可以坐在餐馆外面，一边吃饭一边晒太阳。



对啊，多舒服啊！秋天很凉快，是纽约最美的季节。

吃了饭以后，我们可以去中央公园走走。



太好了！秋天的时候，我最喜欢去中央公园。叶子的颜色越来越红，真美。

你听过^②“一叶知秋”这个成语吗？



我听过！看到落叶，我们就知道秋天来了。林老师教过我们。

哈哈！你真是中文班的“成语王”！



Pinyin Dialogue 1

After class, David and Yingzi are chatting in the cafeteria.



Dàwèi



Yīngzǐ



Nǐ jīntiān xiǎng qù Zhōngguóchéng chī fàn ma?

Wǒmen kànkàn tiānqì yùbào ba! Jīntiān huì^① xià yǔ ma?



Wǒ kànkàn...huì! Jīntiān shì yīntiān, báitiān huì xià yǔ, wǎnshàng kěnéng huì guā fēng.

Nà míngtiān de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?



Míngtiān shì^① qíngtiān, bù lěng bú rè.

Míngtiān duōshǎo dù?



Zuì gāo qìwēn shì qīshí huáshìdù, zuì dī qìwēn shì liùshí huáshìdù.

Tài hǎo le, nà jiù míngtiān qù ba! Wǒmen kěyǐ zuò zài cānguǎn wàimiàn, yìbiān chī fàn yìbiān shài tàiyáng.





Duì a, duō shūfu a! Qiūtiān hěn liángkuài,
shì Niǔyuē zuì měi de jìjié.

Chīle fàn yǐhòu, wǒmen kěyǐ qù Zhōngyāng-
gōngyuán zǒuzou.



Tài hǎo le! Qiūtiān de shíhou, wǒ zuì xǐhuan
qù Zhōngyāng-gōngyuán. Yèzi de yánsè yuè
lái yuè hóng, zhēn měi.

Nǐ tīngguò^② “yíyè-zhīqiū” zhè gè chéngyǔ ma?



Wǒ tīngguò! Kàndào luòyè, wǒmen jiù zhīdào
qiūtiān lái le. Lín lǎoshī jiāoguò wǒmen.

Hāhā! Nǐ zhēn shì Zhōngwénbān de
“chéngyǔwáng” !



Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	天气	天氣	tiānqì	<i>n.</i>	weather
2.	预报	預報	yùbào	<i>v./n.</i>	to forecast; forecast
3.	下雨	下雨	xià yǔ	<i>vo.</i>	to rain
4.	阴天	陰天	yīntiān	<i>n.</i>	cloudy day
5.	白天	白天	báitiān	<i>t.</i>	daytime; during the day
6.	可能	可能	kěnéng	<i>mv./adj.</i>	may (happen); possible; probable; maybe; perhaps
7.	刮风	颳風	guā fēng	<i>vo.</i>	to be windy
8.	晴天	晴天	qíngtiān	<i>n.</i>	clear sky; sunny day
9.	冷	冷	lěng	<i>adj.</i>	cold
10.	度	度	dù	<i>n.</i>	degree (temperature)
11.	高	高	gāo	<i>adj.</i>	high
12.	气温	氣溫	qìwēn	<i>n.</i>	temperature
13.	华氏度	華氏度	huáshìdù	<i>n.</i>	Fahrenheit
14.	低	低	dī	<i>adj.</i>	low
15.	餐馆	餐館	cānguǎn	<i>n.</i>	restaurant
16.	晒太阳	曬太陽	shài tàiyáng	<i>vo.</i>	to be in the sun (getting warm or sunbathing, etc.)
	太阳	太陽	tàiyáng	<i>n.</i>	sun
17.	多	多	duō	<i>adv.</i>	how (to what extent)

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
18.	舒服	舒服	shūfu	<i>adj.</i>	comfortable
19.	秋天	秋天	qiūtiān	<i>n.</i>	autumn
20.	凉快	凉快	liángkuài	<i>adj.</i>	nice and cold; pleasantly cool
21.	美	美	měi	<i>adj.</i>	beautiful
22.	季节	季節	jìjié	<i>n.</i>	season
23.	中央公园	中央公園	Zhōngyāng-gōngyuán	<i>pn.</i>	Central Park
	中央	中央	zhōngyāng	<i>adj.</i>	central; middle; center
	公园	公園	gōngyuán	<i>n.</i>	park (for public recreation)
24.	红	紅	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	red
25.	过	過	guò	<i>p.</i>	(particle used after a verb to indicate a past experience)
26.	一叶知秋	一葉知秋	yíyè-zhīqiū	<i>idiom</i>	the falling of one leaf heralds the coming of autumn (idiom); a small sign can indicate a great trend
27.	成语	成語	chéngyǔ	<i>n.</i>	Chinese set expression, typically of four characters, often alluding to a story or historical quotation; idiom; proverb
28.	班	班	bān	<i>n.</i>	class



Grammar

语法

1. 是 (shì; “to be” verb) vs. 会 (huì; will) in a weather forecast

In a weather forecast, the “to be” verb 是 (shì) is followed by 晴天 (qíngtiān; sunny day), 阴天 (yīntiān; cloudy day), and 雨天 (yǔtiān; rainy day). The modal verb required to predict future weather is 会 (huì), which is followed by verbs such as 下雨 (xià yǔ), 下雪 (xià xuě), or 刮风 (guā fēng).

昨天是晴天，今天是阴天，明天是雨天。

Zuótiān shì qíngtiān, jīntiān shì yīntiān, míngtiān shì yǔtiān.

Yesterday was a sunny day, today is a cloudy day, and tomorrow it will be a rainy day.

天气预报说，星期二会下雨，星期三会下雪，也会刮风。

Tiānqì yùbào shuō, Xīngqī'èr huì xià yǔ, Xīngqīsān huì xià xuě, yě huì guā fēng.

The weather forecast says that it will rain on Tuesday and that it will snow and be windy on Wednesday.

2. Verb + 过 (guò) + object, emphasizing past experiences

The pattern “Verb 过 (guò) + object” emphasizes past experiences. To respond to the question 你去过中国吗? (Nǐ qùguò Zhōngguó ma?; Have you been to China?), simply repeat the pattern “去过 (qùguò) + object” in the response. A negative response to the question requires 没 (méi) or 没有 (méiyǒu) to occur before 去过 (qùguò), namely, 没去过 (méi qùguò). Generally speaking, 没去过 (méi qùguò) is used more frequently than 没有去过 (méiyǒu qùguò) as a negative response.



你去过中国吗？

Nǐ qùguò Zhōngguó ma?
Have you been to China?

我没去过中国。

Wǒ méi qùguò Zhōngguó.
I have not been to China.



.....



你听过北京这个城市吗？

Nǐ tīngguò Běijīng zhè gè chéngshì ma?
Have you heard of the city, Beijing?

听过，北京是中国的首都。

Tīngguò, Běijīng shì Zhōngguó de shǒudū.
Yes, Beijing is the capital of China.



.....



你参加过机器人社团吗？

Nǐ cānjiāguò jīqìrén shètuán ma?
Have you ever joined a robot club?

我没参加过，可是听说很有趣。

Wǒ méi cānjiāguò, kěshì tīngshuō hěn yǒuqù.
I haven't participated before, but I heard it's very interesting.





Dialogue 2

对话二



David saw the photos that his Chinese friend in Beijing had posted on social media and starts to chat with his Chinese friend about weather.



大卫



朋友



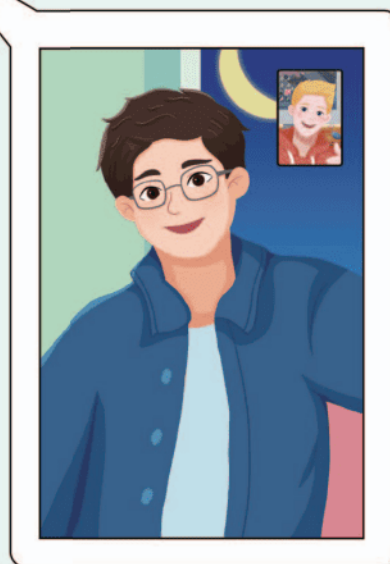
北京的夏天热不热?

北京的夏天不但很热, 而且很干^③。



冬天会下雪吗?

每年冬天都会下雪。纽约呢?





纽约的冬天也常常下雪，我记得去年冷死了。你怕冷吗？

我以前很怕冷，可是现在不怕冷了。



为什么？

因为我常常用热水泡脚。



太有意思了，我也想试试看。

你最喜欢什么季节？



我最喜欢冬天。今年冬天我想去上海，
上海的冬天跟纽约一样冷^④吗？

上海的冬天也很冷，而且常常下雨。不过，
纽约的冬天比上海更冷^⑤。



你喜欢下雨天吗？

不喜欢，下雨的时候，又冷又湿，有一
点儿不方便。



我喜欢下雪天，中国什么地方常常下雪？

哈尔滨啊！那儿的冬天非常冷，但是冰雕
和雪景好看极了！我们明年一起去吧！



好啊！

Pinyin Dialogue 2

David saw the photos that his Chinese friend in Beijing had posted on social media and starts to chat with his Chinese friend about weather.



Dàwèi



Péngyou



Běijīng de xiàtiān rè bu rè?

Běijīng de xiàtiān **búdàn** hěn rè, **érqiě** hěn gān^③.



Dōngtiān huì xià xuě ma?

Měi nián dōngtiān dōu huì xià xuě. Niǚyuē ne?



Niǚyuē de dōngtiān yě chángcháng xià xuě, wǒ jìde qùnián lěng sǐ le. Nǐ pà lěng ma?

Wǒ yǐqián hěn pà lěng, kěshì xiànzài bú pà lěng le.



Wèi shénme?

Yīnwèi wǒ chángcháng yòng rèshuǐ pào jiǎo.



Tài yǒu yìsi le, wǒ yě xiǎng shìshi kàn.

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan shénme jìjié?





Wǒ zuì xǐhuan dōngtiān. Jīnnián dōngtiān wǒ xiǎng qù Shànghǎi, Shànghǎi de dōngtiān gēn Niǚyuē yíyàng lěng^④ ma?



Shànghǎi de dōngtiān yě hěn lěng, érqǐ chángcháng xià yǔ. Búguò, Niǚyuē de dōngtiān bǐ shànghǎi gèng lěng^⑤.



Nǐ xǐhuan xià yǔtiān ma?



Bù xǐhuan, xià yǔ de shíhou, yòu lěng yòu shī, yǒu yìdiǎnr bù fāngbiàn.



Wǒ xǐhuan xià xuětiān, Zhōngguó shénme dìfang chángcháng xià xuě?



Hā'ěrbīn a! Nàr de dōngtiān fēicháng lěng, dànshì bīngdiāo hé xuějǐng hǎokàn jí le! Wǒmen míngnián yìqǐ qù ba!



Hǎo a!

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	夏天	夏天	xiàtiān	<i>n.</i>	summer
2.	不但…… 而且……	不但…… 而且……	búdàn… érqiě…	<i>misc.</i>	not only (...but also...)
3.	干	乾	gān	<i>adj.</i>	dry
4.	冬天	冬天	dōngtiān	<i>n.</i>	winter
5.	下雪	下雪	xià xuě	<i>vo.</i>	to snow
6.	去年	去年	qùnián	<i>t.</i>	last year
7.	怕	怕	pà	<i>v.</i>	to be afraid; to fear
8.	泡	泡	pào	<i>v.</i>	to soak
9.	脚	腳	jiǎo	<i>n.</i>	foot
10.	试	試	shì	<i>v.</i>	to try; to test
11.	比	比	bǐ	<i>prep./v.</i>	compared with (comparison marker); to compare
12.	不过	不過	búguò	<i>conj.</i>	but; however
13.	湿	濕	shī	<i>adj.</i>	wet; moist
14.	哈尔滨	哈爾濱	Hā'ěrbīn	<i>pn.</i>	Harbin, subprovincial city and capital of Heilongjiang province 黑龙江 in northeast China
15.	但是	但是	dànshì	<i>conj.</i>	but; however
16.	冰雕	冰雕	bīngdiāo	<i>n.</i>	ice sculpture
17.	雪景	雪景	xuějǐng	<i>n.</i>	snowscape
18.	极	極	jí	<i>adv.</i>	extremely



Grammar

语法

3. 不但 (búdàn)……, 而且 (érqiě)…… (not only...but also...)

The structure 不但 (búdàn)……, 而且 (érqiě)…… is used to connect two parallel ideas, i.e., two adjectives in this lesson. The two adjectives should be both positive or negative at the semantic level. The structure is intended to emphasize that both statements are true.

Structure: Subject + 不但 + description 1, 而且 + description 2

北京的夏天不但很热, 而且很干。

Běijīng de xiàtiān búdàn hěn rè, érqiě hěn gān.
Beijing's summer is not only hot but also dry.

科学课不但很有趣, 而且很轻松。

Kēxué kè búdàn hěn yǒuqù, érqiě hěn qīngsōng.
Science class is not only interesting but also easy.

今天的功课不但很多, 而且很难。

Jīntiān de gōngkè búdàn hěn duō, érqiě hěn nán.
Today's homework is not only a lot but also very difficult.

他家不但很大, 而且很漂亮。

Tā jiā búdàn hěn dà, érqiě hěn piàoliang.
His house is not only very big but also very pretty.

4. A 跟 (gēn) B 一样 (yíyàng) + adjective (A is as + adjective + as B)

This sentence structure has an adjective that is added to the basic structure “A 跟 (gēn) B 一样 (yíyàng)” at the end of the sentence.

Structure: A + 跟 + B + 一样 + adjective

他跟弟弟一样高。

Tā gēn dìdì yíyàng gāo.

He and his younger brother are the same height.

昨天的天气跟今天一样冷。

Zuótiān de tiānqì gēn jīntiān yíyàng lěng.

The weather yesterday was as cold as the weather is today.

中文歌跟英文歌一样好听。

Zhōngwéngē gēn Yīngwéngē yíyàng hǎotīng.

Chinese songs are as good to listen to as English songs.

5. A 比 (bǐ) B + 更 (gèng; even more) + adjective

The 比 structure “A 比 (bǐ) B + adjective” is used to compare two things or two people.

Structure 1: A + 比 + B + adjective

上海比纽约大。

Shànghǎi bǐ Niǔyuē dà.

Shanghai is bigger than New York.

小李比小林聪明。

Xiǎolǐ bǐ Xiǎolín cōngmíng.

Little Li is smarter than Little Lin.

今天的气温**比**昨天低。

Jīntiān de qìwēn **bǐ** zuótiān dī.

Today's temperature is lower than yesterday's.

这个问题**比**那个问题难。

Zhè gè wèntí **bǐ** nà gè wèntí nán.

This question is more difficult than that question.

In the structure “A **比** (bǐ) B + **更** (gèng; even more) + adjective,” the adverb **更** (gèng), meaning “even more,” is a frequently used adverb that occur before the adjective in the comparison sentence structure. It can never be substituted by adverbs such as **很** (hěn), **太** (tài), **非常** (fēicháng), and so on.

Structure 2: A + **比** + B + **更** + adjective

上海**比**纽约**更**大。

Shànghǎi **bǐ** Niǔyuē **gèng** dà.

Shanghai is even bigger than New York.

小李**比**小林**更**聪明。

Xiǎolǐ **bǐ** xiǎolín **gèng** cōngmíng.

Little Li is even smarter than Little Lin.

今天的气温**比**昨天**更**低。

Jīntiān de qìwēn **bǐ** zuótiān **gèng** dī.

Today's temperature is even lower than yesterday's.

这个问题**比**那个问题**更**难。

Zhè gè wèntí **bǐ** nà gè wèntí **gèng** nán.

This question is even more difficult than that question.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Discuss weather forecast to plan for an activity.

A: 你今天想去打篮球吗?
B: 先看看天气预报吧! 今天会下雨吗?
A: 我看看……会! 今天是阴天, 白天会下雨, 晚上可能会刮风。
B: 那明天的天气怎么样?
A: 明天是晴天, 不太冷, 也不太热。
B: 明天多少度?
A: 最高气温是七十华氏度, 最低气温是六十华氏度。
B: 太好了, 那就明天去吧! 我们可以一边打球一边聊天。



II Exchange ideas about one's favorite season and weather.

A: 你最喜欢什么季节?
B: 我最喜欢春天 (chūntián; spring), 春天的天气不但很暖和 (nuǎnhuo; warm), 而且很舒服。
A: 我最喜欢冬天, 因为下雪的时候, 我可以跟家人一起滑雪 (huá xuě; to ski)、玩雪球。
B: 你喜欢很冷的天气吗?
A: 喜欢, 我不怕冷, 但是我更希望每天都是晴天。
B: 我也喜欢晴天, 不过, 雨天也不错。
A: 真希望明天能下雨, 最近的天气又热又干。
B: 是啊! 好久没有下雨了。



Talk about the weather of a city and compare it to the weather of another city (in four seasons).

A: 北京的夏天热不热?

B: 北京的夏天不但很热, 而且很干。

A: 冬天会下雪吗?

B: 每年冬天都会下雪, 冷死了。

A: 春天呢?

B: 春天的天气跟秋天一样好, 又凉快又舒服。上海呢?

A: 上海夏天的天气, 又热又湿, 很不舒服。

B: 那冬天的天气怎么样?

A: 冬天很冷, 常常下雨。

B: 哦, 我知道了! 夏天的时候, 北京很干, 上海很湿, 冬天的时候, 北京会下雪, 上海会下雨。

A: 你说对了! 夏天的时候, 北京比上海干, 冬天的时候, 北京比上海更冷。

IV Ask about past experience by using “verb + 过 + object.”

A: 你听过“一叶知秋”这个成语吗?

B: 听过。

A: 你在哪儿听过这个成语?

B: 在中文班啊! 老师教过我们。

A: 那你听过“七上八下”吗?

B: 没听过。那是什么意思?

A: 我也不知道, 我们问问老师吧!

V Report a weather forecast.

天气预报说, 今天是晴天, 不会下雨, 最高气温是八十九华氏度, 最低气温是七十三华氏度。明天是阴天, 天气不太好, 晚上会很冷, 最低气温是五十六华氏度。这个周末的天气会很好, 白天的气温是七八十度, 不冷也不热, 可以去外面走一走、晒太阳, 非常舒服。

VI Present my likes and dislikes about the weather of four seasons with added comments.

上海一年有四个季节，每一个季节都很不一样。

春天最舒服，天气非常暖和，所以我最喜欢春天。

夏天又热又湿，让人觉得很不舒服。

秋天很凉快，也很美，叶子的颜色非常好看，有黄的、橘的、红的，真的非常漂亮。

冬天不但会下雪，而且也会下雨，冷死了。我很怕冷，所以不喜欢冬天。

Seasons: 季节，春天，夏天，秋天，冬天

Structures: 每……都……；又……
又……；不但……而且……；越来越……

Verbs and adjectives about weather:

冷，热，暖和，下雨，下雪，刮风

Adjectives used for commenting on weather:

美，舒服，好看，漂亮

Adverbs: 很，非常，真，特别，更，有一点儿



VII Describe the weather of a city and compare it with that of another city.

听说中国的上海跟美国的纽约一样有名。我没去过上海，不知道上海的天气怎么样。

听上海的朋友说，上海的夏天很热，也很湿。冬天的时候，常常下雨，又冷又湿，可是比纽约暖和。纽约的冬天非常冷，常常下大雪，雪景很漂亮，是滑雪的好地方。

如果你喜欢雨，那就应该住在上海，不过，如果你喜欢雪，那就住在纽约吧！



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Discuss weather forecast to plan for an activity.

A and B discuss the weather forecast and decide on the date for their activity at the end of the dialogue.

A: 你今天 / 明天想去 (do something) 吗?

今天 / 明天会下雨吗?

今天 / 明天天气怎么样?

今天 / 明天是晴天吗?

今天 / 明天几度?

天气预报怎么说?

最高气温是多少 (华氏) 度? 最低气温呢?

B: 太好了, 那就 (今天 / 明天) 去吧! 我们可以一边……
一边……。

Exit Ticket 2

Exchange ideas about your favorite season and weather.

Use the following questions to talk about your favorite season and weather:

Q1: 你（最）喜欢什么季节？（春天，夏天，秋天，冬天）

Q2: 你（最）喜欢晴天吗？（晴天，阴天，雨天，下雪天，很冷 / 很热的天气）

Q3: 你喜欢很冷的天气吗？（很冷，很热，很干，很湿）

Q4: 你（最）喜欢什么样的天气？

Consider adding the following descriptions, including your hopes or wishes, and provide reasons.

Detailed description

……又 + adjective + 又 + adjective

……不但 + adjective, 而且 + adjective

……不但会 + verb, 而且会 + verb

……越来越 + adjective

Hope or wish

我希望每天都是（晴天，阴天，雨天，下雪天……）

Reason

因为……

因为……的时候，我可以跟 + somebody + 一起 do something.



Exit Ticket 3



Talk about the weather of a city and compare it to the weather of another city.

1. Choose a city and ask what the weather is like there, first in one season, and then in other seasons.

A: 北京的夏天热不热? / 北京的夏天会下雨吗? /

北京夏天的天气怎么样?

B: 北京的夏天……

2. Elicit more information about other seasons.

春天呢? 秋天呢? 冬天呢?

……的时候, ……

每年冬天都会……

常常 / 不常

Fixed expression indicating extremely (colloquial)

冷死了 / 热死了 / 干死了

(Include more detailed descriptions, as indicated in Exit Ticket 2.)

3. Extend the dialogue to another city and compare the two cities.

Comparison

A 的天气跟 B (不) 一样, ……

A 的天气跟 B 一样 + 好 / 冷 / 热 / 干 / 湿 / 暖和 / 凉快 / 舒服……

A 的天气比 B (更) + 冷 / 热 / 干 / 湿 / 暖和 / 凉快 / 舒服……

Exit Ticket 4

Ask about someone's past experience by using "verb + 过".

Begin with a YES/NO question that includes "verb + 过" indicating past experience.
Can you sustain the dialogues with comments or ideas?

A: 你听过……吗?

B: (没) 听过。

.....

Examples of "verb + 过" (action verbs)

听过, 说过, 写过, 看过, 吃过, 喝过, 教过, 问过,
唱过, 跳过, 画过, 做过, 玩过



Exit Ticket 5

Report a weather forecast.

Begin with the phrase 天气预报说 and continue with information about weather that resembles a short weather forecast.

天气预报说,

Weather elements you may use:

Likelihood and prediction of weather: 会, 不会

Time adverbials: 今天, 明天, 后天, 这个周末, 这个星期六,
下个星期一, 白天, 晚上, 早上, 中午, 下午

Types of weather: 晴天, 阴天, (下)雨天, 下雪天

Verbs for weather description: 下雨, 下雪, 刮风

Adjectives for weather description: 冷, 热, 暖和, 凉快

Adjectives used for commenting on weather: 美, 舒服, 好看, 漂亮

Adverbs: 很, 非常, 真, 特别, 更, 有一点儿

Temperature: 最高气温是八十九华氏度, 最低气温是七十三华氏度

Time of day: 白天, 晚上, 早上, 中午, 下午

Exit Ticket 6

Present the weather (including all four seasons) that you like and dislike, with added comments.

一年有四个季节，每一个季节都很不一样。

春天……

夏天……

秋天……

冬天……

Words or expressions you may use:

Seasons: 季节，春天，夏天，秋天，冬天

Structures: 每……都……；又……又……；不但……而且……；
越来越……

Adjectives for weather description: 冷，热，干，暖和，凉快，冷死了，
热死了

Verbs for weather description: 下雨，下雪，刮风

Adjectives used for commenting on weather: 美，舒服，好
看，漂亮

Adverbs: 很，非常，真，特别，更，有一点儿



Exit Ticket 7



Describe the weather of a city and compare it to that of another city.

Refer to Item III in What I Have Learned and the dialogue that you have created for Exit Ticket 3. Convert one of them to a short paragraph.

Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	摄氏度	攝氏度	shèshìdù	<i>n.</i>	Celsius
2.	暖和	暖和	nuǎnhuo	<i>adj.</i>	warm; nice and warm
3.	闷热	悶熱	mēnrè	<i>adj.</i>	muggy; stuffy
4.	滑雪	滑雪	huá xuě	<i>v.</i>	to ski
5.	春天	春天	chūntiān	<i>n.</i>	spring (season)
6.	多云	多雲	duōyún	<i>n.</i>	cloudy
	云	雲	yún	<i>n.</i>	cloud
7.	雾	霧	wù	<i>n.</i>	fog; mist
8.	打雷	打雷	dǎ léi	<i>vo.</i>	to rumble with thunder
9.	闪电	閃電	shǎndiàn	<i>n.</i>	lightning
10.	伞	傘	sǎn	<i>n.</i>	umbrella



Can you guess what they are doing in the picture? What season is it?



What is your favorite summer activity?



When speaking of autumn, what is the activity that you associate with this season? Do you know that 围炉煮茶 (wéilú-zhǔchá, stove-boiled tea) is quickly becoming the latest slow-living lifestyle trend among young Chinese consumers? Would you like to try it?



What do you like to do most in winter? Do you know how to ice skate? If not, don't worry! The parks in Beijing have ice wagons, ice bicycles, and ice slides so that everyone can have fun.



Vocabulary Challenge

词汇挑战

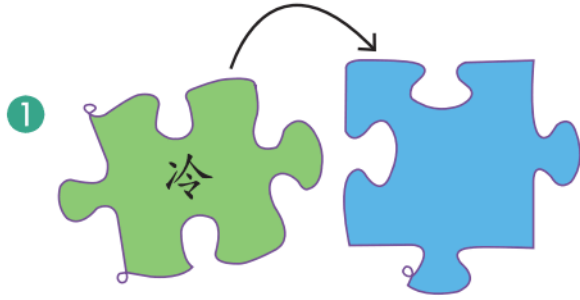
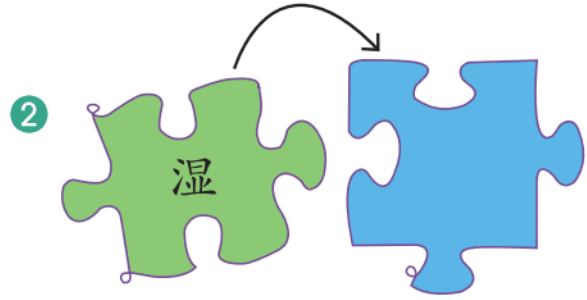
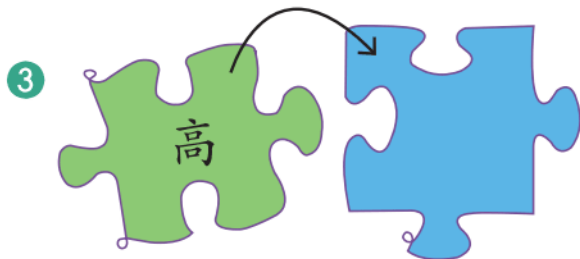
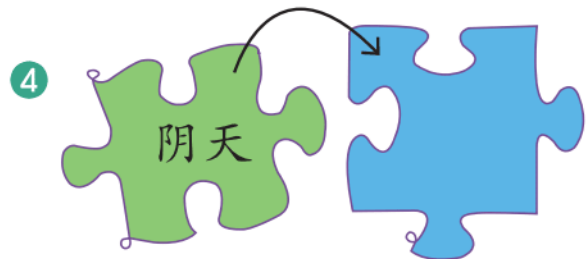
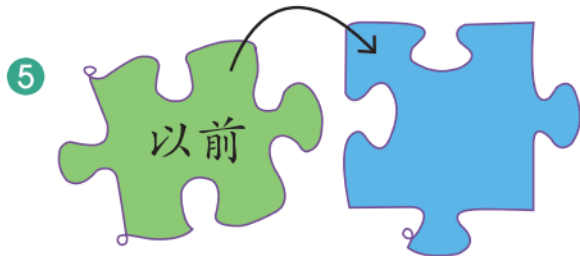
A Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

<div>天 →</div> <div>weather</div>	
<div>天 →</div> <div>time expression</div>	
<div>天 →</div> <div>seasons</div>	
<div>天 →</div> <div>others</div>	
<div>可 →</div> <div>miscellaneous</div>	

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a. 阴天 | b. 雨天 | c. 晴天 | d. 夏天 |
| 2. a. 热 | b. 湿 | c. 冷 | d. 凉快 |
| 3. a. 夏天 | b. 秋天 | c. 白天 | d. 冬天 |
| 4. a. 华氏度 | b. 餐馆 | c. 气温 | d. 天气 |
| 5. a. 下雪 | b. 刮风 | c. 冰雕 | d. 下雨 |

D Word Search

How many can you find?



不但……而且……
泡脚
中央公园
餐馆
可能

美极了
去年
季节
高低
白天

雪景
下雪
凉快
气温
阴天

冰雕
冬天
秋天
华氏度
下雨

哈尔滨
夏天
舒服
晴天
天气预报

不过
成语
晒太阳
刮风

(Go to page 503 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯

中国的冬天

如果你问我：“你喜欢中国的冬天吗？”我会说：“中国很大。所以，在中国，每个地方的冬天都有一点儿不一样。”

The ice sculpture in Harbin

Hā'ěrbīn de bīngdiāo 哈尔滨的冰雕

如果你喜欢冰雕和雪景，那一定得来位于中国东北^{dōngběi}的哈尔滨。在哈尔滨，每年都会有哈尔滨冰雪节。哈尔滨人会用冰和雪来做很多不一样的东西，厉害极了。除了看冰雕和雪景以外，你也可以去蒸桑拿^{zhēng sāngná}。冬天的时候，跟两三个朋友一起，一边蒸桑拿^{zhēng sāngná}，一边玩游戏，太舒服了！



It's raining in Taipei

Táiběi xià yǔ le 台北下雨了

“冬季到台北来看雨”，你听过这首歌吗？台北冬天的气温不太低，最高气温是20摄氏度左右，最低气温是13摄氏度左右。虽然台北的冬天气温不低，可是很多台北人觉得冬天很湿冷，因为台北的冬天常常下雨。你知道吗？2020年的冬天，台北只有六天没有下雨！



Winter in Hainan

Dōngtiān de Hǎinán 冬天的海南



如果你怕冷，那你冬天一定要来海南玩。冬天的时候，很多东北人会住在海南，因为海南的冬天不冷也不热，暖和极了，每天都是晴天。你可以游泳、晒太阳，还可以在海边走一走，真的舒服极了。

注释 Notes

- ① 东北 dōngběi: Northeast
- ③ 台北 Táiběi: Taipei
- ⑤ 左右 zuǒyòu: around, about
- ⑦ 暖和 nuǎnhuo: warm

- ② 蒸桑拿 zhēng sāngnǎ: sauna
- ④ 摄氏度 shèshì: centigrade
- ⑥ 海南 Hǎinán: Hainan Province



Culture Corner
文化角

天南海北四季游

Experience the Beauty of China during All Four Seasons

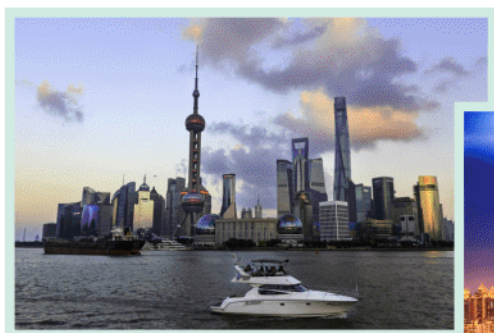
© Are you and your family planning a trip to China?

Well, most regions in China have four distinct seasons. In the north, the climate is temperate with warm summers and cold winters. In the south, the climate is characterized by hot summers and mild winters.

You might be wondering which are the best places to experience the seasons. During spring and autumn, it is pleasant to visit almost all the big cities like Beijing 北京 (Běijīng), Shanghai 上海 (Shànghǎi), Guangzhou 广州 (Guǎngzhōu), and Chongqing 重庆 (Chóngqìng).



Běijīng 北京 Beijing



Shànghǎi 上海 Shanghai



Guǎngzhōu 广州 Guangzhou



Chóngqìng 重庆 Chongqing

If you want to go north, you can try riding horses on the Nei Mongol Grassland 内蒙古大草原 (Nèiménggǔ dà cǎoyuán). If you want to go south, you can take a boat to enjoy the Guilin Landscape 桂林山水 (Guìlín shānshuǐ).



Nèiménggǔ dà cǎoyuán
内蒙古大草原
Nei Mongol Grassland



Guìlín shānshuǐ
桂林山水
Guilin Landscape

In the summer, you can visit the Xinjiang Tianshan Mountain 新疆天山 (Xīnjiāng Tiānshān) or Qinghai Lake 青海湖 (Qīnghǎi Hú) in the west, or visit Qingdao 青岛 (Qīngdǎo) on the east coast to taste seafood and enjoy beach culture. In the winter, you can enjoy sunshine and try surfing in Hainan 海南 (Hǎinán), or stay in the warm and Flowery City 春城 (Chūn Chéng) Kunming 昆明 (Kūnmíng), or visit and experience ice and snow sculptures with lights in the Ice City 冰城 (Bīng Chéng) Harbin 哈尔滨 (Hā'ěrbīn).



Xīnjiāng Tiān Shān
新疆天山
Xinjiang Tianshan



Qīnghǎi Hú
青海湖
Qinghai Lake



Qīngdǎo
青岛
Qingdao



Hǎinán
海南
Hainan



Kūnmíng
昆明
Kunming



Hā'ěrbīn
哈尔滨
Harbin

◎ Alright, where do you want to visit in China the most?

◎ In which seasons do you plan to go with your family?

Feel free to discuss this topic with your teacher and classmates.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

After class, David and Yingzi are chatting in the cafeteria.

大衛：你今天想去中國城吃飯嗎？

英子：我們看看天氣預報吧！今天會下雨嗎？

大衛：我看看……會！今天是陰天，白天會下雨，晚上可能會颶風。

英子：那明天的天氣怎麼樣？

大衛：明天是晴天，不冷不熱。

英子：明天多少度？

大衛：最高氣溫是七十華氏度，最低氣溫是六十華氏度。

英子：太好了，那就明天去吧！我們可以坐在餐館外面，一邊吃飯一邊曬太陽。

大衛：對啊，多舒服啊！秋天很涼快，是紐約最美的季節。

英子：吃了飯以後，我們可以去中央公園走走。

大衛：太好了！秋天的時候，我最喜歡去中央公園。葉子的顏色越來越紅，真美。

英子：你聽過“一葉知秋”這個成語嗎？

大衛：我聽過！看到落葉，我們就知道秋天來了。林老師教過我們。

英子：哈哈！你真是中文班的“成語王”！

**Dialogue 1 in English**

After class, David and Yingzi are chatting in the cafeteria.

David: Do you want to go to Chinatown to eat today?

Yingzi: Let's check the weather forecast! Is it going to rain today?

David: Let me check... yes! Today is a cloudy day, and it will rain in the daytime and might be windy at night.

Yingzi: What's the weather like for tomorrow?

David: Tomorrow will be sunny, not too cold and not too hot.

Yingzi: What will the temperature be tomorrow?

David: The highest temperature will be seventy degrees Fahrenheit; the lowest temperature will be sixty degrees Fahrenheit.

Yingzi: Great, then let's go tomorrow! We can sit outside the restaurant to eat while basking in the sun.

David: Yes, how comfortable! Fall is very cool. It's the most beautiful season in New York.

Yingzi: After eating, we can take a walk in Central Park.

David: Sounds good! During fall, my favorite place to go is Central Park. The leaves get redder and redder. It's very beautiful.

Yingzi: Have you heard of the idiom "A falling leaf heralds autumn"?

David: I have! Once the leaves fall down, we know it's autumn. Teacher Lin taught us.

Yingzi: Ha ha! You really are the Chinese class "idiom king"!



Dialogue 2 in traditional characters

David saw the photos that his Chinese friend in Beijing had posted on social media and starts to chat with his Chinese friend about weather.

大衛：北京的夏天熱不熱？

朋友：北京的夏天不但很熱，而且很乾。

大衛：冬天會下雪嗎？

朋友：每年冬天都會下雪。紐約呢？

大衛：紐約的冬天也常常下雪，我記得去年冷死了。你怕冷嗎？

朋友：我以前很怕冷，可是現在不怕冷了。

大衛：為什麼？

朋友：因為我常常用熱水泡腳。

大衛：太有意思了，我也想試試看。

朋友：你最喜歡什麼季節？

大衛：我最喜歡冬天。今年冬天我想去上海，上海的冬天跟紐約一樣冷嗎？

朋友：上海的冬天也很冷，而且常常下雨。不過，紐約的冬天比上海更冷。

大衛：你喜歡下雨天嗎？

朋友：不喜歡，下雨的時候，又冷又濕，有一點兒不方便。

大衛：我喜歡下雪天，中國什麼地方常常下雪？

朋友：哈爾濱啊！那兒的冬天非常冷，但是冰雕和雪景好看極了！我們明年一起去吧！

大衛：好啊！

**Dialogue 2 in English**

David saw the photos that his Chinese friend in Beijing had posted on social media and starts to chat with his Chinese friend about weather.

David: Is Beijing hot during the summer?

Friend: Beijing's summer is not only very hot; it is also very dry.

David: Does it snow in the winter?

Friend: It snows every winter. What about New York?

David: It also snows often during the winter in New York. I remember it was so cold last year. Are you afraid of the cold?

Friend: I used to be very afraid of the cold, but now I'm not afraid of it anymore.

David: Why?

Friend: Because I often soak my feet in hot water.

David: That's very interesting. I also want to try that.

Friend: What is your favorite season?

David: I like winter the most. I'm going to Shanghai this winter. Is Shanghai's winter as cold as New York's?

Friend: The winter in Shanghai is also very cold, and it often rains. But the winter in New York is colder than Shanghai.

David: Do you like rainy days?

Friend: I don't like them. When it rains, it's cold and wet. It's a bit inconvenient.

David: I like snowy days. Where does it often snow in China?

Friend: Harbin! The winters there are very cold, but the ice sculptures and snow scenes are very beautiful. Next year, let's go there together!

David: Okay!

第四课 Lesson 4

Theme

当代生活
Contemporary Life

Topic

在中国餐馆吃饭
Eat at a Chinese Restaurant

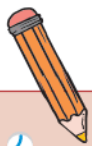


What is your favorite Chinese food? Is there a Chinese restaurant close to your home?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 4, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » comprehend a dialogue between a waiter and a guest ordering food at a Chinese restaurant.
- » understand guests' comments on food flavor and preferences.
- » recognize information about paying the bill for a meal.

Interpersonal

- » engage in a conversation between a waiter and a guest ordering food.
- » exchange comments on food flavor and preferences.
- » complete a transactional dialogue about paying a bill.

Presentational

- » describe an experience of ordering and tasting food at a Chinese restaurant.



Dialogue 1

对话一



Li Ming, David, and Yingzi ate Chinese food at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown in New York last weekend.



服务员



李明



大卫



英子



欢迎光临！几位？



三位。



好，请跟我来……请坐请坐。你们想喝什么？





好的，这是菜单，你们先看看。

先来三杯水^①吧！



(The waitress returns to the table after several minutes.)



你们想点什么？

快点菜吧！我饿死了。



我想点麻婆豆腐。



我很想吃北京烤鸭。我们点半只吧！



很久没有吃牛肉面了^②，我们来一碗吧！听说这家的红烧牛肉面很有名。



我们再点几个特色菜就够了。



请问，你们有什么特色菜？



很多客人都喜欢点糖醋鱼和蚂蚁上树，味道好极了。

好，那我们也尝一尝吧。



不行，我对海鲜过敏。



那不要点糖醋鱼了！我们点蔬菜吧，手撕包菜怎么样？



好啊！这儿的手撕包菜很不错。



好的，一盘麻婆豆腐、半只北京烤鸭、一碗红烧牛肉面、一盘蚂蚁上树和一盘手撕包菜。对吗？

对，一共五道菜，我们还要三碗米饭。



好，菜马上就来。我们今天送酸辣汤，你们先尝一尝。

谢谢。



Pinyin Dialogue 1

Li Ming, David, and Yingzi ate Chinese food at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown in New York last weekend.



fúwùyuán

Lǐ Míng

Dàwèi

Yīngzǐ



Huānyíng guānglín! Jǐ wèi?



Hǎo, qǐng gēn wǒ lái qǐng zuò, qǐng zuò.
Nǐmen xiǎng hē shénme?

Sān wèi.



Hǎo de, zhè shì càidān, nǐmen xiān kànkàn.

Xiān lái sān bēi shuǐ^① ba!

(The waitress returns to the table after several minutes.)



Nǐmen xiǎng diǎn shénme?

Kuài diǎn cài ba! Wǒ è sǐ le.



Wǒ xiǎng diǎn mápó dòufu.



Wǒ hěn xiǎng chī Běijīng kǎoyā. Wǒmen diǎn
bàn zhī ba!



Hěn jiǔ méiyǒu chī niúròumiàn le^②, wǒmen lái yì wǎn ba! Tīngshuō zhè jiā de hóngshāo niúròumiàn hěn yǒumíng.

Wǒmen zài diǎn jǐ gè tèsècài jiù gòu le.

Qǐng wèn, nǐmen yǒu shénme tèsècài?

Hěn duō kèrén dōu xǐhuan diǎn tángcùyú hé mǎyǐ shàngshù, wèidào hǎo jí le.

Hǎo, nà wǒmen yě cháng yi cháng ba.

Bù xíng, wǒ duì hǎixiān guòmǐn.

Nà bú yào diǎn tángcùyú le! Wǒmen diǎn shūcài ba, shǒusī bāocài zěnmeyàng?

Hǎo a! Zhè de shǒusī bāocài hěn bú cuò.

Hǎo de, yì pán mápó dòufu, bànzhī Běijīng kǎoyā, yì wǎn hóngshāo niúròumiàn, yì pán mǎyǐ shàngshù hé yì pán shǒusī bāocài. Duì ma?

Duì, yíòng wǔ dào cài, wǒmen hái yào sān wǎn mǐfàn.

Hǎo, cài mǎshàng jiù lái. Wǒmen jīntiān sòng suānlàotāng, nǐmen xiān cháng yi cháng.

Xièxie.

Vocabulary List 生词表



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	服务员	服務員	fúwùyuán	<i>n.</i>	waiter; waitress
2.	光临	光臨	guānglín	<i>v.</i>	to honor with one's presence
3.	位	位	wèi	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for people
4.	菜单	菜單	càidān	<i>n.</i>	menu
5.	点	點	diǎn	<i>v.</i>	to order (food in a restaurant)
6.	饿	餓	è	<i>adj./v.</i>	hungry; to be hungry
7.	麻婆豆腐	麻婆豆腐	mápó dòufu	<i>n.</i>	Mapo tofu
	豆腐	豆腐	dòufu	<i>n.</i>	tofu
8.	北京烤鸭	北京烤鴨	Běijīng kǎoyā	<i>n.</i>	Peking duck
	烤	烤	kǎo	<i>v.</i>	to roast; to bake; to grill
	鸭	鴨	yā	<i>n.</i>	duck
9.	牛肉面	牛肉麵	niúròumiàn	<i>n.</i>	beef noodles
	牛肉	牛肉	niúròu	<i>n.</i>	beef
	面	麵	miàn	<i>n.</i>	noodle
10.	家	家	jiā	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for businesses
11.	碗	碗	wǎn	<i>mw./ n.</i>	a measure word for dishes; bowl

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
12.	红烧	紅燒	hóngshāo	<i>v.</i>	to braise or stew in soy sauce
13.	有名	有名	yǒumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous; well-known
14.	特色菜	特色菜	tèsècài	<i>n.</i>	specialty; signature dish
15.	够	夠	gòu	<i>adj.</i>	enough
16.	客人	客人	kèrén	<i>n.</i>	customer; guest; visitor
17.	糖醋鱼	糖醋魚	tángcùyú	<i>n.</i>	sweet and sour fish
	糖	糖	táng	<i>n.</i>	sugar; candy
	醋	醋	cù	<i>n.</i>	vinegar
	鱼	魚	yú	<i>n.</i>	fish
18.	蚂蚁上树	螞蟻上樹	mǎyǐ shàngshù	<i>n.</i>	“Ants climbing a tree,” a Sichuan dish made with bean vermicelli and ground meat
	蚂蚁	螞蟻	mǎyǐ	<i>n.</i>	ant
	树	樹	shù	<i>n.</i>	tree
19.	味道	味道	wèidào	<i>n.</i>	flavor; smell
20.	尝	嘗	cháng	<i>v.</i>	to taste; to try
21.	海鲜	海鮮	hǎixiān	<i>n.</i>	seafood
22.	过敏	過敏	guòmǐn	<i>v.</i>	to be allergic to

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
23.	蔬菜	蔬菜	shūcài	<i>n.</i>	vegetables
24.	手撕包菜	手撕包菜	shǒusī bāocài	<i>n.</i>	Hand-torn stir-fried cabbage
	撕	撕	sī	<i>v.</i>	to tear
	包菜	包菜	bāocài	<i>n.</i>	cabbage
25.	盘	盤	pán	<i>mw./n.</i>	a measure word for food; plate; dish
26.	一共	一共	yíòng	<i>adv.</i>	altogether
27.	道	道	dào	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for courses in a meal
28.	米饭	米飯	mǐfàn	<i>n.</i>	(cooked) rice
29.	马上	馬上	mǎshàng	<i>adv.</i>	at once; right away; immediately
30.	送	送	sòng	<i>v.</i>	to give (as a present)
31.	酸辣汤	酸辣湯	suānlàtāng	<i>n.</i>	sour and spicy soup
	酸	酸	suān	<i>adj.</i>	sour
	辣	辣	là	<i>adj.</i>	spicy
	汤	湯	tāng	<i>n.</i>	soup



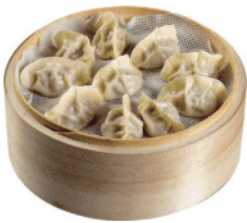
Grammar

语法

1. 来 (lái) + number + measure word + noun (+ 吧!)

This expression is commonly used by a guest to order drinks or dishes at a Chinese restaurant. The verb 来 (lái), originally meaning “come,” has a different meaning in Dialogue 1, referring to what a guest orders. When a person uses this expression to order something to drink or eat, the expression starts with the verb, with the subject omitted, forming an imperative sentence that ends with a sentential final particle 吧 (ba), indicating a suggestion, to soften the tone. Note that 吧 (ba) is optional.

The elements that come after the verb 来 (lái) include a number, a measure word, and a noun, such as in 一壶茶 (yì hú chá; a pot of tea), 一盘麻婆豆腐 (yì pán mápó dòufu; a dish of Mapo tofu), 一只北京烤鸭 (yì zhī Běijīng kǎoyā; a Beijing Roast Duck), 一碗米饭 (yì wǎn mǐfàn; a bowl of rice).

Number	Measure word	Noun
shí 十	gè 个	 jiǎozi 饺子
sān 三	wǎn 碗	<div>    </div> <div> mǐfàn 米饭 suānlàtāng 酸辣汤 niúròumiàn 牛肉面 </div>

Number	Measure word	Noun
yì 一	pán 盘	<div>  <p>mápó dòufu 麻婆豆腐</p> </div> <div>  <p>mǎyǐ shàngshù 蚂蚁上树</p> </div> <div>  <p>tángcùyú 糖醋鱼</p> </div> <div>  <p>shǒusī bāocài 手撕包菜</p> </div>
bàn 半	zhī 只	<div>  <p>kǎoyā 烤鸭</p> </div> <div>  <p>jī 鸡</p> </div>
liǎng 两	hú 壶	<div>  <p>chá 茶</p> </div>
wǔ 五	dào 道	<div>  <p>cài 菜</p> </div>

2. Subject + duration of time + 没(有) (méi/méiyǒu) + verb/verbal phrase + 了 (le)

The structure denotes that one has not done something for a certain duration of time.

Structure: Subject + duration of time + 没(有) + verb/verbal phrase + 了

我很久没有吃米饭了。

Wǒ hěn jiǔ méiyǒu chī mǐfàn le.

I have not eaten rice for a long time.

他两个星期没看电影了。

Tā liǎng gè xīngqī méi kàn diànyǐng le.

He has not watched movies for two weeks.

这个服务员一年没说中文了。

Zhè gè fúwùyuán yì nián méi shuō Zhōngwén le.

This waiter has not spoken Chinese for one year.

那家餐馆的厨师很忙，他已经三天没睡觉了。

Nà jiā cānguǎn de chúshī hěn máng, tā yǐjīng sān tiān méi shuìjiào le.

The chef of that restaurant is very busy. He has not slept for three days.



Dialogue 2

对话二



英子



李明



大卫



服务员

Yingzi, Li Ming, and David have just finished eating and are ready to pay the bill.



吃得好饱啊！你们觉得这家餐馆的菜怎么样？

很好啊！北京烤鸭很地道。蚂蚁上树也很好吃，**没有**麻婆豆腐**那么**咸^③。





包菜也很新鲜，味道很不错。

我觉得酸辣汤很好喝，酸酸的，辣辣的^④。



你们觉得红烧牛肉面怎么样？

非常好吃，牛肉又香又嫩。我们带一碗给茉莉吧！她一定很想吃。



不行，她吃素。

那算了，我们买单吧。



(The waitress brings the bill.)



一共多少钱？

一共九十六块（钱）。



那一个人付三十二块钱就可以了。

你们要刷卡还是付现金？



刷卡。

(Li Ming turns to David and Yingzi.)



我先刷卡，然后你们再给我现金。

没问题。我们再给一点儿小费吧！





要给多少小费呢?



这家餐馆的服务很好, 那就百分之二十吧!



好!



谢谢! 你们要打包吗?



好啊, 麻烦你帮我们打包。

(The waitress starts to pack their food.)



好的, 这是幸运饼干。欢迎你们下次再来。请慢走。



谢谢。

(Li Ming takes a bite of that fortune cookie.)



我看看今天我的幸运数字是什么?
哇, 是18! 还有四个汉字: 笑—口—
常—开。



“笑口常开”是什么意思?



就是天天开心的意思。

Pinyin Dialogue 2

Yingzi, Li Ming, and David have just finished eating and are ready to pay the bill.



Yīngzǐ



Lǐ Míng



Dàwèi



fúwùyuán



Chī de hǎo bǎo a! Nǐmen juéde zhè jiā cānguǎn de cài zěnmeyàng?

Hěn hǎo a! Běijīng kǎoyā hěn dìdao. Mǎyǐ shàngshù yě hěn hǎochī, méiyǒu mápó dòufu nàme xián^③.



Bāocài yě hěn xīnxiān, wèidào hěn bú cuò.

Wǒ juéde suānlàtāng hěn hǎohē, suānsuān de, làlà de^④.



Nǐmen juéde hóngshāo niúròumiàn zěnmeyàng?

Fēicháng hǎochī, niúròu yòu xiāng yòu nèn. Wǒmen dài yì wǎn gěi Mòlì ba! Tā yídìng hěn xiǎng chī.



Bù xíng, tā chī sù.

Nà suàn le, wǒmen mǎi dān ba.



(The waitress brings the bill.)



Yígòng duōshao qián?

Yígòng jiǔshíliù kuài (qián).



Nà yí gè rén fù sānshí'èr kuài qián jiù kěyǐ le.

Nǐmen yào shuā kǎ hái shì fù xiànjīn?



Shuā kǎ.

(Li Ming turns to David and Yingzi.)



Wǒ xiān shuā kǎ, ránhòu nǐmen zài gěi wǒ xiànjīn.

Méi wèntí. Wǒmen zài gěi yìdiǎnr xiǎofèi ba!



Yào gěi duōshao xiǎofèi ne?

Zhè jiā cānguǎn de fúwù hěn hǎo, nà jiù bǎi fēn zhī èrshí ba!



Hǎo!

Xièxie! Nǐmen yào dǎ bāo ma?



Hǎo a, máfan nǐ bāng wǒmen dǎ bāo.

(The waitress starts to pack their food.)



Hǎo de, zhè shì xìngyùn bǐnggān. Huānyíng
nǐmen xià cì zài lái. Qǐng màn zǒu.

Xièxie.



(Li Ming takes a bite of that fortune cookie.)

Wǒ kànkàn jīntiān wǒ de xìngyùn shùzì shì shénme?
Wā, shì shíbā! Hái yǒu sì gè hànzi: xiàokǒu-chángkāi.



“Xiàokǒu-chángkāi” shì shénme yìsi?

Jiù shì tiāntiān kāixīn de yìsi.



Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	饱	飽	bǎo	<i>adj.</i>	to eat until full
2.	地道	地道	dìdao	<i>adj.</i>	authentic; genuine
3.	咸	鹹	xián	<i>adj.</i>	salty
4.	新鲜	新鮮	xīnxiān	<i>adj.</i>	fresh
5.	香	香	xiāng	<i>adj.</i>	aromatic; used to describe food that smells good
6.	嫩	嫩	nèn	<i>adj.</i>	tender; soft
7.	吃素	吃素	chī sù	<i>vo.</i>	to be a vegetarian
8.	给	給	gěi	<i>prep.</i>	to; for
9.	算了	算了	suàn le	<i>phr.</i>	forget it; never mind
10.	买单	買單	mǎi dān	<i>vo.</i>	to take the check; to pay the restaurant bill
11.	钱	錢	qián	<i>n.</i>	money
12.	块	塊	kuài	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for the basic Chinese monetary unit
13.	付	付	fù	<i>v.</i>	to pay
14.	刷卡	刷卡	shuā kǎ	<i>vo.</i>	to pay by credit card
	刷	刷	shuā	<i>v.</i>	to swipe; to brush
	卡	卡	kǎ	<i>n.</i>	card

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
15.	现金	現金	xiànjīn	<i>n.</i>	cash
16.	小费	小費	xiǎofèi	<i>n.</i>	tip
17.	服务	服務	fúwù	<i>v./n.</i>	service; to serve
18.	百分之……	百分之……	bǎi fēn zhī…	<i>n.</i>	percent
	百	百	bǎi	<i>nu.</i>	hundred
19.	打包	打包	dǎ bāo	<i>vo.</i>	to wrap food up; to go (food)
20.	麻烦	麻煩	máfan	<i>v./adj.</i>	to trouble or bother somebody; troublesome
21.	饼干	餅乾	bǐnggān	<i>n.</i>	biscuit; cracker; cookie
22.	慢	慢	màn	<i>adj.</i>	slow
23.	数字	數字	shùzì	<i>n.</i>	number
24.	笑口常开	笑口常開	xiàokǒu-chángkāi	<i>idiom</i>	laugh and smile all the time
	笑	笑	xiào	<i>v.</i>	to laugh; to smile
25.	意思	意思	yìsi	<i>n.</i>	meaning
26.	开心	開心	kāixīn	<i>v./adj.</i>	to feel happy



Grammar

语法

3. A 没有 (méiyǒu) B 那么 (nàme) + adjective (A is not as + adjective + as B)

The structure “A 没有 (méiyǒu) B 那么 (nàme) + adjective” means “A is not as + adjective + as B” in English. It is used to compare the quality of two people, places, or things as shown in the following examples:

Structure: A 没有 B 那么+ adjective

美国菜没有中国菜那么好吃。

Měiguó cài méiyǒu Zhōngguó cài nàme hǎochī.

American food is not as tasty as Chinese food.

酸辣汤没有糖醋鱼那么地道。

Suānlà tāng méiyǒu tángcù yú nàme dìdao.

The hot and sour soup is not as authentic as the sweet and sour fish.

今年的天气没有去年的天气那么热。

Jīnnián de tiānqì méiyǒu qùnián de tiānqì nàme rè.

This year's weather is not as hot as last year's.

This above structure can be converted to the 比 (bǐ) structure, as shown in the following table:

A 没有 B 那么 + adjective

VS.

B 比 A + adjective

A 没有 B 那么 + adjective

美国菜没有中国菜那么好吃。

Měiguócài méiyǒu Zhōngguócài nàme hǎochī.

American food is not as tasty as Chinese food.

B 比 A + adjective

中国菜比美国菜好吃。

Zhōngguócài bǐ Měiguócài hǎochī.

Chinese food tastes better than American food.

酸辣汤没有糖醋鱼那么地道。

Suānlàtāng méiyǒu tángcùyú nàme dìdao.

The hot and sour soup is not as authentic as the sweet and sour fish.

糖醋鱼比酸辣汤地道。

Tángcùyú bǐ suānlàtāng dìdao.

The sweet and sour fish is more authentic than the hot and sour soup.

今年的天气没有去年的天气那么热。

Jīnnián de tiānqì méiyǒu qùnián de tiānqì nàme rè.

This year's weather is not as hot as last year's.

去年的天气比今年的天气热。

Qùnián de tiānqì bǐ jīnnián de tiānqì rè.

Last year's weather was hotter than this year's.

4. Repetition of adjectives: Adjective + adjective + 的 (de)

The repetition of adjectives often expresses a feeling of fondness or increases the degree of positive or appreciative attitude on the speaker's part. The structure of this expression usually occurs in a positive form, but not in a negative form. This applies to some adjectives with only one syllable in Chinese, such as the following:

酸辣汤酸酸的，辣辣的，很好喝。

Suānlàtāng suānsuān de, làlà de, hěn hǎohē.

The sour and spicy soup is a bit sour and spicy; it tastes very good.

牛肉香香的，嫩嫩的，很好吃。

Niúròu xiāngxiāng de, nènnèn de, hěn hǎochī.

The beef smells good and is very tender; it is very tasty.

今天的天气凉凉的，很舒服。

Jīntiān de tiānqì liángliáng de, hěn shūfu.

Today's weather is cool. It's very comfortable.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Engage in a conversation between a waiter and guest ordering food.

Look at the following table and see if you can match questions and responses between a waiter and a guest ordering food.

Opening: Welcoming

服务员	客人
欢迎光临，几位？ 请跟我来，请坐请坐。	三位。 谢谢！

Middle: Ordering food

服务员	客人
你们想喝什么？ 这是菜单，你们看看。 你们想点什么？ 好的，一共五道菜，一 盘 麻婆豆腐，半 只 / 一 只 北京烤鸭，一 碗 红烧 牛肉面，一 盘 蚂蚁上 树，一 盘 手撕包菜。	先来一壶 (hú; measure word) 茶吧。 请问，你们有什么特色 菜？ 我想点半只 / 一只北京 烤鸭。 我想吃麻婆豆腐。 来一碗红烧牛肉面吧！ 请给我们三碗米饭。 少放一点儿油 (yóu; oil) 和 盐 (yán; salt)。 ……

Closure: Completing food ordering

服务员	客人
菜马上来。 你们先喝一点儿茶。 你们先尝一尝酸辣汤。	谢谢！

II Exchange comments
on food flavor and
preferences.

A: 你觉得北京烤鸭怎么样?

B: 很好吃, 也很地道。

A: 酸辣汤的味道好不好?

B: 味道好极了, 酸酸的, 辣辣的,
很好喝。

A: 蔬菜新不新鲜?

B: 很新鲜。

A: 那红烧牛肉面呢?

B: 非常好吃, 牛肉又嫩又香。

A: 你觉得美国菜好吃还是中国菜
好吃?

B: 当然是中国菜好吃啊! 美国菜没
有中国菜那么好吃。

Consider the following adjectives to comment
on food flavor and preference.

One-syllable adjectives:

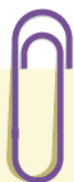
香, 嫩, 酸, 辣, 咸, 油 (yóu; oily),
甜 (tián; sweet)

Two-syllable adjectives:

有名, 好吃, 好喝, 地道, 新鲜,
清淡 (qīngdàn; light)

Three-and four-syllable adjectives:

好极了, 好吃极了



Complete a transactional dialogue about paying a bill.

客人 1: 服务员, 买单!

(The waiter brings a bill to the table.)

客人 1: 一共多少钱?

服务员: 一共八十五块钱, 请问你们要刷卡还是付现金?

客人 1: 刷卡。

客人 2 & 3: 我们应该给多少小费?

客人 1: 这家餐馆的服务很不错, 我们给百分之二十吧!

客人 2 & 3: 好!



Describe an experience of ordering and tasting food at a Chinese restaurant.

Topic sentence about fundamental information on WHEN, WHO, WHERE, and WHAT:

上个周末李明、大卫、英子一起去中国城的餐馆吃中国菜。

Pause and think: Can you identify information about WHEN, WHO, WHERE, and WHAT?

Information about WHAT was ordered and HOW:

他们喝了一壶 (hú; measure word) 茶, 点了五道菜, 有一盘麻婆豆腐、半只北京烤鸭、一碗红烧牛肉面、一盘蚂蚁上树和一盘手撕包菜。除了五道菜以外, 餐馆还送酸辣汤给他们。清蒸鱼 (qīngzhēngyú; steamed fish) 是餐馆的特色菜, 可是他们没有点, 因为大卫对海鲜过敏。





Pause and think: Can you say the names of the dishes that were ordered?

Information about WHAT on taste and flavor:

每一道菜都很有特色。北京烤鸭很地道。蚂蚁上树也很好吃，没有麻婆豆腐那么咸。手撕包菜很新鲜，红烧牛肉的味道好极了，牛肉又香又嫩。酸辣汤很好喝，酸酸的，辣辣的。

Pause and think: Can you identify comments about taste and flavor?

Information about payment and fortune cookie:

五道菜一共九十六块，每个人付三十二块，再加百分之二十的小费。吃完饭以后，他们又吃了幸运饼干，幸运数字是18，还有四个汉字：笑口常开。

Pause and think: What is the total of the bill? How much did each person pay? What was written on the slip of paper in the fortune cookie?

Conclusion:

他们吃得很饱，也笑得很开心！

**Exit Tickets****通关卡****Exit Ticket 1**

Engage in a conversation between a waiter and a guest ordering food.

Use the following table to organize the conversation into three categories: opening (welcoming), middle (food ordering), and closure (completing food ordering).

Opening: Welcoming	
服务员	客人
Middle: Ordering food	
服务员	客人
Closure: Completing food ordering	
服务员	客人

Exit Ticket 2

Exchange comments about food flavor and preference.

你觉得 + name of a dish + 怎么样?

Name of a dish + 的味道好不好?

Name of a dish + adjective 吗? / Name of a dish + adjective 不 adjective?

那 + name of a dish + 呢?

你觉得 + dish 1 + 好吃还是 dish 2 好吃?

Consider using the adjectives on page 158 (Item II in What I Have Learned) in your comments on food flavor and preferences.



Exit Ticket 3



Complete a transactional dialogue about paying a bill.

客人 1: 服务员, 买单!

(The waiter brings a bill to the table.)

客人 1: 一共多少钱?

服务员: 一共……块钱, 请问你们要刷卡还是付现金?

客人 1: ……。

客人 2 & 3: 我们应该给多少小费?

客人 1: 这家餐馆的服务……, 我们给……吧!

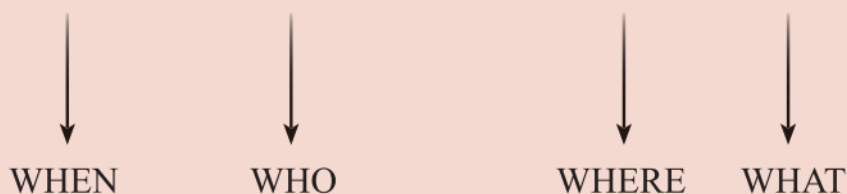
客人 2 & 3: 好!

Exit Ticket 4

Describe your experience ordering and tasting food at a Chinese restaurant.

Part I: Topic sentence.

Time adverbial + subject(s) + 一起去 + place + 吃中国菜。



Part II: Supporting information about WHAT and HOW on names of dishes, comments on flavor, how to pay the bill, and end-of-meal fortune cookies.

他们喝了……, 点了……道菜, 有……盘……, ……只……, ……碗……。

每一道菜都很有特色。……地道, ……好吃, A 没有 B 那么……。……新鲜, ……的味道……, ……又……又……。……好喝, ……的, ……的。

一共……块, 每个人付……块, 再加……的小费。吃完饭以后, 他们又吃了幸运饼干, 幸运数字是……, 还有……个汉字: ……。

Part III: Concluding sentence with summative comments.

他们吃得很饱, 也笑得很开心!



Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	甜	甜	tián	<i>adj.</i>	sweet
2.	苦	苦	kǔ	<i>adj.</i>	bitter
3.	壶	壺	hú	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word meaning kettle or pot for water, tea, or other drinks
4.	油	油	yóu	<i>adj./n.</i>	oily; greasy; oil
5.	盐	鹽	yán	<i>n.</i>	salt
6.	放	放	fàng	<i>v.</i>	to put
7.	蛋	蛋	dàn	<i>n.</i>	egg
8.	猪肉	豬肉	zhūròu	<i>n.</i>	pork
9.	羊肉	羊肉	yáng ròu	<i>n.</i>	lamb; goat meat
10.	鸡肉	雞肉	jīròu	<i>n.</i>	chicken meat
11.	炒饭	炒飯	chǎofàn	<i>n.</i>	fried rice
12.	炒面	炒麵	chǎomiàn	<i>n.</i>	stir-fried noodles
13.	清蒸鱼	清蒸魚	qīngzhēng yú	<i>n.</i>	steamed fish
14.	清淡	清淡	qīngdàn	<i>adj.</i>	light (taste)



You might have heard about the roasted duck from 全聚德 (Quánjùdé), but do you know what 九门小吃 (Jiǔmén Xiǎochī) represents? How about 局气 (júqì)? What does it mean in the Beijing dialect?



Are you a fan of the spicy Sichuan dishes or the sweet Cantonese roasted meat?





How many strokes does the character have? Can you guess what it means?

Step 1:



Browsing the Dimsum Cart

Step 2:



Choosing Your Favorite

Step 3:



Dimsum Order Is Taken

Step 4:



Time to Enjoy Your Dimsum

Now you know all the steps of ordering dimsum. Would you like to give it a try? What would you order?



Vocabulary Challenge

词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Categorization

What words can you use to describe Chinese dishes?

 味道 (wèidào; flavor)	 做法 (zuòfǎ; cooking techniques)	 评价 (píngjià; comments)

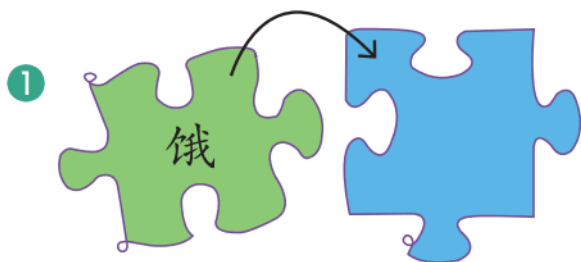
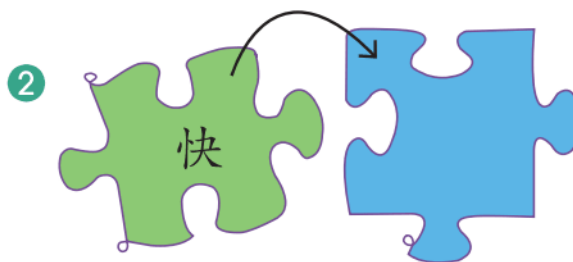
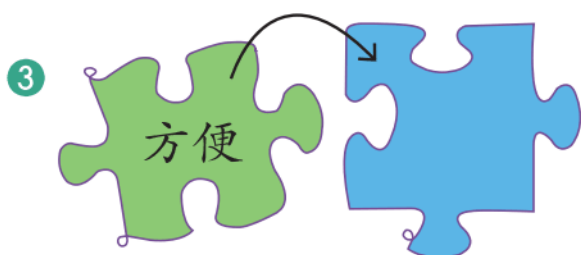
B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a. 咸 | b. 饱 | c. 酸 | d. 辣 |
| 2. a. 豆腐 | b. 米饭 | c. 鱼 | d. 服务 |
| 3. a. 过敏 | b. 有名 | c. 地道 | d. 新鲜 |
| 4. a. 现金 | b. 刷卡 | c. 小费 | d. 菜单 |
| 5. a. 烤鸭 | b. 牛肉 | c. 蔬菜 | d. 海鲜 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



上海
光临
菜单
麻婆豆腐
北京烤鸭
红烧牛肉面

有名
特色菜
够了
客人
糖醋鱼

蚂蚁上树
味道
过敏
海鲜
手撕包菜

一共
马上
酸辣汤
地道
新鲜

算了
买单
付钱
刷卡
现金

小费
打包
麻烦
幸运饼干
笑口常开

(Go to page 503 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯



美食印象
美食我知道

搜索商户名、地址、菜名、外卖等

频道搜索

全站搜索

全部美食分类

北京好客来餐馆

手机扫描 优惠买单

★★★★★ 4.8 31940 条评价

发表评论...

最新评论88



评论



Lily
2023-05-09

今天是我第一次来这家餐馆，听说这儿的北京烤鸭特别有名，所以我今天带家人一起来吃。北京烤鸭还不错，不过，我觉得没有前门的一家餐馆的烤鸭那么好吃。除了烤鸭以外，别的菜也都很好吃。我们一家四个人点了六道菜，只花了300块钱。而且他们的服务好极了！^{tuījiàn}推荐大家来！

举报 | 赞 | 回复



Judy
2023-05-09

我是这儿的常客，每次来都吃得很开心！好客来餐馆是一家很有历史的餐馆，在北京非常有名。因为客人很多，所以我每次都等很久。不过，这次跟朋友一起来吃，我们真的很幸运，很快就^{wèizi}有位子了。我们一边吃饭一边看美景，太开心了。

你一定要点糖醋鱼，这是他们的特色菜，真的很地道。红烧牛肉又嫩又香，味道好极了。我还要特别推荐两道菜，这两道菜是手撕包菜和蚂蚁上树。我们两个人一共点了四道菜，点得有一点儿多，所以最后得打包。

举报 | 赞 | 回复

发表评论...

最新评论88



评论

Panda Wang
2023-05-09

来北京玩怎么能不来好客来餐馆！我们点了半只北京烤鸭，一道麻婆豆腐，还有几个北京特色小吃^{xiǎochī}。烤鸭真的很地道，比别家餐馆的烤鸭更香更嫩。麻婆豆腐辣辣的，也还不错。但是，如果你想点北京小吃的话，一定别点豆汁儿^{dòuzhīr}，很多北京人喜欢喝豆汁儿，可是我觉得太难喝了！

举报 | 赞 | 回复

注释 Notes

- ① 推荐 tuījiàn: recommend
- ② 位子 wèizi: seat
- ③ 小吃 xiǎochī: snack
- ④ 豆汁儿 Dòuzhīr: Douzhir, a fermented bean drink

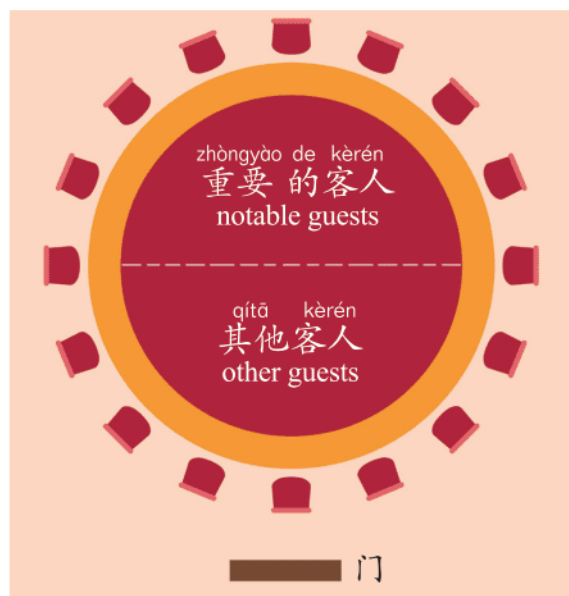


餐桌礼仪 Table Manners

Now we are in a restaurant in China. Would you like to know the table manners here?
Please join me and learn about seating arrangements, chopstick etiquette, tea serving, and
toasting etiquette together.

Seating Arrangement

Let's enter this room. Do you know where the best seat is? Yes, it is the one facing the door of the room, and it is arranged for the main guest, the elder, or boss. The seats next to the best one are also good. Let's wait until the elders are seated and follow the seat arrangement of the host.



Chopstick Etiquette

Here are some chopsticks by your hands. Have you tried using chopsticks? Just be aware that when you pick up your chopsticks, never knock any dishes with them because this is associated with beggars. When you start to eat, don't stick your chopsticks into your food or rice, because this is taboo and said to bring bad luck.

Tea Serving



Now, the waiter is filling your cup with tea and your glass with juice. While saying thanks, you can also simply tap your fingers against the table to show your appreciation, which is called 扣手礼 (kòushǒulǐ). Legend traces this etiquette back to the Chinese emperor Qian Long. If you are in the middle of a conversation, this is a good way to say thank you.



kòushǒulǐ
扣手礼



Toasting Etiquette



gān bēi

干杯

Lower your glass and toast: Cheers!

Our hosts are going to make a toast. Please use your right hand to hold your glass, and place your left hand under the glass to show greater respect. Hold your glass of juice slightly lower than theirs to clink and say thanks 谢谢 (xièxie) or cheers 干杯 (gān bēi)!

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1 in traditional characters**

Li Ming, David, and Yingzi ate Chinese food at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown in New York last weekend.

服務員：歡迎光臨！幾位？

李 明：三位。

服務員：好，請跟我來……請坐請坐。你們想喝什麼？

李 明：先來三杯水吧！

服務員：好的，這是菜單，你們先看看。

(The waitress returns to the table after several minutes.)

大 衛：快點菜吧！我餓死了。

服務員：你們想點什麼？

英 子：我想點麻婆豆腐。

大 衛：我很想吃北京烤鴨。我們點半隻吧！

李 明：很久沒有吃牛肉麵了，我們來一碗吧！聽說這家的紅燒牛肉麵很有名。

英 子：我們再點幾個特色菜就夠了。

李 明：請問，你們有什麼特色菜？

服務員：很多客人都喜歡點糖醋魚和螞蟻上樹，味道好極了。

李 明：好，那我們也嘗一嘗吧。

大 衛：不行，我對海鮮過敏。

英 子：那不要點糖醋魚了！我們點蔬菜吧，手撕包菜怎麼樣？

李 明：好啊！這兒的手撕包菜很不錯。

服務員：好的，一盤麻婆豆腐、半隻北京烤鴨、一碗紅燒牛肉麵、一盤螞蟻上樹和一盤手撕包菜。對嗎？

李 明：對，一共五道菜，我們還要三碗米飯。

服務員：好，菜馬上就來。我們今天送酸辣湯，你們先嘗一嘗。

大 衛：謝謝。



Dialogue 1 in English

Li Ming, David, and Yingzi ate Chinese food at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown in New York last weekend.

Waitress: Welcome! How many?

Li Ming: Three.

Waitress: Okay, please follow me. Please sit. What would you like to drink?

Li Ming: Give us three cups of water first!

Waitress: All right, this is the menu. You all can look it over first.

(The waitress returns to the table after several minutes.)

David: Let's order quickly! I'm starving.

Waitress: What would you all like to order?

Yingzi: I'd like Mapo tofu.

David: I'd really like to eat Peking duck. Let's order a half!

Li Ming: I haven't had beef noodles in a while. Let's have a bowl! I heard this restaurant's braised beef noodles are very famous.

Yingzi: Let's order a few more specialties, and then we'll have enough.

Li Ming: Excuse me, what are your specialties?

Waitress: Many customers like to order the sweet and sour fish and Ants climbing a tree. They taste great.

Li Ming: Okay, then we'll try those.

David: No, I'm allergic to seafood.

Yingzi: Then let's not get sweet and sour fish! Let's order some vegetables. How about hand-shredded cabbage?

Li Ming: Okay! The shredded cabbage here is pretty good.

Waitress: Okay, one plate of Mapo tofu, half of a Peking duck, a bowl of braised beef noodles, a plate of Ants climbing a tree, and a plate of shredded cabbage. Does that sounds right?

Li Ming: Yes, all together there are five dishes, and we also want three bowls of rice.

Waitress: Okay, the food will come right away. We are giving out hot and sour soup today. You can try it first.

David: Thank you.

**Dialogue 2 in traditional characters**

Yingzi, Li Ming, and David have just finished eating and are ready to pay the bill.

英 子：吃得好飽啊！你們覺得這家餐館的菜怎麼樣？

李 明：很好啊！北京烤鴨很地道。螞蟻上樹也很好吃，沒有麻婆豆腐那麼鹹。

英 子：包菜也很新鮮，味道很不錯。

大 衛：我覺得酸辣湯很好喝，酸酸的，辣辣的。

李 明：你們覺得紅燒牛肉麵怎麼樣？

大 衛：非常好吃，牛肉又香又嫩。我們帶一碗給茉莉吧！她一定很想吃。

英 子：不行，她吃素。

大 衛：那算了，我們買單吧。

(The waitress brings the bill.)

大 衛：一共多少錢？

服務員：一共九十六塊（錢）。

英 子：那一個人付三十二塊錢就可以了。

服務員：你們要刷卡還是付現金？

李 明：刷卡。(Li Ming turns to David and Yingzi.) 我先刷卡，然後你們再給我現金。

大 衛、英 子：沒問題。我們再給一點兒小費吧！

李 明：要給多少小費呢？

大 衛：這家餐館的服務很好，那就百分之二十吧！

李 明：好！

服務員：謝謝！你們要打包嗎？

英 子：好啊，麻煩你幫我們打包。

(The waitress starts to pack their food.)

服務員：好的，這是幸運餅乾。歡迎你們下次再來。請慢走。

李 明：謝謝。(Li Ming takes a bite of that fortune cookie) 我看看今天我的幸運數字是什麼？哇，是18！還有四個漢字：笑—口—常—開。

大 衛：“笑口常開”是什麼意思？

李 明：就是天天開心的意思。



Dialogue 2 in English

Yingzi, Li Ming, and David have just finished eating and are ready to pay the bill.

Yingzi: I'm so full! What do you guys think of the food at this restaurant?

Li Ming: It's very good! The Peking duck is very authentic. The Ants climbing a tree is also very tasty, and not as salty as the Mapo tofu.

Yingzi: The cabbage is also very fresh, and the flavor is pretty good.

David: I think the hot and sour soup is delicious. It has a sour taste and a spicy taste.

Li Ming: What do you guys think of the braised beef noodles?

David: It's very tasty. The beef smells good and tastes tender. Let's bring a bowl to Moli! She will definitely want to try some.

Yingzi: No, she is vegetarian.

David: Never mind, let's pay the bill.

(The waitress brings the bill.)

David: What is the total?

Waitress: All together it's ninety-six yuan.

Yingzi: Then each person just needs to pay thirty-two yuan.

Waitress: Do you all want to pay with card or cash?

Li Ming: With card. (Then he turns to David and Yingzi.) I'll pay with card first, then you both can pay me in cash.

David and Yingzi: No problem. Let's also leave a tip.

Li Ming: How much should we leave?

David: This restaurant's service is very good, so 20 percent!

Li Ming: Okay!

Waitress: Thank you! Do you all want boxes for the leftovers?

Yingzi: Yes, please help us pack.

(The waitress starts to pack their food.)

Waitress: Okay. These are fortune cookies. Please come back next time. Take care.

Li Ming: Thank you. (He bites into the fortune cookie.) Let me see what my lucky number is today. Wow, it's eighteen! There are also four characters: 笑—口—常—开.

David: What does “笑口常开” mean?

Li Ming: It means laugh often.

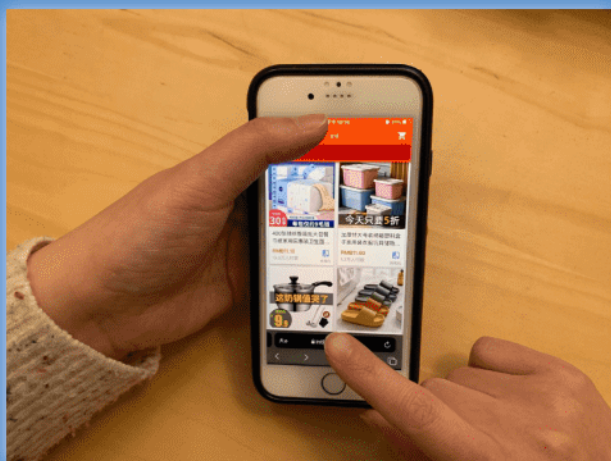
第五课 Lesson 5

Theme

科学技术
Science and Technology

Topic

买东西
Shopping

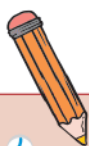


How has technology changed your shopping habits? Do you shop in stores or online?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 5, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » comprehend dialogues about online shopping and give comments.
- » understand pros and cons of shopping online and in stores.
- » interpret information about changes to payment methods and their advantages and disadvantages.

Interpersonal

- » engage in a dialogue about online shopping with comments until a transaction is completed.
- » exchange ideas about shopping online and in stores, using common phrases for bargaining.
- » discuss different payment methods and express opinions about advantages and disadvantages.

Presentational

- » talk about experiences shopping online and in stores.
- » summarize current payment methods used in China and the United States, recommend the best option for the future, and provide justification.



Dialogue 1

对话一



Yingzi and Moli are using their cell phones to do online shopping.



英子



茉莉



茉莉，这件T恤衫怎么样？

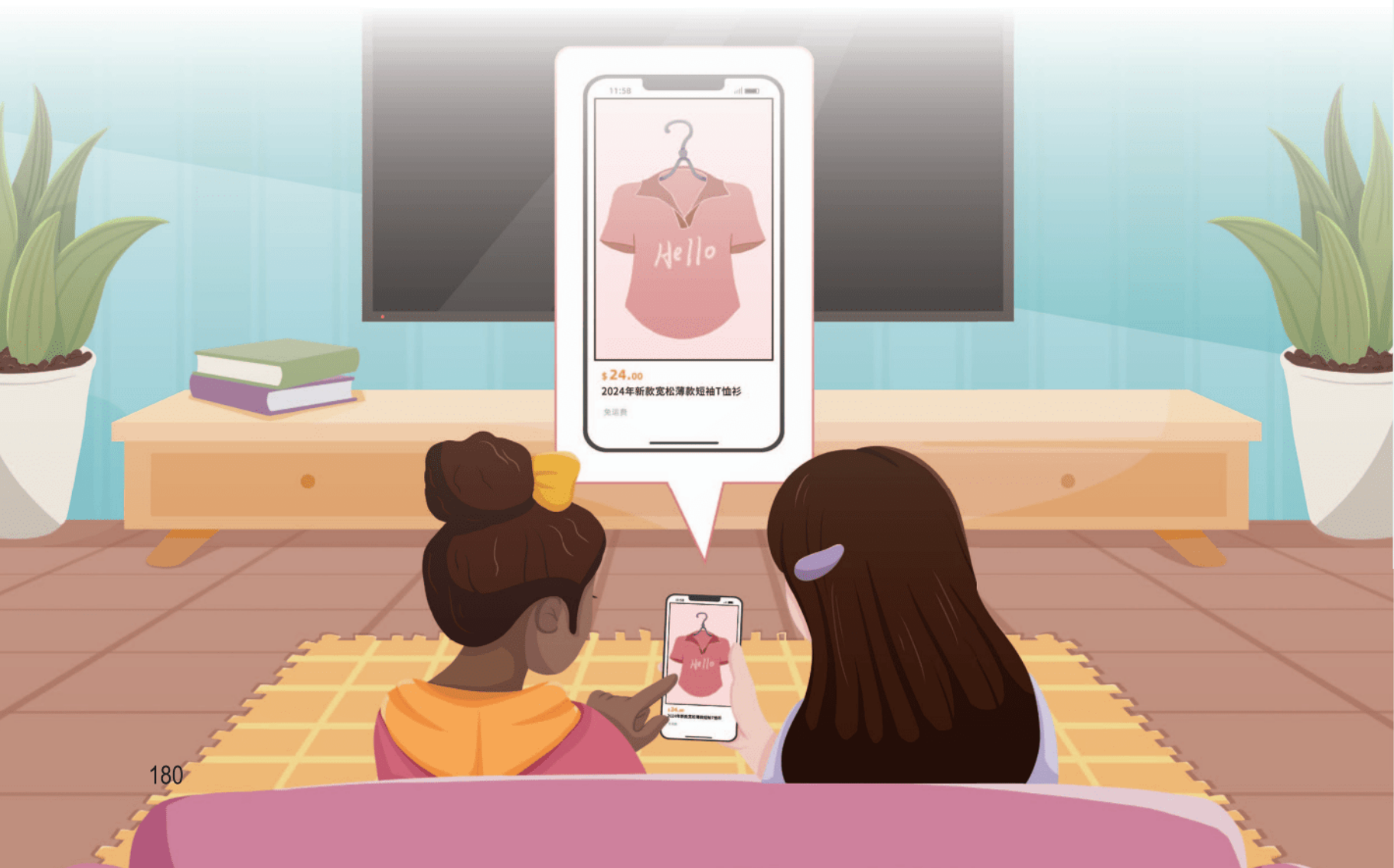
颜色很好看，样式也不错！你是在哪儿买的^①？



(Yingzi looks at the website via a cell phone.)



我是在网上买的。这家网店最近在打折，一件二十四美元。





那我也买一件。



哇！这条裙子很漂亮，那双鞋子也很好看。



好，我们一起下单，一共五十美元，还可以免运费。



太好了！对了，茉莉，你住在上海的时候，也常常上网买衣服吗？



对啊，不过，我也喜欢去实体店，可以讨价还价，很有意思。



怎么讨价还价？我觉得太难了。



不难，四句话：“多少钱？太贵了！便宜一点儿！我们是朋友。”



哈哈，下次我也试试。

(Moli and Yingzi open the parcel and try on the clothes inside.)



衣服到了，我们试穿一下吧。哎呀，这件T恤衫，好看是好看，就是有点儿大^②，是大号的。你的鞋子和裙子呢？



我的鞋子不大不小，挺合适的。不过，裙子太长了，我们去商店换一下吧！



好主意！商店就在市中心，我们也可以去附近逛逛。



好啊，那我们星期六上午去吧！



行，星期六上午商店门口见，别忘了带收据。

Pinyin Dialogue 1

Yingzi and Moli are using their cell phones to do online shopping.



Yīngzǐ



Mòlì



Mòlì, zhè jiàn T xù shān zěnmeyàng?

Yánsè hěn hǎokàn, yàngshì yě bú cuò!
Nǐ shì zài nǎr mǎi de^①?



(Yingzi looks at the website via a cell phone.)



Wǒ shì zài wǎng shàng mǎi de. Zhè jiā wǎng-diàn zuìjìn zài dǎ zhé, yí jiàn èrshísì měiyuán.

Nà wǒ yě mǎi yí jiàn.



Wā! Zhè tiáo qúnzi hěn piàoliang, nà shuāng xiézi yě hěn hǎokàn.

Hǎo, wǒmen yìqǐ xià dān, yígòng wǔshí měiyuán, hái kěyǐ miǎn yùnfèi.



Tài hǎo le! Duì le, Mòlì, nǐ zhù zài Shànghǎi de shíhou, yě chángcháng shàng wǎng mǎi yīfu ma?



Duì a, búguò, wǒ yě xǐhuan qù shítǐdiàn,
kěyǐ tǎojià-huánjià, hěn yǒu yìsi.



Zěnmē tǎojià-huánjià? Wǒ juéde tài nán le.



Bù nán, sì jù huà: “Duōshao qián? Tài guì
le! Piányi yìdiǎnr! Wǒmen shì péngyou.”



Hāhā, xià cì wǒ yě shìshi.

(Moli and Yingzi open the parcel and try on the clothes inside.)



Yīfu dào le, wǒmen shì chuān yíxià ba. Āi
yā, zhè jiàn T xù shān, hǎokàn shì hǎokàn,
jiùshì yǒu diǎnr dà^②, shì dà hào de. Nǐ de
xiézi hé qúnzi ne?



Wǒ de xiézi bú dà bù xiǎo, tǐng héshì de.
Búguò, qúnzi tài cháng le, wǒmen qù
shāngdiàn huàn yíxià ba!



Hǎo zhǔyi! Shāngdiàn jiù zài shìzhōngxīn,
wǒmen yě kěyǐ zài fùjìn guàngguang.



Hǎo a, nà wǒmen Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ qù ba!



Xíng, Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ shāngdiàn ménkǒu
jiàn, bié wàngle dài shōujù.

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	件	件	jiàn	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for clothes
2.	T恤衫	T恤衫	T xù shān	<i>n.</i>	T-shirt
3.	样式	樣式	yàngshì	<i>n.</i>	type; style
4.	买	買	mǎi	<i>v.</i>	to buy; to purchase
5.	网上	網上	wǎng shàng	<i>n.</i>	online
6.	网店	網店	wǎngdiàn	<i>n.</i>	online shop
7.	打折	打折	dǎ zhé	<i>vo.</i>	to give a discount
8.	美元	美元	měiyuán	<i>n.</i>	American dollar; US dollar
9.	条	條	tiáo	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for long thin things (pants, skirts, ribbon, river, road, etc.)
10.	裙子	裙子	qúnzi	<i>n.</i>	skirt
11.	双	雙	shuāng	<i>mw./adj.</i>	a measure word for a pair; double; pair
12.	鞋子	鞋子	xiézi	<i>n.</i>	shoe
13.	下单	下單	xià dān	<i>vo.</i>	to place an order; to order
14.	免	免	miǎn	<i>v.</i>	to exempt
15.	运费	運費	yùnfèi	<i>n.</i>	shipping fee
16.	上网	上網	shàng wǎng	<i>vo.</i>	to go online; to surf the Internet
17.	衣服	衣服	yīfu	<i>n.</i>	clothes
18.	实体店	實體店	shítǐdiàn	<i>n.</i>	physical (rather than online) retail store

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
19.	讨价还价	討價還價	tǎojià-huánjià	<i>v.</i>	to bargain; to haggle over price
20.	句	句	jù	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for phrases or lines of verse
21.	话	話	huà	<i>n.</i>	spoken words; talk; words
22.	贵	貴	guì	<i>adj.</i>	expensive
23.	便宜	便宜	piányi	<i>adj.</i>	cheap; inexpensive
24.	穿	穿	chuān	<i>v.</i>	to wear; to put on
25.	号	號	hào	<i>n.</i>	size
26.	挺	挺	tǐng	<i>adv.</i>	very; quite; rather
27.	合适	合適	héshì	<i>adj.</i>	suitable; fitting; appropriate
28.	换	換	huàn	<i>v.</i>	to exchange; to change
29.	主意	主意	zhǔyi	<i>n.</i>	idea; plan; decision
30.	商店	商店	shāngdiàn	<i>n.</i>	store; shop
31.	市中心	市中心	shìzhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	city center; downtown
32.	附近	附近	fùjìn	<i>n.</i>	vicinity; nearby; neighboring; nearby area
33.	逛	逛	guàng	<i>v.</i>	to stroll; to visit
34.	上午	上午	shàngwǔ	<i>t.</i>	morning
35.	收据	收據	shōujù	<i>n.</i>	receipt



Grammar

语法

1. The 是 (shì) …… 的 (de) construction: Emphasis on Wh-word information

The “是 (shì) …… 的 (de)” structure is used to emphasize information about where (place), when (time), who (person), with whom (with someone), and how (manner). It is normally used to describe past events. Whatever information appears between 是 (shì) and 的 (de) is the focus information of the structure. To make the sentence negative, simply add the negative word 不 (bù) before 是 (shì). A positive sentence can keep 的 (de) at the end and drop 是 (shì), but a negative sentence cannot drop 是 (shì). The sentences that follow emphasize information about where, when, who, with whom, and how.

Structure: Subject + 是 + where/when/who/with whom/how + verb (+ object) + 的

Emphasis on WHERE



这件衣服很好看，你是在哪儿买的？

Zhè jiàn yīfu hěn hǎokàn, nǐ shì zài nǎr mǎi de?

This shirt looks very nice; where did you buy it from?

我是在网上买的。

Wǒ shì zài wǎng shàng mǎi de.

I bought it online.



.....



你昨天（是）在哪儿吃的？

Nǐ zuótiān (shì) zài nǎr chī de?

Where did you eat yesterday?

我昨天（是）在家里吃的。

Wǒ zuótiān (shì) zài jiā lǐ chī de.

I ate at home yesterday.



Emphasis on WHEN



你的裙子很漂亮，是什么时候买的？

Nǐ de qúnzi hěn piàoliang, shì shénme shíhou mǎi de?

Your dress is very pretty. When did you buy it?

是去年二月买的。

Shì qùnián Èryuè mǎi de.

I bought it in February of last year.



.....



你（是）什么时候去英国的？

Nǐ (shì) shénme shíhou qù Yīngguó de?

When did you go to England?

我（是）上个月去的。

Wǒ (shì) shàng ge yuè qù de.

I went last month.



Emphasis on WHO



你的中文很好，是谁教你的？

Nǐ de Zhōngwén hěn hǎo, shì shéi jiāo nǐ de?

Your Chinese is very good. Who taught you?

是中国朋友教我的。

Shì Zhōngguó péngyou jiāo wǒ de.

One of my Chinese friends taught me.



.....



这本书是妈妈买的吗？

Zhè běn shū shì māma mǎi de ma?

Is it Mom who bought this book?

不是妈妈买的，是我买的。

Bú shì māma mǎi de, shì wǒ mǎi de.

It wasn't bought by mom, I was the one who bought it.



Emphasis on WITH WHOM



上个星期一，你是跟谁一起去中国城的？

Shàng ge Xīngqīyī, nǐ shì gēn shéi yìqǐ qù Zhōngguó chéng de?

Who did you go to Chinatown with last Monday?

我是跟朋友一起去中国城的。

Wǒ shì gēn péngyou yìqǐ qù Zhōngguóchéng de.

I went with my friend to Chinatown.





你昨晚（是）跟谁一起打游戏的？

Nǐ zuówǎn (shì) gēn shéi yìqǐ dǎ yóuxì de?

Who did you play games with last night?

我昨晚（是）跟弟弟的同学一起打的。

Wǒ zuówǎn (shì) gēn dìdì de tóngxué yìqǐ dǎ de.

Last night I played games with my younger brother's classmate.



Emphasis on HOW



你买衣服的时候，是怎么付钱的？

Nǐ mǎi yīfu de shíhou, shì zěnmē fù qián de?

When you bought your clothes, how did you pay?

我是用手机付钱的。

Wǒ shì yòng shǒujī fù qián de.

I used my phone to pay.



.....



你（是）怎么去学校的？

Nǐ (shì) zěnmē qù xuéxiào de?

How do you get to school?

我（是）坐地铁去的。

Wǒ (shì) zuò dìtiě qù de.

I take the subway to school.



2. Adjective 是 (shì) adjective, 就是 (jiùshì) …… (..., but...)

This structure “adjective 是 (shì) adjective, 就是 (jiùshì) ……” expresses a positive comment in the first clause and some sort of negative comment such as dissatisfaction or imperfection in the second clause. It always begins with something positive, followed by some quality that is imperfect or not fully satisfactory from the speaker’s point of view. An adverb normally does not appear in the expression “adjective 是 (shì) adjective”. It can be converted from the complex sentence in “虽然 (suīrán) ……, 可是 (kěshì) ……”, which is considered a fundamental structure.

Adjective 是 adjective, 就是……

这个教室大是大, 就是
有一点儿远。

Zhè gè jiàoshì dà shì dà, jiùshì yǒu
yìdiǎnr yuǎn.

虽然……, 可是……

虽然这个教室很大, 可
是有一点儿远。

Suīrán zhè gè jiàoshì hěn
dà, kěshì yǒu yìdiǎnr yuǎn.

The classroom is big, but it’s a bit far away.

这顶帽子好看是好看,
就是有一点儿贵。

Zhè dǐng màozi hǎokàn shì
hǎokàn, jiùshì yǒu yìdiǎnr guì.

虽然这顶帽子很好看,
可是有一点儿贵。

Suīrán zhè dǐng màozi hěn hǎokàn,
kěshì yǒu yìdiǎnr guì.

This hat looks good, but it’s a bit expensive.

这件衣服漂亮是漂亮，就是颜色不太好看。

Zhè jiàn yīfu piàoliang shì piàoliang, jiùshì yánsè bù tài hǎokàn.

虽然这件衣服很漂亮，可是颜色不太好看。

Suīrán zhè jiàn yīfu hěn piàoliang, kěshì yánsè bù tài hǎokàn.

This shirt is pretty, but its color is not very good.

打折的东西便宜是便宜，就是不一定好。

Dǎ zhé de dōngxi piányi shì piányi, jiùshì bù yíding hǎo.

虽然打折的东西很便宜，可是不一定好。

Suīrán dǎ zhé de dōngxi hěn piányi, kěshì bù yíding hǎo.

Discounted stuff is cheap, but it's not necessarily good.



Dialogue 2

对话二



David and Li Ming are discussing payment methods.



大卫



李明



李明，我的中国朋友告诉我，在中国出门买东西不用带现金，真的吗？



对啊！去年夏天，我跟妈妈在北京逛街的时候，都没带钱包，真的是“一个手机走天下”。





是吗？那你们在商场是怎么买东西的？

我们都是用手机付钱的，刷二维码就行了。



什么都可以买吗^③？

当然！什么东西都可以用手机买。



真的吗？在美国，很多人还是习惯刷信用卡付钱。

现在，连中国的老人^④都开始用手机付钱了。



不过，在美国，越来越多的人也在商店用手机买东西了。

是啊，中国和美国都进入“手机时代”了，用手机买东西真的很方便。



将来可能连手机都不用了。

听说现在有些地方可以“刷脸”，那就是“一张脸走天下”了。



刷脸？不太安全吧^⑤！



那你觉得用什么付钱最好？



我觉得用手机付钱最好。第一，用手机付钱又快又方便；第二，我可以知道每个月花多少钱；第三，不用带现金，比较安全。



我同意！用手机付钱真的有很多好处。

Pinyin Dialogue 2

David and Li Ming are discussing payment methods.



Dàwèi



Lǐ Míng



Lǐ Míng, wǒ de Zhōngguó péngyou gàosu wǒ, zài Zhōngguó chū mén mǎi dōngxi bú yòng dài xiànjīn, zhēn de ma?

Duì a! Qùnián xiàtiān, wǒ gēn māma zài Běijīng guàng jiē de shíhou, dōu méi dài qiánbāo, zhēn de shì “yí gè shǒujī zǒu tiānxià”.



Shì ma? Nà nǐmen zài shāngchǎng shì zěnmē mǎi dōngxi de?

Wǒmen dōu shì yòng shǒujī fù qián de, shuā èrwéimǎ jiù xíng le.



Shénme dōu kěyǐ mǎi ma^③?

Dāngrán! Shénme dōngxi dōu kěyǐ yòng shǒujī mǎi.



Zhēn de ma? Zài Měiguó, hěn duō rén háishi xíguàn shuā xìnyòngkǎ fù qián.



Xiànzài, **lián** Zhōngguó de lǎorén **dōu** kāishǐ yòng shǒujī fù qián le^④.



Búguò, zài Měiguó, yuè lái yuè duō de rén yě zài shāngdiàn yòng shǒujī mǎi dōngxì le.



Shì a, Zhōngguó hé Měiguó dōu jìnrù “shǒujī shídài” le, yòng shǒujī mǎi dōngxì zhēn de hěn fāngbiàn.



Jiānglái kěnéng lián shǒujī dōu bú yòng le.



Tīngshuō xiànzài yǒuxiē dìfāng kěyǐ “shuā liǎn”, nà jiù shì “yì zhāng liǎn zǒu tiānxià” le.



Shuā liǎn? Bú tài ānquán **bà**^⑤!



Nà nǐ juéde yòng shénme fù qián zuì hǎo?



Wǒ juéde yòng shǒujī fù qián zuì hǎo. Dì-yī, yòng shǒujī fù qián yòu kuài yòu fāngbiàn; dì-èr, wǒ kěyǐ zhīdào měi gè yuè huā duōshao qián; dì-sān, bú yòng dài xiànjīn, bǐjiào ānquán.



Wǒ tóngyì! Yòng shǒujī fù qián zhēn de yǒu hěn duō hǎochù.

Vocabulary List 生词表



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	告诉	告訴	gàosu	v.	to tell; to inform; to let know
2.	出门	出門	chū mén	vo.	to go out; to leave home
3.	不用	不用	bú yòng	mv.	need not
4.	逛街	逛街	guàng jiē	vo.	to window-shop; to stroll down the street
5.	钱包	錢包	qiánbāo	n.	purse; wallet
6.	天下	天下	tiānxià	n.	the whole world
7.	商场	商場	shāngchǎng	n.	shopping mall; shopping center; department store
8.	二维码	二維碼	èrwéimǎ	n.	two-dimensional barcode; QR code
9.	还是	還是	háishi	adv.	still
10.	习惯	習慣	xíguàn	v./n.	to be used to; habit; custom
11.	信用卡	信用卡	xìnyòngkǎ	n.	credit card
12.	连…… 都……	連…… 都……	lián...dōu...	misc.	even
13.	开始	開始	kāishǐ	v./n.	to begin; to start; beginning
14.	进入	進入	jìnrù	v.	to enter; to join; to go into
15.	时代	時代	shídài	n.	era; age
16.	将来	將來	jiānglái	t./n.	in the future; future; the future

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
17.	些	些	xiē	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word indicating a small amount
18.	安全	安全	ānquán	<i>adj./n.</i>	safe; secure; safety; security
19.	第	第	dì		a prefix, indicates ordinal number, e.g., first, number two, etc.
20.	花	花	huā	<i>v.</i>	to spend (money, time)
21.	同意	同意	tóngyì	<i>v.</i>	to agree; to consent; to approve
22.	好处	好處	hǎochù	<i>n.</i>	advantage; benefit



Grammar

语法

3. 什么 (shénme) + (noun) + 都 (dōu) + (不/没有) + verb/adjective

“什么 (shénme) ……都 (dōu)” is a structure used to express “everything” or “all.”

什么 + 都 + verb/ adjective	什么 + noun + 都 verb/ adjective	什么 + (noun) + 都 + 不 / 没 + verb/adjective
我们什么都吃。 Wǒmen shénme dōu chī. We eat anything.	我们什么菜都吃。 Wǒmen shénme cài dōu chī. We eat any dishes.	我们什么 (菜) 都不 / 没吃。 Wǒmen shénme (cài) dōu bù / méi chī. We don't/didn't eat anything.
什么都很漂亮。 Shénme dōu hěn piàoliang. Everything is very pretty.	什么衣服都很漂亮。 Shénme yīfu dōu hěn piàoliang. All the clothes look very pretty.	什么 (衣服) 都不漂亮。 Shénme (yīfu) dōu bú piàoliang. None of the clothes are pretty.
什么都可以喝。 Shénme dōu kěyǐ hē. You can drink anything.	什么茶都可以喝。 Shénme chá dōu kěyǐ hē. You can drink any tea.	什么 (茶) 都不可以喝。 Shénme (chá) dōu bù kěyǐ hē. You cannot drink any tea.
他们什么都说了。 Tāmen shénme dōu shuō le. They said everything.	他们什么事都说了。 Tāmen shénme shì dōu shuō le. They said everything.	他们什么 (事) 都不 / 没说。 Tāmen shénme (shì) dōu bù / méi shuō. They don't/didn't say anything.
老师什么都知道。 Lǎoshī shénme dōu zhīdào. The teacher knows everything.	老师什么事都知道。 Lǎoshī shénme shì dōu zhīdào. The teacher knows everything.	老师什么 (事) 都不知道。 Lǎoshī shénme (shì) dōu bù zhīdào. The teacher doesn't know anything.

4. 连 (lián; even) + subject/object + 都/也 (dōu/yě) + (没/不) + verb/verbal phrase

The structure “连 (lián) ……都/也 (dōu/yě) ……” is used similarly to “even” in English. It normally emphasizes surprising pieces of information or unexpected situations. Note that 都/也 (dōu/yě) always co-occurs with 连 (lián) in this pattern and cannot be omitted.

Structure: 连 + subject/object + 都/也 + (+没/不) + verb/verbal phrase

这个数学问题很容易，连小孩子都会做。

Zhè gè shùxué wèntí hěn róngyì, lián xiǎo háizi dōu huì zuò.
This math problem is very easy. Even children are able to solve it.

用手机很方便，现在连老人都开始用手机付钱了。

Yòng shǒujī hěn fāngbiàn, xiànzài lián lǎorén dōu kāishǐ yòng shǒujī fù qián le.
Phones are very convenient to use. Even elderly people are starting to use mobile phones to pay.

我姐姐的中文很好，连中文小说都能读懂。

Wǒ jiějie de Zhōngwén hěn hǎo, lián Zhōngwén xiǎoshuō dōu néng dúdǒng.
My older sister's Chinese is very good. She is even able to read and understand Chinese novels.

他很能吃，连四十个饺子都能吃完。

Tā hěn néng chī, lián sìshí gè jiǎozi dōu néng chīwán.
He can really eat. He is even able to finish forty dumplings.

她一年没练习中文了，连“再见”都不会说。

Tā yì nián méi liànxí Zhōngwén le, lián “zàijiàn” dōu bú huì shuō.

She hasn't practiced Chinese for a year. She doesn't even know how to say "goodbye."

老师的儿子不爱运动，连体育课都不上。

Lǎoshī de érzi bú ài yùndòng, lián tǐyùkè dōu bú shàng.

The teacher's son doesn't like to exercise. He doesn't even like to attend the P.E. class.

妹妹今天很不舒服，连水都不想喝。

Mèimei jīntiān hěn bù shūfu, lián shuǐ dōu bù xiǎng hē.

Younger sister is not feeling well today. She doesn't even want to drink water.

这个汉字太难了，连老师也不认识。

Zhè gè hànzì tài nán le, lián lǎoshī yě bú rènshi.

This Chinese character is very complex. Even the teacher doesn't recognize it.

我昨天太累了，连功课也没（有）做。

Wǒ zuótiān tài lèi le, lián gōngkè yě méi (yǒu) zuò.

I was so tired yesterday. I didn't even do my homework.

不知道他在忙什么，连家也没回。

Bù zhīdào tā zài máng shénme, lián jiā yě méi huí.

I don't know what he's so busy with. He didn't even go home yesterday.

今天打篮球的人很少，连球员也没来。

Jīntiān dǎ lánqiú de rén hěn shǎo, lián qiúyuán yě méi lái.

There were very few people playing basketball today. Even the basketball players didn't come.

5. Sentential final particle 吧 (ba) indicating uncertainty

The sentential final particle 吧 (ba), used to suggest a proposal, an alternative, or a solution, appears in Volume I. In this lesson, it indicates that the speaker is guessing with a certain degree of uncertainty. This function first appears in Lesson 1 in this volume as in 你是茉莉吧? (Nǐ shì Mòlì ba?). In this lesson, such an expression is presented in a negative form, such as 不太好吧? (Bú tài hǎo ba?), 不安全吧? (Bù ānquán ba?), 没那么热吧? (Méi nàme rè ba?), 你还没吃饭吧? (Nǐ hái méi chī fàn ba?).



我们不去上体育课，怎么样?

Wǒmen bú qù shàng tǐyùkè, zěnmeyàng?

How about we not go to P.E. class?

不太好吧?

Bú tài hǎo ba?

Not very good, right?



.....



你觉得刷脸付钱买东西怎么样?

Nǐ juéde shuā liǎn fù qián mǎi dōngxi zěnmeyàng?

What do you think about paying for things by facial recognition?

不安全吧?

Bù ānquán ba?

Not safe, right?





What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Engage in a dialogue about online shopping with comments until a transaction is completed.

- A: 这件衣服真好看，你是在哪儿买的？
- B: 我是在网上买的。来，我们一起上网看看。
- A: 哇！这么多T恤衫啊！
- B: 现在在打折，一件只要十五美元，你要不要买一件？
- A: 太便宜了，我买两件吧！还有什么别的东西？
- B: 这家网店的裙子和帽子 (màozi; hat) 也在打折，你想买吗？
- A: 想啊！裙子的颜色很好看！帽子的样式新是新，就是太大了。有没有中号的？
- B: 有！这儿都是中号的。
- A: 那我买一件T恤衫，一条裙子和一顶 (dǐng; a measure word) 帽子。
- B: 我们一起下单吧，可以免运费。
- A: 一共多少钱？
- B: 两件T恤衫三十美元，两条裙子二十五美元，两顶帽子十五美元，一共七十美元。
- A: 真便宜！买到打折的东西真开心！

II Exchange ideas about shopping online and in stores, using common phrases for bargaining.

A: 你常常上网买东西吗?

B: 对, 我常常上网买东西。

A: 我不常上网。上网买东西方便是方便, 就是常常得换。

B: 换东西很有趣, 习惯就好了。

A: 你不常在实体店买衣服吗?

B: 在美国, 我常常在网上买, 不过, 在中国, 我喜欢在实体店买。

A: 为什么?

B: 因为在美国不可以讨价还价, 可是, 在中国, 有些商店可以讨价还价。

A: 真的吗? 怎么讨价还价?

B: 太容易了, 我可以教你。(A tells B how to bargain in Chinese.) 好了, 现在我是服务员, 你是客人。我们试一试吧! 开始!

A: 一共多少钱?

B: 一共六十八块钱。

A: 太贵了。便宜一点儿。

B: 不贵, 不贵, 很便宜。

A: 真的太贵了, 我们是朋友, 便宜一点儿吧!

B: 那就五十块钱吧!

A: 太好了, 谢谢。

B: 哈哈! 你现在会讨价还价了。



III Discuss different payment methods and express opinions about advantages and disadvantages.

A: 你习惯用手机买东西吗?

B: 当然! 没有手机, 什么事都不能做。

A: 对啊! 手机太好用了, 下单又快又方便。

B: 我出门的时候, 也常常用手机买东西。

A: 越来越多的人都不用带信用卡了, 真是“一个手机走天下”!

B: 可是, 用信用卡也有好处。有一天, 我忘了带手机, 妈妈就用信用卡帮我付钱。

A: 是的, 不少老人还是习惯用信用卡。

B: 对了, 你觉得刷脸付钱买东西怎么样?

A: 很酷! 将来连手机、信用卡都不用带了。

B: 我不同意! 我最怕刷脸, 太不安全了。

A: 是吗? 那你觉得用什么付钱最安全?

B: 让我想想……现金、信用卡、手机、刷脸……

A: 这很难说! 不过, 我知道我爸妈一定觉得信用卡最好。第一, 习惯了; 第二, 不会忘了带; 第三, 比刷脸更安全。

B: 那我也回家问问我爸妈, 看看他们怎么说。

IV Talk about
experiences shopping
online and in stores.



我今天穿的T恤衫，是昨天在网上买的。网店在打折，我买了两件，一件是中号的，一件是小号的，一共是三十六美元。这两件都是黄色的，样式新是新，就是颜色不太好看。我试穿了以后，想换两件黑色的。

上网买衣服又快又方便，不过，可能会买到不合适的东西，常常得换。在实体店，可以马上试穿，中国的一些商店还可以讨价还价，买到便宜的东西，少付很多钱。你还可以在商店附近逛逛，跟服务员用中文聊天，真的很有趣！

V Summarize current payment methods in China and the United States, express thoughts about the best option for the future, and provide justification.



现在是“一个手机走天下”的时代了！在中国，出门买东西都不用带现金，也不用带信用卡，只要有手机，什么东西都可以买。美国人习惯用信用卡，不过，越来越多的人也开始在商场用手机买东西了，连老人都会用。用手机付钱，又快又方便，还有很多好处。将来我们很快就会进入“一张脸走天下”的时代，什么都不用带，只要刷脸就可以了。但是，有些人不想刷脸付钱，觉得刷脸不安全，你同意吗？



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Engage in a dialogue on online shopping with comments until a transaction is completed.

Get ready to use the following patterns to create your dialogue.

Inviting someone to do online shopping

我们（一起）上网 / 在网上看看，好不好？

我们（一起）看看这家网店的东西吧！

我们（一起）看看这家网店的东西，怎么样？

Asking guests questions about their interest in a purchase

要不要买一件 / 条 / 顶……？ 要买一件 / 条 / 顶……吗？

想不想买？ 想买吗？

还想不想买别的？ 还想买别的（衣服 / 裙子 / 帽子 / 东西）吗？

要大号、中号还是小号（的）？

要什么颜色（的）？ 什么样式（的）？

你觉得这个样式、颜色、大小好不好 / 怎么样？

Gathering core information about where, when, who, with whom, how (是……的)

是 +	在哪儿 + verb	谁 + verb	+ 的
	什么时候 + verb	跟谁 + verb	
		怎么 + verb	

Number/demonstrative + measure words + noun

三 / 这 / 那

件

衣服 / T 恤衫

条

裙子 / 裤子 (kùzi; pants)

顶

帽子

Giving comments

……adjective 是 adjective, 就是……

样式, 颜色, 大小, 价钱 (jiàqián; price)

快, 方便, 好看, 舒服, 新, 漂亮, 贵, 便宜, 花钱, 有好处
高兴, 开心

Paying the bill

打折, 下单, 免运费, 一共多少钱, 美元

Exit Ticket 2

Exchange ideas about shopping online and in stores, using common phrases for bargaining.

Refer to key patterns in Exit Ticket 1 and the following to create a dialogue:

Asking key questions or forming statements

常常 / 不常 上网 / 在网上 / 在实体店 买东西 / 衣服 / 帽子 / 裙子

Getting used to...

(不) 习惯 / 习惯了

习惯 + (在……) + verbal phrase

Bargaining

可以 / 会 / 能 讨价还价 (客人跟服务员)

付钱, 一共多少钱, 太贵了, 便宜一点儿, 我们是朋友



Exit Ticket 3



Discuss different payment methods, and express opinions about advantages and disadvantages.

Which of the four payment methods do you like most? Why?

付现金, 用信用卡, 用手机, 刷脸

Refer to key patterns in Exit Tickets 1–2 and add the following:

什么……都 (不 / 没) + adjective/verb (All/Everything...)

连……都 + (不 / 没) + adjective/verb (Even...)

一个手机走天下 / 一张脸走天下

有三个 / 很多好处 第一, ……。第二, ……。第三, ……。

(不) 同意

Exit Ticket 4

Talk about experiences of shopping online and in stores.

Use the following guided questions to organize your thoughts:

你常常在网上买东西吗?

你喜欢在实体店买东西吗?

你买什么东西? 买几件 / 条 / 顶?

是什么时候买的? 是在哪儿买的?

样式 / 颜色 / 大小 / 价钱 (jiàqián; price) 怎么样? 合适吗?

是打折的东西吗? 多少钱? 便宜还是贵?

你试穿了吗? 可以换吗?

你知道怎么讨价还价吗?

买到打折的东西, 你觉得怎么样?

在网上 / 在实体店买东西很有意思 / 有趣吗? 为什么?



Exit Ticket 5



Summarize current payment methods in China and the United States, express thoughts about the best option for the future, and provide justification.

Use the following organized information to construct your paragraph. In addition, refer to suggested key patterns and expressions in Exit Tickets 1–4.

Payment methods

付现金 用信用卡 用手机 刷脸

At some place

在中国 在美国 在商店 / 商场 在实体店

Other patterns

习惯 + (在……) + verb phrase 不用 + verb phrase

什么……都 连……都进入……的时代

Agreements

(不) 同意

Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	戴	戴	dài	<i>v.</i>	to put on or wear (glasses, hat, gloves, accessories, etc.)
2.	裤子	褲子	kùzi	<i>n.</i>	trousers; pants
3.	牛仔裤	牛仔褲	niúzáikù	<i>n.</i>	jeans
4.	顶	頂	dǐng	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for hats
5.	帽子	帽子	màozǐ	<i>n.</i>	hat; cap
6.	袜子	襪子	wàzi	<i>n.</i>	socks; stockings
7.	衬衫	襯衫	chènshān	<i>n.</i>	shirt; blouse
8.	毛衣	毛衣	máoyī	<i>n.</i>	sweater
9.	卫衣	衛衣	wèiyī	<i>n.</i>	sweatshirt
10.	夹克	夾克	jiákè	<i>n.</i>	jacket
11.	外套	外套	wàitào	<i>n.</i>	coat
12.	长短	長短	chángduǎn	<i>n.</i>	length
13.	价钱	價錢	jiàqian	<i>n.</i>	price
14.	售货员	售貨員	shòuhuòyuán	<i>n.</i>	salesperson



When shopping, do you often swipe a credit card or scan a QR code to complete the payment? Which one do you think is more convenient?



What is the discount that you can get based on the information in the picture?



Can you guess what the stores sell in the pictures? How do you think of shopping in these stores?



Can you guess what the boxes are for? Where do you get the hint?



快递小哥 (kuàidì xiǎogē) is one of the most trendy words in China nowadays. Can you guess what it means?



Vocabulary Challenge

词汇挑战

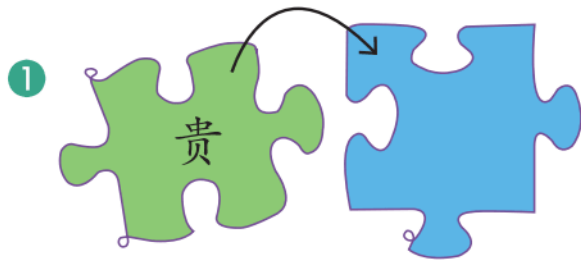
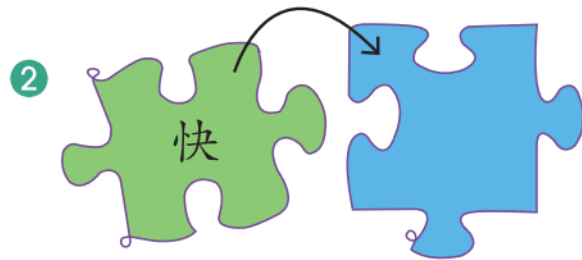
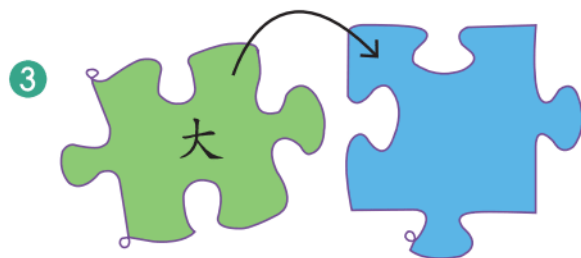
A Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

网 →	
意 →	
样 →	
店 →	
服 →	

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. a. 件 | b. 条 | c. 穿 | d. 双 |
| 2. a. 裙子 | b. 鞋子 | c. 衣服 | d. 商店 |
| 3. a. 习惯 | b. 打折 | c. 收据 | d. 运费 |
| 4. a. 合适 | b. 将来 | c. 贵 | d. 便宜 |
| 5. a. 网店 | b. 商场 | c. 钱包 | d. 实体店 |

D Word Search

How many can you find?



样式
网店
打折
美元
裙子

鞋子
下单
免运费
衣服
实体店

讨价还价
便宜
合适
主意
商店

市中心
附近
收据
告诉
出门

逛街
钱包
商场
二维码
当然

还是
习惯
信用卡
开始
进入

将来
安全
同意
好处

(Go to page 504 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯

在中国买东西



小虎是一个美国人。他学中文学了二十几年了，很喜欢中国文化，所以他去过三次中国。

小虎第一次去中国是2008年北京奥运会的时候。那时候，他是跟爸爸妈妈一起去的。在美国的商店，你不能讨价还价，所以小虎和他的爸妈都不知道怎么讨价还价。刚到北京的时候，他们买东西花了很多钱。不过，因为小虎会说一点儿中文，所以他跟中国朋友学了几句讨价还价的话：“太贵了，可不可以便宜一点儿？”“我们是朋友！”“下次我还来！”“这么贵，那我不要了。”学会以后，他们都用这几句话讨价还价，真的便宜了不少。

注释 Notes

- ① 奥运会 Àoyùnhuì: the Olympic Games
- ② 直播 zhíbō: live stream
- ③ 主播 zhǔbō: streamer

2015 年，小虎第二次去中国。他想学中文，所以在中国住了一个月。因为每天上中文课很忙，功课也很多，所以这次他没有很多时间出去逛街。可是，他在网上买了很多东西。他很喜欢在网上买东西，因为网店常常打折，还不用讨价还价，而且如果不合适的话还可以换。但是，小虎是外国人，没有支付宝，不能用手机付钱。他得请他的中国朋友帮他付钱，然后再给朋友现金。小虎觉得有点儿麻烦。



七年以后，小虎第三次去中国。中国已经进入了直播的时代，连吃的都可以一边看直播一边买。小虎喜欢看直播，他常常看直播买衣服，因为主播的衣服看起来特别好看，用手机下单也很方便。可是，小虎觉得，看直播买衣服方便是方便，就是常常不记得花了多少钱。回国的时候，他发现自己花了太多钱。



将来去中国的时候，会不会刷脸就可以买东西了？



手机支付和微信红包

If you want to buy fruits on the street or snacks from a small store in China, no need to bring cash or credit cards. Instead, you can simply take out your phone, scan a QR code or get your QR code scanned, then finish a mobile payment in a few seconds. As how we know Apple Pay here, Alipay 支付宝 (Zhīfùbǎo) and WeChat Pay 微信支付 (Wēixìn zhīfù) are quite popular mobile payment services in China. Young people feel very comfortable using digital technologies in our daily lives. Mobile payment makes life easy.



Zhīfùbǎo zhīfù
支付宝支付
Alipay



Wēixìn zhīfù
微信支付
WeChat Pay

Have you heard of WeChat Red Packet 微信红包 (Wēixìn hóngbāo)? I bet you've heard of red envelope 红包 (hóngbāo) in your Chinese class and know that on birthdays or Chinese New Year, older people like grandparents or parents will give money in red envelopes as gifts to young children. Right now, with the help of WeChat, you can send or receive money in the digital form on any day. Sometimes, people combine the meaning of numbers and amount of money together and send the WeChat Red Packet. For example, 520 means "I love you" in Chinese. People may send 5.20 or 520 RMB to show extra love to friends and family.



Wēixìn hóngbāo
微信红包
WeChat Red Packet

◎ What do you think about all this?

◎ Have you tried WeChat Red Packet before?

It would be great to hear your perspectives by discussing these topics with your teacher and classmates.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

Yingzi and Moli are using their cell phones to do online shopping.

英子：茉莉，這件T恤衫怎麼樣？

茉莉：顏色很好看，樣式也不錯！你是在哪兒買的？

(Yingzi looks at the website via a cell phone.)

英子：我是在網上買的。這家網店最近在打折，一件二十四美元。

茉莉：那我也買一件。

英子：哇！這條裙子很漂亮，那雙鞋子也很好看。

茉莉：好，我們一起下單，一共五十美元，還可以免運費。

英子：太好了！對了，茉莉，你住在上海的時候，也常常上網買衣服嗎？

茉莉：對啊，不過，我也喜歡去實體店，可以討價還價，很有意思。

英子：怎麼討價還價？我覺得太難了。

茉莉：不難，四句話：“多少錢？太貴了！便宜一點兒，我們是朋友。”

英子：哈哈，下次我也試試。

(Moli and Yingzi open the parcel and try on the clothes inside.)

茉莉：衣服到了，我們試穿一下吧。哎呀，這件T恤衫，好看是好看，就是有點兒大，是大號的。你的鞋子和裙子呢？

英子：我的鞋子不大不小，挺合適的。不過，裙子太長了，我們去商店換一下吧！

茉莉：好主意！商店就在市中心，我們也可以在附近逛逛。

英子：好啊，那我們星期六上午去吧！

茉莉：行，星期六上午商店門口見，別忘了帶收據。



Dialogue 1 in English

Yingzi and Moli are using their cell phones to do online shopping.

Yingzi: Moli, what do you think of this T-shirt?

Moli: The color is very pretty, and the style is also good! Where did you buy it from?

(Yingzi looks at the website via a cell phone.)

Yingzi: I bought it online. This online store is currently having a sale, twenty-four dollars a piece.

Moli: Then I'll also buy one.

Yingzi: Wow! This dress is so beautiful. This pair of shoes is also very nice.

Moli: Okay, let's place an order together. All together it's fifty dollars, and shipping will be free.

Yingzi: Great! By the way, Moli, when you lived in Shanghai, did you also often buy clothing online?

Moli: Yes, however, I also liked to go to the physical store. You can bargain. It's very interesting.

Yingzi: How do you bargain? I think it's too difficult.

Moli: It's not hard, just four sentences: "How much? Too expensive! Make it a little cheaper. We're friends."

Yingzi: Ha ha, next time I'll test it out.

(Moli and Yingzi open the parcel and try on the clothes inside.)

Moli: The clothing is here. Let's try it on. Oops, this T-shirt looks nice, but it's a bit too big. It's size large. How are your shoes and your skirt?

Yingzi: My shoes are not too big and not too small. They're very suitable. However, the skirt is too long. Let's go to the store and exchange it!

Moli: Good idea! The store is in the city center. We can also hang out there.

Yingzi: Okay, let's go Saturday morning!

Moli: Great, I'll see you Saturday morning at the store entrance. Don't forget to bring the receipt.

**Dialogue 2 in traditional characters**

David and Li Ming are discussing payment methods.

大衛：李明，我的中國朋友告訴我，在中國出門買東西不用帶現金，真的嗎？

李明：對啊！去年夏天，我跟媽媽在北京逛街的時候，都沒帶錢包，真的是“一個手機走天下”。

大衛：是嗎？那你們在商場是怎麼買東西的？

李明：我們都是用手機付錢的，刷二維碼就行了。

大衛：什麼都可以買嗎？

李明：當然！什麼東西都可以用手機買。

大衛：真的嗎？在美國，很多人還是習慣刷信用卡付錢。

李明：現在，連中國的老人也開始用手機付錢了。

大衛：不過，在美國，越來越多的人也在商店用手機買東西了。

李明：是啊，中國和美國都進入“手機時代”了，用手機買東西真的很方便。

大衛：將來可能連手機都不用了。

李明：聽說現在有些地方可以“刷臉”，那就是“一張臉走天下”了。

大衛：刷臉？不太安全吧！

李明：那你覺得用什麼付錢最好？

大衛：我覺得用手機付錢最好。第一，用手機付錢又快又方便；第二，我可以知道每個月花多少錢；第三，不用帶現金，比較安全。

李明：我同意！用手機付錢真的有很多好處。



Dialogue 2 in English

David and Li Ming are discussing payment methods.

David: Li Ming, my Chinese friend told me that you don't need to bring cash when you go out to buy things in China. Is that true?

Li Ming: Yes! Last summer, when my mother and I went shopping in Beijing, we didn't bring a wallet with us. It really is a mobile phone traveling the world.

David: Really? So how do you buy things in the mall?

Li Ming: We all pay by mobile phone, just scan the QR code.

David: Can you buy anything?

Li Ming: Of course! You can buy everything with your mobile phone.

David: Really? In America, many people are still used to paying by credit cards.

Li Ming: Nowadays in China, even the elderly have begun to use mobile phones to pay.

David: However, in America, more and more people are also using their mobile phones to buy things in stores.

Li Ming: Yes, both China and America have entered the "mobile phone era." It is really convenient to buy things with mobile phones.

David: In the future, we may not even use mobile phones.

Li Ming: I heard that there are some places where you can "scan your face," that is, "one face travels the world."

David: Scan your face? That's not very safe, is it?

Li Ming: Then what do you think is the best way to pay?

David: I think it's best to pay by mobile phone. First, it is fast and convenient to pay by mobile phone. Second, I can know how much I spend every month. Third, I don't need to bring cash, which is safer.

Li Ming: I agree! There are really many advantages to paying with your mobile phone.

第六课 Lesson 6

Theme

当代生活
Contemporary Life

Topic

去中国城吃火锅
Go to Chinatown to Eat a Hot Pot



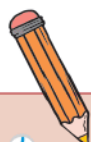
Is there a Chinatown in your city? How do you get there?

Have you tried a hot pot? Can you guess what the robot does in the restaurant?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 6, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » comprehend dialogues about daily transportation methods with added comments.
- » identify information about how to get to a certain place with added comments.
- » interpret the content of a vlog highlighting the experience of dining at a Chinese restaurant.

Interpersonal

- » engage in a conversation about going to a place using transportation methods (including event, place, transportation methods, time length, and comments).
- » discuss daily transportation methods and give comments.

Presentational

- » create a vlog to share the experience of eating a hot pot or any Chinese dishes at a Chinese restaurant.
- » describe daily transportation methods, talk about my experience, express opinions, and give comments.



Dialogue 1

对话一



Li Ming, Moli, and David are talking about how to get to Chinatown to eat a Chinese hot pot.



李明



茉莉



大卫



你们知道吗？中国城开了一家新的火锅店。



那我们星期六晚上去吃吧！我已经很久没有吃火锅了。





火锅是什么？



你连火锅都没吃过啊！那一定要尝一尝。



那我们在哪里见面？



晚上六点在火锅店门口见面。



好啊，你们要怎么去？



我要开车去。



从你家开车到中国城要多久？



从我家开车到那儿只要二十分钟^①。



我会走路去，我家就在中国城旁边。
走路只要五分钟就到了。



我住在中央公园附近，坐地铁很快，也很方便。



对啊！不管是上班还是上学，大家都喜欢坐地铁^②。



在上海，你们也常常坐地铁吗？



当然啊！我一般先坐地铁，再骑共享单车去学校。有时候跟爸妈坐高铁去别的城市。



我在上海也坐过高铁，高铁真的太快了！



高铁这么快，一定很贵吧？



不贵，比飞机票便宜一点儿^③。



太棒了！我也想去中国坐一坐高铁。

Pinyin Dialogue 1

Li Ming, Moli, and David are talking about how to get to Chinatown to eat a Chinese hot pot.



Lǐ Míng



Mòlì



Dàwèi



Nǐmen zhīdào ma? Zhōngguóchéng kāile yì jiā xīn de huǒguōdiàn.



Nà wǒmen Xīngqīliù wǎnshang qù chī ba! Wǒ yǐjīng hěn jiǔ méiyǒu chī huǒguō le.



Huǒguō shì shénme?



Nǐ lián huǒguō dōu méi chīguò a! Nà yídìng yào cháng yi cháng.



Nà wǒmen zài nǎlǐ jiàn miàn?



Wǎnshang liù diǎn zài huǒguōdiàn ménkǒu jiàn miàn.



Hǎo a, nǐmen yào zěnmē qù?



Wǒ yào kāi chē qù.



Cóng nǐ jiā kāi chē dào Zhōngguóchéng yào duō jiǔ?

Cóng wǒ jiā kāi chē dào nàr zhǐ yào èrshí fēnzhōng^①.



Wǒ huì zǒu lù qù, wǒ jiā jiù zài Zhōngguóchéng pángbiān. Zǒu lù zhǐ yào wǔ fēnzhōng jiù dào le.

Wǒ zhù zài Zhōngyāng-gōngyuán fùjìn, zuò dìtiě hěn kuài, yě hěn fāngbiàn.



Duì a! Bùguǎn shì shàng bān hái shì shàng xué, dàjiā dōu xǐhuan zuò dìtiě^②.

Zài Shànghǎi, nǐmen yě chángcháng zuò dìtiě ma?



Dāngrán a! Wǒ yìbān xiān zuò dìtiě, zài qí gòngxiǎng-dānchē qù xuéxiào. Yǒushíhou gēn bà mā zuò gāotiě qù biéde chéngshì.

Wǒ zài Shànghǎi yě zuòguò gāotiě, gāotiě zhēn de tài kuài le!



Gāotiě zhème kuài, yídìng hěn guì ba?

Bú guì, bǐ fēijīpiào piányi yìdiǎnr^③.



Tài bàng le! Wǒ yě xiǎng qù Zhōngguó zuò yì zuò gāotiě.

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	开	開	kāi	<i>v.</i>	to open (a shop)
2.	火锅	火鍋	huǒguō	<i>n.</i>	hot pot
3.	已经	已經	yǐjīng	<i>adv.</i>	already
4.	见面	見面	jiàn miàn	<i>vo.</i>	to meet; to see each other
5.	多久	多久	duō jiǔ	<i>pron.</i>	how long?
6.	走路	走路	zǒu lù	<i>vo.</i>	to walk; to go on foot
7.	不管	不管	bùguǎn	<i>conj.</i>	no matter; regardless of
8.	上班	上班	shàng bān	<i>vo.</i>	to go to work; to be on duty
9.	一般	一般	yìbān	<i>adv.</i>	generally; in general
10.	骑	騎	qí	<i>v.</i>	to ride (a horse, bike, etc.)
11.	共享单车	共享單車	gòngxiǎng-dānchē	<i>n.</i>	shared bike; bike-sharing
	共享	共享	gòngxiǎng	<i>v.</i>	to share
	单车	單車	dānchē	<i>n.</i>	bike; bicycle
12.	有时候	有時候	yǒushíhou	<i>adv.</i>	sometimes
13.	高铁	高鐵	gāotiě	<i>n.</i>	high speed rail
14.	城市	城市	chéngshì	<i>n.</i>	city; town
15.	票	票	piào	<i>n.</i>	ticket
16.	太棒了	太棒了	tài bàng le	<i>phr.</i>	That's wonderful! That's terrific!



Grammar

语法

1. 从 (cóng) place 1 + verb 到 (dào) + place 2 + 要 (yào) + duration of time

Pay attention to the word order in the same color:

从 place 1 + verb 到 + place 2 + 要 + duration of time



It takes + duration of time + to verb + from place 1 to place 2

从我家开车到那儿要半个小时。

Cóng wǒ jiā kāi chē dào nàr yào bàn gè xiǎoshí.

It takes half an hour to drive from my home to there.

从美国坐飞机到北京要十三个小时。

Cóng Měiguó zuò fēijī dào Běijīng yào shí sān gè xiǎoshí.

It takes thirteen hours to take an airplane from America to Beijing.

从学校走路到商场只要二十分钟。

Cóng xuéxiào zǒu lù dào shāngchǎng zhǐ yào èrshí fēnzhōng.

It takes twenty minutes to walk from school to the shopping mall.

2. 不管 (是) A 还是 B, ……都…… (bùguǎn shì... háishi..., ...dōu...; no matter A or B, ...)

The structure “不管 (bùguǎn)……, 都 (dōu)……” indicates that results or conditions will not differ or change under any circumstances. The adverb 都 (dōu), that emphasizes frequency of certain happenings or actions, is required in the second clause.

Structure: 不管 (是) A 还是 B,都.....

不管 (是) 晴天还是雨天, 大家都得出门。

Bùguǎn (shì) qíngtiān hái shì yǔtiān, dàjiā dōu dēi chū mén.

No matter if it is a sunny day or a rainy day, everyone has to go out.

不管 (是) 餐馆还是公园, 周末的时候都有很多人。

Bùguǎn (shì) cānguǎn hái shì gōngyuán, zhōumò de shíhou dōu yǒu hěn duō rén.

No matter if it is at a restaurant or in a park, there are so many people over the weekend.

不管 (是) 坐飞机还是坐高铁, 都得排队等很久。

Bùguǎn (shì) zuò fēijī hái shì zuò gāotiě, dōu dēi pái duì děng hěn jiǔ.

No matter if we are taking an airplane or a high-speed railway, we all have to line up and wait for a long time.

不管 (是) 大人还是小孩, 都喜欢玩手机。

Bùguǎn (shì) dàrén hái shì xiǎohái, dōu xǐhuan wán shǒujī.

No matter adults or kids, they all like to play on smartphones.

3. A 比 (bǐ) B + adjective + 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr) (A is a bit more... than B)

The fundamental structure “A 比 (bǐ) B + adjective” can be extended by adding 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr; a bit more) after the adjective.

Structure: A 比 B + adjective + 一点儿

坐高铁比坐飞机便宜一点儿。

Zuò gāotiě bǐ zuò fēijī piányi yìdiǎnr.

Taking a high-speed railway is a bit cheaper than taking an airplane.

吃火锅比吃面条有趣一点儿。

Chī huǒguō bǐ chī miàntiáo yǒuqù yìdiǎnr.

Eating a hot pot is a bit more interesting than eating noodles.

做视频比录音好玩一点儿。

Zuò shìpín bǐ lùyīn hǎowán yìdiǎnr.

Making a video is a bit more fun than recording audio.

走路比坐车健康一点儿。

Zǒu lù bǐ zuò chē jiànkāng yìdiǎnr.

Walking is a bit healthier than sitting in a car.

The two expressions 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr) and 有(一)点儿 (yǒudiǎnr/ yǒu yìdiǎnr)

Whenever the meaning “a bit more” is added to the “比 (bǐ)” construction, always use 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr; a bit more) instead of 有(一)点儿 (yǒudiǎnr/ yǒu yìdiǎnr; a little bit). The former expression 一点儿 (yìdiǎnr; a bit more) occurs after an adjective, whereas the latter 有(一)点儿 (yǒudiǎnr/ yǒu yìdiǎnr; a little bit) is followed by an adjective that can never occur in the “比 (bǐ)” structure.

A 比 B + adjective + 一点儿	Subject + 有一点儿 + adjective
<p>十一月比十月冷一点儿。</p> <p>Shíyī yuè bǐ Shí yuè lěng yìdiǎnr.</p> <p>November is a bit colder than October.</p>	<p>十一月有一点儿冷。</p> <p>Shíyī yuè yǒu yìdiǎnr lěng.</p> <p>November is a bit cold.</p>
<p>麻辣火锅比素火锅贵一点儿。</p> <p>Málà huǒguō bǐ sùhuǒguō guì yìdiǎnr.</p> <p>Hot and spicy hot pot is a bit more expensive than plain hot pot.</p>	<p>麻辣火锅有一点儿贵。</p> <p>Málà huǒguō yǒu yìdiǎnr guì.</p> <p>Hot and spicy hot pot is a bit expensive.</p>
<p>这件衣服比那件衣服小一点儿。</p> <p>Zhè jiàn yīfu bǐ nà jiàn yīfu xiǎo yìdiǎnr.</p> <p>This shirt is a bit smaller than that shirt.</p>	<p>这件衣服有一点儿小。</p> <p>Zhè jiàn yīfu yǒu yìdiǎnr xiǎo.</p> <p>This shirt is a bit small.</p>
<p>开车比坐地铁麻烦一点儿。</p> <p>Kāi chē bǐ zuò dìtiě máfan yìdiǎnr.</p> <p>Driving is a bit more troubling than taking the subway.</p>	<p>开车有一点儿麻烦。</p> <p>Kāi chē yǒu yìdiǎnr máfan.</p> <p>Driving is a bit troubling.</p>



Narrative

叙述



David is filming a video blog (vlog) to capture scenes eating a hot pot at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown.

大家好！我是你们的老朋友——大卫，欢迎大家收看我的频道！

今天我要跟朋友一起去中国城，吃很特别的中国菜，你们猜是什么？是火锅！这是我第一次来中国城吃火锅，听



朋友说，这家火锅店很火，所以，我们今天就来打卡了！

天啊！这么多客人在排队！刚才服务员告诉我们，最少得等一个小时！

我们饿得不得了，现在终于轮到我們了！

我们用平板电脑点菜，先选汤底，再点牛肉、羊肉、青菜、土豆片和面条。这家火锅店是用机器人上菜的，好酷哦！等汤底烧开后，就可以放菜了！我们先涮肉，再涮菜，最后放面条^④。在这家店，还可以看变脸表演！我们吃了两个多小时^⑤，最后都吃不下^⑥了。

我觉得这家火锅店很地道，价格也不贵，我很推荐你们来这儿吃！如果你也喜欢吃火锅，别忘了给这个视频点赞！欢迎大家留言告诉我，你最喜欢吃什么样的火锅？

Pinyin Narrative

David is filming a video blog (vlog) to capture scenes eating a hot pot at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown.

Dàjiā hǎo! Wǒ shì nǐmen de lǎo péngyou——Dàwèi, huānyíng dàjiā shōukàn wǒ de píndào!

Jīntiān wǒ yào gēn péngyou yìqǐ qù Zhōngguóchéng, chī hěn tèbié de Zhōngguócài, nǐmen cāi shì shénme? Shì huǒguō! Zhè shì wǒ dì-yī cì lái Zhōngguóchéng chī huǒguō, tīng péngyou shuō, zhè jiā huǒguō-diàn hěn huǒ, suǒyǐ, wǒmen jīntiān jiù lái dǎ kǎ le!

Tiān a! Zhème duō kèrén zài pái duì! Gāngcái fúwùyuán gàosu wǒmen, zuìshǎo děi děng yí gè xiǎoshí!

Wǒmen è de bùdéliǎo, xiànzài zhōngyú lúndào wǒmen le!

Wǒmen yòng píngbǎn diànnǎo diǎn cài, xiān xuǎn tāngdǐ, zài diǎn niúròu、yáng ròu、qīngcài、tǔdòupiàn hé miàntiáo. Zhè jiā huǒguōdiàn shì yòng jīqìrén shàng cài de, hǎo kù ò! Děng tāngdǐ shāokāi yǐhòu, jiù kěyǐ fàng cài le! Wǒmen xiān shuàn ròu, zài shuàn cài, zuìhòu fàng miàntiáo^④. Zài zhè jiā diàn, hái kěyǐ kàn biàn liǎn biǎoyǎn! Wǒmen chī le liǎng gè duō xiǎoshí^⑤, zuìhòu dōu chī bu xià^⑥ le.

Wǒ juéde zhè jiā huǒguōdiàn hěn dìdao, jiàgé yě bú guì, wǒ hěn tuījìàn nǐmen lái zhè chī! Rúguǒ nǐ yě xǐhuan chī huǒguō, bié wàngle gěi zhè gè shìpín diǎn zàn! Huānyíng dàjiā liú yán gàosu wǒ, nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénmeyàng de huǒguō?

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	收看	收看	shōukàn	<i>v.</i>	to watch (a TV program, a video)
2.	频道	頻道	píndào	<i>n.</i>	(television, video) channel
3.	火	火	huǒ	<i>adj./n.</i>	hot (popular); fire
4.	打卡	打卡	dǎ kǎ	<i>vo.</i>	(on social media) to check in to a location
5.	排队	排隊	pái duì	<i>vo.</i>	to line up
6.	刚才	剛才	gāngcái	<i>t.</i>	(just) a moment ago; just now
7.	最少	最少	zuìshǎo	<i>adv.</i>	at least; minimum; lowest (amount)
8.	不得了	不得了	bùdéliǎo	<i>adj.</i>	desperately serious; disastrous; extremely
9.	终于	終於	zhōngyú	<i>adv.</i>	finally; ultimately; at last; in the end
10.	轮	輪	lún	<i>v.</i>	to take turns; to rotate; by turn
11.	平板电脑	平板電腦	píngbǎn diànnǎo	<i>n.</i>	tablet computer
12.	汤底	湯底	tāngdǐ	<i>n.</i>	soup base
13.	羊肉	羊肉	yáng ròu	<i>n.</i>	lamb; goat meat
14.	青菜	青菜	qīngcài	<i>n.</i>	green vegetables
15.	土豆片	土豆片	tǔ dòu piàn	<i>n.</i>	potato slice
	土豆	土豆	tǔ dòu	<i>n.</i>	potato

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
	片	片	piàn	<i>n.</i>	thin piece; flake; a slice
16.	面条	麵條	miàntiáo	<i>n.</i>	noodles
17.	上菜	上菜	shàng cài	<i>vo.</i>	to serve food
18.	烧开	燒開	shāokāi	<i>vc.</i>	to boil
19.	放	放	fàng	<i>v.</i>	to put
20.	涮	涮	shuàn	<i>v.</i>	to cook by dipping finely sliced ingredients briefly in boiling water or soup
21.	最后	最後	zuìhòu	<i>n.</i>	final; last; finally; at the end
22.	表演	表演	biǎoyǎn	<i>v./n.</i>	show; performance; to perform; to act
23.	价格	價格	jiàgé	<i>n.</i>	price
24.	推荐	推薦	tuījiàn	<i>v.</i>	to recommend; recommendation
25.	点赞	點讚	diǎn zàn	<i>vo.</i>	to like (on social media)
26.	留言	留言	liú yán	<i>vo./n.</i>	to leave a message; to leave one's comments; message



Grammar

语法

4. **先** (xiān) **verb 1**, **再** (zài) **verb 2**, **最后** (zuìhòu) **verb 3** (First, ..., then, ..., last, ...)

The three connectors **先** (xiān)、**再** (zài)、**最后** (zuìhòu) connect three actions in order.

Structure: **先** verb 1, **再** verb 2, **最后** verb 3

中国人吃火锅的时候，一般**先**涮肉，**再**涮菜，**最后**放面条。

Zhōngguó rén chī huǒguō de shíhòu, yìbān **xiān** shuàn ròu, **zài** shuàn cài, **zuìhòu** fàng miàntiáo.

When Chinese people eat hot pots, they normally scald thin slices of meat in boiling water, then boil vegetables, and finally put noodles into the hot pot.

我做完功课以后，**先**休息，**再**洗澡，**最后**睡觉。

Wǒ zuòwán gōngkè yǐhòu, **xiān** xiūxi, **zài** xǐzǎo, **zuìhòu** shuìjiào.

After I finish my homework, I rest first, then take a shower, and finally go to bed.

今天下午，我要**先**打乒乓球，**再**吃汉堡，**最后**跟朋友去看电影。

Jīntiān xiàwǔ, wǒ yào **xiān** dǎ pīngpāngqiú, **zài** chī hànǎo, **zuìhòu** gēn péngyou qù kàn diànyǐng.

This afternoon I will play ping-pong first, then eat a hamburger, and finally go to see a movie with my friends.

5. 两个多小时 (liǎng gè duō xiǎoshí; over two hours)

To express the duration of time for a bit over a certain length of time, the word 多 (duō) can be used in the following phrases. Be noted that the word order of the measure word and 多 (duō) is different under the different circumstances.

When the number is a single- or multi- digit numeral, with a final numeral that is NOT zero:

Number	+	measure word	+	多	+	noun
两		个		多		小时
一		个		多		星期
六		个		多		月
二十五		年		多		

When the number is multiples of ten:

Number	+	多	+	measure word	+	noun
十		多		个		小时
二十		多		个		星期
三十		多		分钟		

Note that when the number is ten, it can be used in both of the above structures with different meanings.

十个多小时 (more than ten hours but not yet reached eleven hours)

十多个小时 (any period of time beyond ten hours, possibly eleven hours, twelve hours, or even longer)

Structure 1: Subject (+ verb + object) + verb 了 + duration of time	Structure 2: Subject + verb 了 + duration of time 的 + object
妈妈（做饭）做了两个多小时。 Māma (zuò fàn) zuòle liǎng gè duō xiǎoshí. Mom made food for over two hours.	妈妈做了两个多小时的饭。 Māma zuòle liǎng gè duō xiǎoshí de fàn. Mom made food for over two hours.
爸爸（做家务）做了一个多星期。 Bàba (zuò jiāwù) zuòle yí gè duō xīngqī. Dad did housework for over a week.	爸爸做了一个多星期的家务。 Bàba zuòle yí gè duō xīngqī de jiāwù. Dad did housework for over a week.
老师（教数学）教了六个月。 Lǎoshī (jiāo shùxué) jiāole liù gè duō yuè. The teacher taught math for more than six months.	老师教了六个月的数学。 Lǎoshī jiāole liù gè duō yuè de shùxué. The teacher taught math for more than six months.
他（学中文）学了十多天。 Tā (xué Zhōngwén) xuéle shí duō tiān. He learned Chinese for more than ten days.	他学了十多天的中文。 Tā xuéle shí duō tiān de Zhōngwén. He learned Chinese for more than ten days.
她（吃面）吃了二十多分钟。 Tā (chī miàn) chīle èrshí duō fēnzhōng. She ate noodles for over twenty minutes.	她吃了二十多分钟的面。 Tā chīle èrshí duō fēnzhōng de miàn. She ate noodles for over twenty minutes.

6. Verb + 得/不 (de/bu) + 下 (xià); Potential complements

The form “verb + 得/不 (de/bu)” often followed by a potential complement to indicate one’s ability to complete something or if an action is possible.

The expression “verb + 得/不 (de/bu) + 下 (xià)” indicates if space is sufficient or big enough for someone to do something.

(1) 吃得下 vs. 吃不下

(The following short dialogue is about whether one’s stomach is big enough to eat up to fifty dumplings.)



这儿有五十个饺子，你吃得下吗？

Zhèr yǒu wǔshí gè jiǎozi, nǐ chī de xià ma?

There are fifty dumplings here. Are you able to finish?

我吃不下。

Wǒ chī bu xià.

I can't finish.



我吃得下。

Wǒ chī de xià.

I can finish.



(2) 喝得下 vs. 喝不下

(The following short dialogue is about whether one's stomach is big enough to drink a lot of water.)



这么多水，你喝得下吗？

Zhème duō shuǐ, nǐ hē de xià ma?

Are you able to drink this much water?

我喝得下。

Wǒ hē de xià.

I can drink.



我喝不下。

Wǒ hē bu xià.

I can't drink.



(3) 住得下 vs. 住不下

(The following short dialogue is about whether the space of a certain place is big enough to accommodate eight people.)



这个地方不大，你们一共有八个人，住得下吗？

Zhè gè dìfang bú dà, nǐmen yíòng yǒu bā gè rén, zhù de xià ma?

This place isn't big. You guys have eight people. Is everyone able to fit?

没问题，住得下。

Méi wèntí, zhù de xià.

Not a problem. We can fit.



我觉得住不下。

Wǒ juéde zhù bu xià.

I don't think we are able to fit.



(4) 坐得下 vs. 坐不下

(The following short dialogue is about whether the space of the car is big enough to take many people.)



开车好是好，可是，坐得下吗？

Kāi chē hǎo shì hǎo, kěshì, zuò de xià ma?

It is good to drive, but are we able to fit?

我的车子太小了，坐不下。

Wǒ de chēzi tài xiǎo le, zuò bu xià.

My car is too small. It won't fit.



爸爸的车子很大，连七个人都坐得下。

Bàba de chēzi hěn dà, lián qī gè rén dōu zuò de xià.

Dad's car is really big; it can even fit seven people.



(5) 放得下 vs. 放不下

(The following two sentences indicate whether the space of a certain place is big enough to put something there.)

体育馆很大，**放得下**很多机器人。

Tǐyùguǎn hěn dà, **fàng de xià** hěn duō jīqìrén.

The gym is really big. It can fit many robots.

这个教室很小，**放不下**十台电脑。

Zhè gè jiàoshì hěn xiǎo, **fàng bu xià** shí tái diànnǎo.

This classroom is really small. It can't fit ten computers.

There are also three kinds of commonly used potential complements with **懂** (dǒng)、**完** (wán)、**到** (dào), as follows:

听得/不懂 listen to something and can/cannot understand

吃得/不完 eat something and can/cannot finish eating

喝得/不完 drink something and can/cannot finish drinking

学得/不完 learn something and can/cannot finish learning it

做得/不完 do something and can/cannot finish doing it

买得/不到 want to buy something and can/cannot buy it successfully

听得/不到 can/cannot hear something

看得/不到 can/cannot see something

猜得/不到 can/cannot guess it right



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Engage in a conversation about going to a place using transportation methods (include event, place, transportation methods, time length, and comments).

A: 我很久没吃火锅了, 这个星期五我们一起去吃, 好不好?

B: 好啊! 我也很想吃火锅。我们在哪里见面?

A: 放学以后, 五点半在火锅店门口见面, 好吗?

B: 好, 你要怎么去?

A: 我要走路去, 从我家走路到火锅店十分钟就到了。你呢?

B: 我会坐地铁, 不远, 二十分钟就到了。

A: 在纽约坐地铁很方便, 开车真的太麻烦了。

II Discuss daily transportation methods and give comments.

A: 你每天都坐地铁去学校吗?

B: 对, 不管是晴天还是雨天, 我都坐地铁。

A: 我在中国上学的时候, 一般先坐地铁, 再骑共享单车。

B: 纽约人多, 车也多, 骑共享单车不太安全。

A: 我们可以到中央公园去骑啊!

B: 好啊, 什么时候?

A: 下个星期三学校不上课, 我们一起去吧!

B: 太棒了!



Create a vlog to share a personal experience in eating a hot pot or any Chinese dishes at a Chinese restaurant.

Part I: Opening

大家好！我是你们的老朋友——大卫，欢迎大家收看我的频道！

Part II: Middle (core information)

Topic sentence

Time adverbial + 我跟 + somebody + 一起去 + place + eat something

什么时候去？你跟谁一起去？去哪一个餐馆？这家餐馆在哪儿/哪里？你们去那儿吃什么菜？

Arriving at the restaurant

你们到那儿的时候，（看到）很多客人在排队吗？这家餐馆很火吗？很多人来这儿打卡吗？等了多久才轮到你们？饿得不得了吗？

Ordering food

你们怎么点菜？用平板电脑还是用手机点菜？服务员帮你们点菜吗？是用机器人上菜的吗？机器人上菜很酷吗？你们点了什么菜？



Eating procedure: First, then, and then (last)

等……以后，……

先……，再……，然后再……

先……，再……，最后……

你们吃了多久/几个小时？最后还吃得下吗？

Performing activities

在这家餐馆，可以看表演吗？什么表演？

Comments

你觉得这家餐馆的菜很地道吗？价格很贵吗？你推荐朋友来这儿吃吗？为什么？

Part III: Closure

如果你也喜欢吃……，别忘了给这个视频点赞！

欢迎大家留言告诉我，你最喜欢吃什么样的……？

IV Describe daily transportation methods and talk about personal experiences of taking at least four more transportation methods with comments.

(1) Daily transportation methods with added comments

我家离学校很近，从家里走路到学校十分钟就到了，所以我每天都走路上学。我觉得走路有很多好处，可以一边走路，一边听音乐，不用等车，也不用花钱。走路让我很健康，是很好的运动！

(2) Driving a car and taking a subway (开车、坐地铁)

在纽约，开车好是好，就是不太安全，不少人觉得挺麻烦的。很多人有车，可是，不管是上班还是上学，大家一般都坐地铁，又快又方便，而且也不用花钱买油。现在的油价越来越贵了！

(3) Taking a shared bike and a horse wagon (骑共享单车、坐马车)

如果想坐马车的话，你可以去中央公园。在那儿，常常有人坐马车逛公园，很有趣。天气好的时候，有些人也会在那儿骑共享单车。

(4) Taking a plane and a high-speed rail (坐飞机、坐高铁)

我坐过飞机，可是没坐过高铁。每年夏天的时候，我都会跟家人一起坐飞机，去很多不一样的地方。有时候在美国玩，有时候去国外看朋友。可是，我没见过高铁，也没坐过高铁。听说中国很多城市都有高铁，方便得不得了。希望美国很快也会有高铁。



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Engage in a conversation about going to a place using transportation methods (including event, place, transportation methods, time length, and comments).

(Time adverbial) 我们一起去吃……，好不好？怎么样？

我们在哪里见面？

几点见面？

我们 (time) 在 (place) 见面，好不好？

怎么样？

你要 / 想 / 会怎么去？

从 (place 1) 走路去 / 到 (place 2) 要几分钟 / 多久 / 多长时间？

See the list of transportation methods below:

走路，跑步，开车，骑共享单车，骑自行车 (qí zìxíngchē, ride a bike),
骑马，坐车，坐地铁，坐高铁，坐飞机，坐马车

Exit Ticket 2

Discuss daily transportation methods and give comments.

Use the following questions to discuss with your partner:

你坐地铁去学校 / 上学吗?

你怎么去学校 / 上学?

你家离学校很近吗?

坐地铁很快 / 方便 / 麻烦 / 安全吗?

不管 (是) 晴天还是雨天, 你都走路去上学吗?

你一般先开车, 再坐地铁吗?

Consider using the following words, phrases, or structures to give comments:

Adjectives: 近, 远, 快, 方便, 麻烦, 安全

Adverb: adjective + 得 + 不得了; 挺 + adjective + 的

Connectors: 又……又……; 不但……, 而且……

Adverbs indicative of frequency: 每天都, 常常, 不常, 一般, 有时候

“Have to” vs. “do not have to”: 得 vs. 不用

Verb phrases: 花时间, 花钱

Structures:

有的人……, 有的人……; 有些人

……是……, 就是……;

不管 (是) A 还是 B, subject 都……



Exit Ticket 3



Create a vlog to share personal experience eating a hot pot or any Chinese dishes at a Chinese restaurant.

You are a vlogger and are preparing a script for the content. Think about the following questions:

1. What should you say at the beginning to greet and welcome viewers?
2. Can you put as much detailed information as possible in the middle of your vlog?
3. What should you encourage your viewers to do after watching your vlog?

Use the language template on page 250–251 to create your vlog. Go!

Exit Ticket 4

Describe daily transportation methods and talk about personal experiences of using at least two more transportation methods with comments.

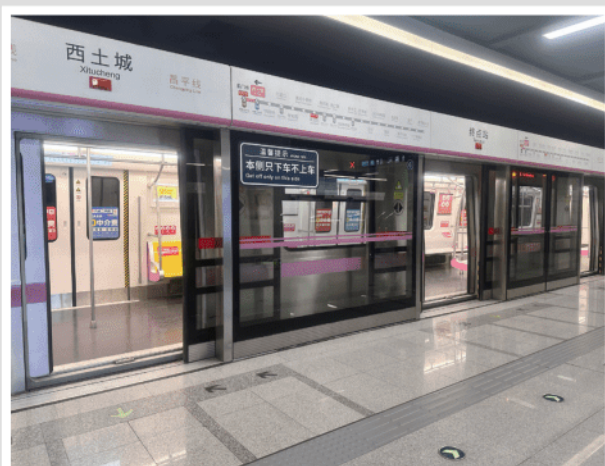
Have you used the following transportation methods? In addition to your daily transportation methods, choose at least four more you have experienced and share your comments.

走路, 跑步, 开车,
骑共享单车, 骑自行车 (qí zìxíngchē; ride a bike), 骑马,
坐车, 坐地铁, 坐高铁, 坐飞机, 坐马车



Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	拍	拍	pāi	<i>v.</i>	to shoot (a film)
2.	分享	分享	fēnxiǎng	<i>v.</i>	to share
3.	扫码	掃碼	sǎo mǎ	<i>vo.</i>	to scan a QR code or barcode
4.	鸳鸯锅	鴛鴦鍋	yuānyāngguō	<i>n.</i>	“mandarin ducks” pot (hot pot with a divider, containing spicy soup on one side, mild soup on the other)
5.	清汤锅	清湯鍋	qīngtāngguō	<i>n.</i>	plain broth pot
6.	麻辣锅	麻辣鍋	málàguō	<i>n.</i>	spicy hot broth pot
7.	番茄锅	番茄鍋	fānqiéguō	<i>n.</i>	tomato broth pot
8.	蘸料	蘸料	zhànliào	<i>n.</i>	dipping sauce
9.	饮料	飲料	yǐnliào	<i>n.</i>	drink; beverage
10.	捞	撈	lāo	<i>v.</i>	to scoop up



地铁
dìtiě
subway



电动车
diàndòngchē
electric vehicle



大巴车
dàbāchē
bus

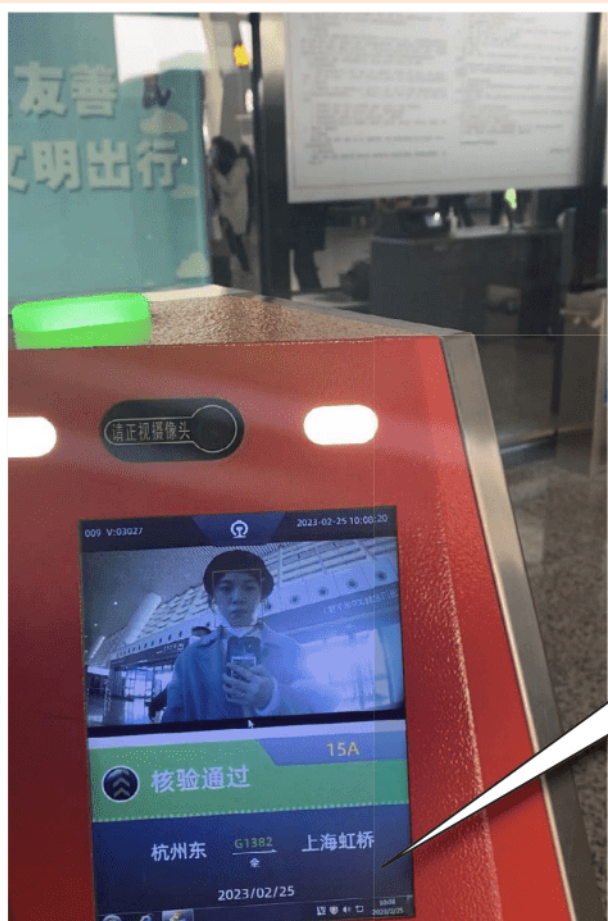


共享单车
gòngxiǎng-dānchē
shared bike

Have you ever used the transportation means listed above before?
Which one would you like to try?



高铁 has become the most important transportation means in China nowadays. Passengers pass the entrance by swiping their ID cards or using facial recognition. Pretty cool, right?



Can you tell where this passenger is traveling to?





Can you guess which restaurants above are hot pot restaurants? You may find more information about each restaurant on the Internet.



Attention, hot pot lovers! Can you share with us your favorite ingredient for hot pot?

我们来吃火锅吧!



1 排队
páiduì
Queue

2 用平板电脑点菜
yòng píngbǎn diànnǎo diǎncài
Order with a tablet



3 机器人上菜
jīqìrén shàngcài
Robot serving dishes



4 等汤底烧开
děng tāngdǐ shāokāi
Wait for the broth to boil



5 涮肉、涮菜
shuàn ròu, shuàn cài
Dip and boil meat and vegetables in the hot pot



Now that you know all the steps of having a hot pot, what are you waiting for? Find a hot pot restaurant close to you and enjoy! See if the restaurant also has a Sichuan face-changing show.



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Categorization

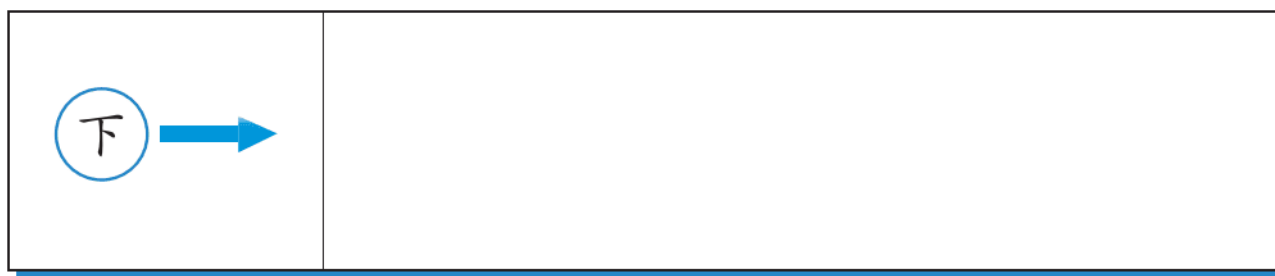
What transportation means can you brainstorm by using 坐、开、骑、走?

坐 →	
开 →	
骑 →	
走 →	

B Vocabulary Expansion

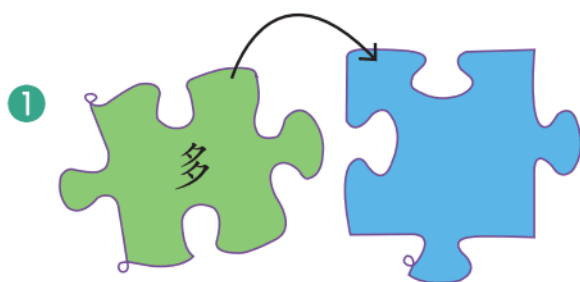
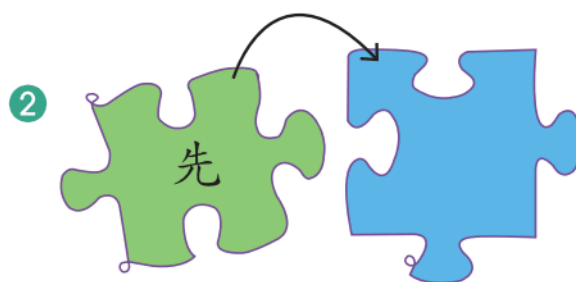
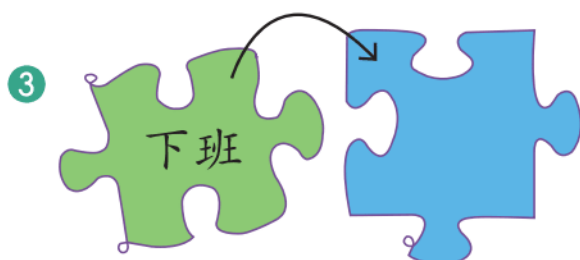
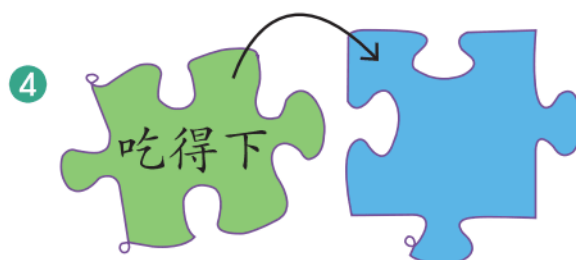
What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

上 →	
-----	--



C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. a. 地铁 | b. 排队 | c. 单车 | d. 高铁 |
| 2. a. 羊肉 | b. 面条 | c. 服务员 | d. 土豆片 |
| 3. a. 价格 | b. 推荐 | c. 点赞 | d. 留言 |
| 4. a. 火锅 | b. 汉堡 | c. 烤鸭 | d. 酸辣汤 |
| 5. a. 点菜 | b. 上菜 | c. 城市 | d. 打包 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



火锅
已经
见面
多久
走路

上班
一般
骑车
共享单车
有时候

高铁
城市
太棒了
收看
频道

打卡
排队
刚才
服务员
不得了

终于
汤底
面条
上菜
最后

表演
价格
推荐
点赞
留言

(Go to page 505 to find the answer keys.)



它比高铁快，比飞机方便，可是很少人知道

现在，人们的生活越来越方便。在一个城市里，你可以开车，也可以坐地铁、骑共享单车。如果要去别的城市，你可以坐飞机，还可以坐高铁。所以，出门真的很方便。

在中国，很多人出门都会坐高铁。除了出国要坐飞机以外，不管是工作还是出去玩，高铁都是最方便的，而且也比坐飞机便宜。除了高铁



和飞机以外，中国还有一个很好的交通工具，这种交通工具比高铁快，也比飞机方便，可是很少人知道。你知道是什么交通工具吗？

这种交通工具
cíxuánfú lièchē
 叫磁悬浮列车。中国的北京、上海和
Chángshā
 长沙都有磁悬浮列车。磁悬浮列车非常快，可是为什么没有很多人坐呢？

让我来告诉你吧！如果你想从上海机场到市中心，你可以坐地铁，也可以坐磁悬浮列车。坐地铁要花一

个小时十五分钟，只要六块钱。如果你坐磁悬浮列车的话，八分钟就到了，可是要花五十块钱，然后你还得

坐地铁进市中心。现在你知道为什么很少人坐磁悬浮列车了吧？

	ditiě hào xiàn 地铁 2 号线	cíxuánfú ditiě hào xiàn 磁悬浮 + 地铁 2 号线	jīchǎng dàbā 机场大巴	chūzūchē 出租车
时间	1 小时 15 分	1 小时	1.5-2.5 小时	1-2.5 小时
价格	¥6	¥54	¥20-30	¥150-300
好处	价格低	最快	方便，不用换车	方便
tuījiàn zhǐshù 推荐指数	★★★★★	★★★★	★★★	★★

注释 Notes

- ① 交通工具 jiāotōng gōngjù: means of transportation
- ② 磁悬浮列车 cíxuánfú lièchē: the Maglev
- ③ 长沙 Chángshā: the capital city of Hunan province in China
- ④ 地铁 2 号线 dìtiě Èr hào xiàn: subway line 2
- ⑤ 机场大巴 jīchǎng dàbā: airport shuttle
- ⑥ 出租车 chūzūchē: taxi
- ⑦ 推荐指数 tuījiàn zhǐshù: recommendation score



火锅 Hot Pot

Have you ever enjoyed a hot pot meal with your friends? It is called 火锅 (huǒguō) in Chinese and has been popular for over two thousand years. Did you know that there are over thirty different types of hot pot in China? Each region has its own unique style. Here are two famous hot pot styles that you might want to try.



1. Beijing Style Hot Pot 老北京火锅 (lǎo Běijīng huǒguō)

This hot pot style is typically served in a copper Mongolian pot filled with either clear water or a lightly flavored broth. You can add ingredients like tender mutton slices and a variety of vegetables to the pot. And did you know that in Beijing, hot pot is referred to as 涮羊肉 (shuàn yáng ròu)? And the locals love to dip their hot pot ingredients in a sesame-based sauce called 芝麻酱 (zhī má jiàng). Are you excited to try this delicious hot pot style on your next trip to Beijing?



老北京火锅 (lǎo Běijīng huǒguō)

2. Sichuan Hot Pot 四川火锅 (Sìchuān huǒguō)

If you are a fan of spicy food, then you have to try Sichuan Hot Pot, with its spicy 麻辣 (málà) flavor, packed with butter, Sichuan peppercorn, and red hot chili. Have you heard of trellis hot pot 九宫格火锅 (jiǔgōnggé huǒguō)? It is a really popular type of Sichuan Hot Pot, which is divided into nine grids, each containing its own temperature and mix of butter and chili oil. This means that you can cook your ingredients in different ways and get a variety of flavors and textures. It is a unique and fun dining experience!



九宫格火锅 (jiǔgōnggé huǒguō)



鸳鸯锅 (yuānyang guō)

But, if the spices are too much for you, there is another option: the double-flavor hot pot 鸳鸯锅 (yuānyang guō). The pot is divided into two sections so everyone can enjoy hot pot, no matter their spice tolerance. Plus, it is a representation of the tai chi symbol (yin and yang), which shows that the Chinese people are inclusive and open to different perspectives.



◎ Have you had hot pot before?

◎ How did you like it? Which one do you want to try next?

Please discuss with your classmates and teacher in class.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

Li Ming, Moli, and David are talking about how to get to Chinatown to eat a Chinese hot pot.

李明：你們知道嗎？中國城開了一家新的火鍋店。

茉莉：那我們星期六晚上去吃吧！我已經很久沒有吃火鍋了。

大衛：火鍋是什麼？

李明：你連火鍋都沒吃過啊！那一定要嘗一嘗。

茉莉：那我們在哪裡見面？

李明：晚上六點在火鍋店門口見面。

茉莉：好啊，你們要怎麼去？

大衛：我要開車去。

李明：從你家開車到中國城要多久？

大衛：從我家開車到那兒只要二十分鐘。

李明：我會走路去，我家就在中國城旁邊。走路只要五分鐘就到了。

茉莉：我住在中央公園附近，坐地鐵很快，也很方便。

李明：對啊！不管是上班還是上學，大家都喜歡坐地鐵。

大衛：在上海，你們也常常坐地鐵嗎？

茉莉：當然啊！我一般先坐地鐵，再騎共享單車去學校。有時候跟爸媽坐高鐵去別的城市。

李明：我在上海也坐過高鐵，高鐵真的太快了！

大衛：高鐵這麼快，一定很貴吧？

李明：不貴，比飛機票便宜一點兒。

大衛：太棒了！我也想去中國坐一坐高鐵。

**Dialogue 1 in English**

Li Ming, Moli, and David are talking about how to get to Chinatown to eat a Chinese hot pot.

Li Ming: Do you know? A new hot pot restaurant has opened in Chinatown.

Moli: Then let's go there to have dinner on Saturday night! I haven't had hot pot for a long time.

David: What is hot pot?

Li Ming: You haven't even tried hot pot! Then you must try it.

Moli: Then where should we meet?

Li Ming: Let's meet at the entrance of the hot pot restaurant at six o'clock in the evening.

Moli: Okay, how are you getting there?

David: I'm going to drive.

Li Ming: How long does it take to drive from your house to Chinatown?

David: It's only a twenty-minute drive from my house.

Li Ming: I will walk there. My house is just by Chinatown. It only takes five minutes to walk there.

Moli: I live near Central Park, and the subway is fast and convenient.

Li Ming: True! Whether going to work or school, everyone likes to take the subway.

David: In Shanghai, do you often take the subway?

Moli: Of course! I usually take the subway first, and then ride a shared bicycle to school. Sometimes I take the high-speed rail with my parents to go to other cities.

Li Ming: I have also taken the high-speed rail in Shanghai. The high-speed rail is really fast!

David: The high-speed rail is so fast. It must be very expensive!?

Li Ming: Not expensive, a little cheaper than air tickets.

David: Great! I also want to go to China to take the high-speed rail.



Narrative in traditional characters

David is filming a video blog (vlog) to capture scenes eating a hot pot at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown.

大家好！我是你們的老朋友——大衛，歡迎大家收看我的頻道！

今天我要跟朋友一起去中國城，吃很特別的中國菜，你們猜是什麼？是火鍋！這是我第一次來中國城吃火鍋，聽朋友說，這家火鍋店很火，所以，我們今天就來打卡了！

天啊！這麼多客人在排隊！剛才服務員告訴我們，最少得等一個小時！

我們餓得不得了，現在終於輪到我們了！

我們用平板電腦點菜，先選湯底，再點牛肉、羊肉、青菜、土豆片和麵條。這家火鍋店是用機器人上菜的，好酷哦！等湯底燒開以後，就可以放菜了！我們先涮肉，再涮菜，最後放麵條。在這家店，還可以看變臉表演！我們吃了兩個多小時，最後都吃不下了。

我覺得這家火鍋店很地道，價格也不貴，我很推薦你們來這兒吃！如果你也喜歡吃火鍋，別忘了給這個視頻點讚！歡迎大家留言告訴我，你最喜歡吃什麼樣的火鍋？



Narrative in English

David is filming a video blog (vlog) to capture scenes eating a hot pot at a Chinese restaurant in Chinatown.

Hello everyone! I am your old friend David, welcome to my channel!

Today I am going to Chinatown with my friends to eat very special Chinese food. Can you guys guess what it is? It's hot pot! This is my first time eating hot pot in Chinatown. I heard from friends that this hot pot restaurant is very popular, so we came to check it out today!

OMG! So many customers lined up! Just now, the waiter told us that it's at least an hour-long wait!

We're starving, and now it's finally our turn!

We order from a tablet, choosing a soup base first, followed by beef, lamb, greens, potato slices, and noodles. This hot pot restaurant uses robots to serve food, so cool! After the broth boils, you can put in raw ingredients! We scald the meat in the boiling water first, then the vegetables, and finally the noodles. In this restaurant, you can also watch the face-changing show! We ate for over two hours and finally couldn't eat any more.

I think this hot pot restaurant is very authentic, and the price is not expensive. I highly recommend that you all come here to eat! If you also like to eat hot pot, don't forget to like this video! You are welcome to leave comments below. What kind of hot pot do you like best?

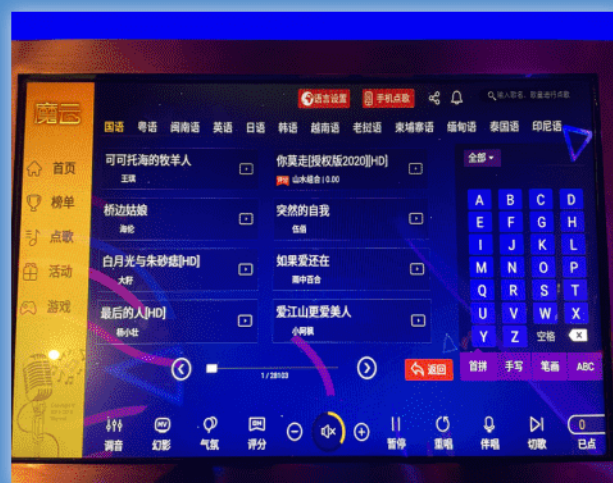
第七课 Lesson 7

Theme

美学艺术
Beauty and Aesthetics

Topic

电影和音乐
Film and Music

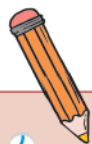


Have you seen a shadow-puppet play with Chinese traditional music performance before? Do you like singing karaoke? What type of music do you like to sing?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 7, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » recognize the social etiquette involved in entering a Chinese house.
- » understand discussions about and comments on movies.
- » comprehend and interpret information about musical genres and singers, and add comments.

Interpersonal

- » interact with a host upon entering a Chinese house.
- » exchange comments on shadow puppetry and talk about one shadow puppet that I wish to make.
- » discuss my experiences and favorite music, and comment on genres.

Presentational

- » describe the movie *A Grandson from America* and share comments.
- » introduce my favorite singer or band/group.



Dialogue 1 对话一



Moli, Yingzi, and David visit Li Ming's house and watch a film there.



茉莉



英子



大卫



李明



你们来了！请进请进！

哇！你家好漂亮！



谢谢！来，这儿有拖鞋。

好，谢谢。



(Three people take off their shoes and put on indoor slippers.)



叔叔、阿姨在家吗？



今天我爸妈不在家，他们去看我爷爷奶奶了。我们想做什么，就做什么！^①



太棒了！那我们看电影吧。你们想看什么电影？



林老师推荐了一部中国电影，叫《孙子从美国来》，你们想看吗？





好啊！老师说，在这部电影里，我们可以看到中美文化的不同，也可以学到中国的地方风俗。

(They watch the movie.)



这部电影的结局太感人了，演员演得真好。

对啊，拍得真好，剧情也很搞笑。这部电影的评分应该很高吧！



我看看。哇！这部电影有 8.5 分呢！

大卫，你怎么不说话？



我在网上找皮影戏的东西，电影里的皮影戏太精彩了，我也想做一个。

你想做什么样的皮影？



我要做一个超人，做好以后，要表演给中文班的同学看。

那我也要试一试，我想做一个孙悟空的皮影。



你们要用什么颜色？



网上说皮影常用的颜色^②是红、黄、蓝、绿、黑这几种，我想用红色、黄色和蓝色做超人皮影。



做孙悟空要用的颜色很多，什么颜色都得用。



那我帮你们加背景音乐吧！皮影戏要用传统乐器，我会拉二胡，也会弹古筝。



你太厉害了！那我就帮你们配音吧！

Pinyin Dialogue 1

Moli, Yingzi, and David visit Li Ming's house and watch a film there.



Mòlì



Yīngzǐ



Dàwèi



Lǐ Míng



Nǐmen lái le! Qǐng jìn qǐng jìn!

Wā! Nǐ jiā hǎo piàoliang!



Xièxie! Lái, zhè yǒu tuōxié.

Hǎo, xièxie.



(Three people take off their shoes and put on indoor slippers.)



Shūshu, āyí zài jiā ma?

Jīntiān wǒ bà mā bú zài jiā, tāmen qù kàn wǒ yéye nǎinǎi le. Wǒmen xiǎng zuò shénme, jiù zuò shénme! ①



Tài bàng le! Nà wǒmen kàn diànyǐng ba. Nǐmen xiǎng kàn shénme diànyǐng?

Lín lǎoshī tuījiànle yí bù Zhōngguó diànyǐng, jiào Sūnzi Cóng Měiguó Lái, nǐmen xiǎng kàn ma?





Hǎo a! Lǎoshī shuō, zài zhè bù diànyǐng lǐ,
wǒmen kěyǐ kàndào Zhōng-Měi wénhuà de
bùtóng, yě kěyǐ xuédào Zhōngguó de dìfāng
fēngsú.

(They watch the movie.)



Zhè bù diànyǐng de jiéjú tài gǎnrén le,
yǎnyuán yǎn de zhēn hǎo.



Duì a, pāi de zhēn hǎo, jùqíng yě hěn gǎo-
xiào. Zhè bù diànyǐng de píngfēn yīnggāi
hěn gāo ba!



Wǒ kànkàn. Wā! Zhè bù diànyǐng yǒu bā diǎn wǔ
fēn ne!



Dàwèi, nǐ zěnmé bù shuō huà?



Wǒ zài wǎng shàng zhǎo píyǐngxì de dōngxì,
diànyǐng lǐ de píyǐngxì tài jīngcǎi le, wǒ yě
xiǎng zuò yí gè.



Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénmeyàng de píyǐng?



Wǒ yào zuò yí gè Chāorén, zuò hǎo yǐhòu, yào
biǎoyǎn gěi Zhōngwénbān de tóngxué kàn.



Nà wǒ yě yào shì yí shì, wǒ xiǎng zuò yí gè
Sūn Wùkōng de píyǐng.



Nǐmen yào yòng shénme yánsè?



Wǎng shàng shuō píyǐng cháng yòng de
yánsè^② shì hóng、huáng、lán、lǜ、hēi
zhè jǐ zhǒng, wǒ xiǎng yòng hóngsè、
huángsè hé lánsè zuò Chāorén píyǐng.



Zuò Sūn Wùkōng yào yòng de yánsè hěn
duō, shénme yánsè dōu děi yòng.



Nà wǒ bāng nǐmen jiā bèijǐng yīnyuè ba!
Píyǐngxì yào yòng chuántǒng yuèqì, wǒ
huì lā èrhú, yě huì tán gǔzhēng.



Nǐ tài lìhai le! Nà wǒ jiù bāng nǐmen pèi yīn ba!

Vocabulary List 生词表



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	拖鞋	拖鞋	tuōxié	<i>n.</i>	slippers; flip-flops
2.	叔叔	叔叔	shūshu	<i>n.</i>	father's younger brother; uncle
3.	阿姨	阿姨	āyí	<i>n.</i>	maternal aunt
4.	爷爷	爺爺	yéye	<i>n.</i>	father's father; paternal grandfather
5.	奶奶	奶奶	nǎinai	<i>n.</i>	father's mother; paternal grandmother
6.	部	部	bù	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for works of art, like movies, literature, etc.
7.	孙子	孫子	sūnzi	<i>n.</i>	grandson
8.	不同	不同	bùtóng	<i>adj./n.</i>	different; distinct; not the same; not alike
9.	地方风俗	地方風俗	dìfāng fēngsú	<i>n.</i>	local custom
10.	结局	結局	jiéjú	<i>n.</i>	ending
11.	感人	感人	gǎnrén	<i>adj.</i>	touching; moving
12.	演员	演員	yǎnyuán	<i>n.</i>	actor or actress; performer
	演	演	yǎn	<i>v.</i>	to act
13.	拍	拍	pāi	<i>v.</i>	to shoot (a film)
14.	剧情	劇情	jùqíng	<i>n.</i>	story line; plot

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
15.	搞笑	搞笑	gǎoxiào	<i>adj.</i>	to get people to laugh; funny; hilarious
16.	评分	評分	píngfēn	<i>n./vo.</i>	rating; to rate; to grade; to score
17.	说话	說話	shuō huà	<i>vo.</i>	to speak; to say; to talk
18.	皮影戏	皮影戲	píyǐngxì	<i>n.</i>	shadow puppet play
	皮影	皮影	píyǐng	<i>n.</i>	shadow puppetry
	戏	戲	xì	<i>n.</i>	play
19.	精彩	精彩	jīngcǎi	<i>adj.</i>	wonderful; marvelous; brilliant
20.	什么样	什麼樣	shénmeyàng	<i>pron.</i>	what kind? what sort? what appearance?
21.	超人	超人	Chāorén	<i>pn.</i>	Superman
22.	孙悟空	孫悟空	Sūn Wùkōng	<i>pn.</i>	Sun Wukong, the Monkey King, a character in the novel <i>Journey to the West</i>
23.	黄	黃	huáng	<i>adj.</i>	yellow
24.	蓝	藍	lán	<i>adj.</i>	blue
25.	背景	背景	bèijǐng	<i>n.</i>	background
26.	传统	傳統	chuántǒng	<i>n./adj.</i>	tradition; traditional
27.	乐器	樂器	yuèqì	<i>n.</i>	musical instrument

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
28.	拉	拉	lā	<i>v.</i>	to play (a bowed instrument); to pull
29.	二胡	二胡	èrhú	<i>n.</i>	erhu (Chinese two-string fiddle)
30.	弹	彈	tán	<i>v.</i>	to strum; to play (a string instrument); to pluck
31.	古筝	古箏	gǔzhēng	<i>n.</i>	zither or guzheng
32.	配音	配音	pèi yīn	<i>vo.</i>	dubbing (filmmaking)



Grammar

语法

1. (Subject) **想 / 要** (xiǎng/yào) **verb 什么** (shénme) + (object), **就** (jiù) **verb 什么** (shénme) + (object) (do whatever you would like/want to do)

The sentence is composed of two clauses, each of which shares the same verbal phrase, “verb + **什么** (shénme)”. The verb is normally one single-syllable verb such as **吃** (chī), **去** (qù), **看** (kàn), **说** (shuō), **唱** (chàng). Two modal verbs **想** (would like to) and **要** (want to) can occur here. The subject and object can be omitted, as they are understood by the speaker and listener in context.

Structure: (Subject) 想 / 要 + verb + 什么 + (object), 就 verb 什么 + (object)

你想吃什么菜, 就吃什么菜。→ 想吃什么, 就吃什么。

Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme cài, jiù chī shénme cài. → Xiǎng chī shénme, jiù chī shénme.

Eat whatever you would like to eat.

你想去哪儿, 就去哪儿。→ 想去哪儿, 就去哪儿。(哪儿 = 什么地方)

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr, jiù qù nǎr. → Xiǎng qù nǎr, jiù qù nǎr. (nǎr = shénme dìfang)

Go anywhere you would like to go.

大家想说什么话, 就说什么话。→ 想说什么, 就说什么。

Dàjiā xiǎng shuō shénme huà, jiù shuō shénme huà. → Xiǎng shuō shénme, jiù shuō shénme.

Say whatever you would like to say.

他们要看什么电影，就看什么电影。→ 要看什么，就看什么。

Tāmen yào kàn shénme diànyǐng, jiù kàn shénme diànyǐng. → Yào kàn shénme, jiù kàn shénme.

Watch whatever movie you would like to watch.

同学们要唱什么歌，就唱什么歌。→ 要唱什么，就唱什么。

Tóngxuémen yào chàng shénme gē, jiù chàng shénme gē. → yào chàng shénme, jiù chàng shénme.

Sing whatever you would like to sing.

2. An attribute + 的 (de) + subject/object = a relative clause

The expression “an attribute + 的 (de)” functions as an adjective to describe a subject or object. It occurs before a subject or object as a pre-modifier in Mandarin Chinese, whereas in English it always occurs after a subject or an object as a post-modifier. The structure “an attribute + 的 (de) + subject/object” is a relative clause in Mandarin Chinese.

Relative clause at the beginning of a sentence

我们昨天看的电影很感人。

Wǒmen zuótiān kàn de diànyǐng hěn gǎnrén.

The movie that we watched yesterday was very touching.

你上个星期吃的麻婆豆腐是很有名的四川菜。

Nǐ shàng ge xīngqī chī de mápó dòufu shì hěn yǒumíng de Sìchuāncài.

The Mapo tofu that you ate last week is a very famous Sichuan dish.

请你看电影的那个人很爱吃火锅。

Qǐng nǐ kàn diànyǐng de nà gè rén hěn ài chī huǒguō.

The person who invited you to watch a movie loves to eat hot pots.

Relative clause at the end of a sentence

那些是妈妈做的水饺。

Nà xiē shì māma zuò de shuǐjiǎo.

Those are the dumplings that Mom made.

我们都还记得我们以前学过的生词。

Wǒmen dōu hái jìde wǒmen yǐqián xuéguò de shēngcí.

We still remember the vocabulary that we learned before.

这是妹妹新买的手机。

Zhè shì mèimei xīn mǎi de shǒujī.

This is a cell phone that my younger sister just bought.



Dialogue 2

对话二



Yingzi, David, Li Ming and Moli go to KTV together to sing karaoke.



英子



大卫



李明



茉莉



哇，这家 KTV 的环境真不错！来，我们点歌吧！

我从来没唱过卡拉 OK^③，你们帮我点吧，我只会唱一首中文歌——《小苹果》。



这儿什么歌都有！你可以点英文歌或者中文歌^④。

中国话

你在学中国话

孔夫子的话 越来越国际化

我想点一首现在最流行的歌，我一唱你们就知道了。



(David plays a song and starts to sing along.)



她是我的偶像！我在纽约看过她的演唱会。我跟你一起唱！

(While David and Li Ming are singing, Moli and Yingzi are chatting.)



英子，你有没有喜欢的歌手？

韩国有一个很红的偶像团体，叫BTS，我是他们的粉丝！你听过他们的歌吗？



听过一两首，可是我听不懂韩文。我平常都听中国的流行音乐。

是吗？中国有什么有名的偶像团体？



TFBOYS，中文名字是加油男孩，你知道他们吗？

我知道！他们又青春又有活力，我会唱他们的歌。



(Li Ming finishes singing.)



李明，你刚刚唱的那首歌叫什么名字？
太好听了！



叫《中国话》，是一首中国风的嘻哈歌，
节奏很轻快，旋律也很“洗脑”。



是啊，我很喜欢这种风格！歌词还有我
们学过的绕口令。



茉莉，你还没点歌，点一首吧！你喜欢
什么风格的音乐？



茉莉最喜欢听中国的流行音乐，对不对？



对，不过我今天想点一首摇滚。这首歌
不但有现代的说唱，也有传统的京剧。



听起来很特别！茉莉，你就点这首歌吧！



好啊，但是，如果唱得不好，你们别笑
我啊！

Pinyin Dialogue 2

Yingzi, David, Li Ming and Moli go to KTV together to sing karaoke.



Yīngzǐ



Dàwèi



Lǐ Míng



Mòlì



Wā, zhè jiā KTV de huánjìng zhēn bú cuò!
Lái, wǒmen diǎn gē ba!



Wǒ cónglái méi chànguò kǎ lā OK^③, nǐmen
bāng wǒ diǎn ba, wǒ zhǐ huì chàng yì shǒu
Zhōngwéngē — Xiǎo Píngguǒ.



Zhèr shénme gē dōu yǒu! Nǐ kěyǐ diǎn
Yīngwéngē huòzhě Zhōngwéngē^④.



Wǒ xiǎng diǎn yì shǒu xiànzài zuì liúxíng de
gē, wǒ yí chàng nǐmen jiù zhīdào le.

(David plays a song and starts to sing along.)



Tā shì wǒ de ǒuxiàng! Wǒ zài Niǔyuē kànguò tā de
yǎnchànghuì. Wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ chàng!

(While David and Li Ming are singing, Moli and Yingzi are chatting.)



Yīngzi, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xǐhuan de gēshǒu?



Hánguó yǒu yí gè hěn hóng de ǒuxiàng tuántǐ, jiào BTS, wǒ shì tāmen de fěnsī! Nǐ tīngguò tāmen de gē ma?



Tīngguò yì-liǎng shǒu, kěshì wǒ tīng bu dòng Hánwén. Wǒ píngcháng dōu tīng Zhōngguó de liúxíng yīnyuè.



Shì ma? Zhōngguó yǒu shénme yǒumíng de ǒuxiàng tuántǐ?



TFBOYS, Zhōngwén míngzi shì Jiāyóu Nánhái, nǐ zhīdào tāmen ma?



Wǒ zhīdào! Tāmen yòu qīngchūn yòu yǒu huólì, wǒ huì chàng tāmen de gē.

(Li Ming finishes singing.)



Lǐ Míng, nǐ gānggāng chàng de nà shǒu gē jiào shénme míngzi? Tài hǎotīng le!



Jiào Zhōngguóhuà, shì yí shǒu Zhōngguófēng de xīhā gē, jiézòu hěn qīngkuài, xuánlǜ yě hěn “xǐ nǎo”.



Shì a, wǒ hěn xǐhuan zhè zhǒng fēnggé!
Gēcí hái yǒu wǒmen xuéguò de ràokǒulǐng.



Mòlì, nǐ hái méi diǎn gē, diǎn yì shǒu ba! Nǐ
xǐhuan shénme fēnggé de yīnyuè?



Mòlì zuì xǐhuan tīng Zhōngguó de liúxíng
yīnyuè, duì bu duì?



Duì, búguò wǒ jīntiān xiǎng diǎn yì shǒu
yáogǔn. Zhè shǒu gē búdàn yǒu xiàndài de
shuōchàng, yě yǒu chuántǒng de jīngjù.



Tīng qǐlái hěn tèbié! Mòlì, nǐ jiù diǎn zhè
shǒu gē ba!



Hǎo a, dànshì, rúguǒ chàng de bù hǎo,
nǐmen bié xiào wǒ a!

Vocabulary List 生词表



No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	KTV	KTV	KTV	<i>n.</i>	karaoke television; karaoke bar
2.	点歌	點歌	diǎn gē	<i>vo.</i>	to choose a song; to request a song
3.	从来	從來	cónglái	<i>adv.</i>	from past till present; always; at all times; never (if used in negative sentence)
4.	卡拉 OK	卡拉 OK	kǎlā OK	<i>n.</i>	karaoke
5.	苹果	蘋果	píngguǒ	<i>n.</i>	apple
6.	或者	或者	huòzhě	<i>conj.</i>	or (used in statements)
7.	流行	流行	liúxíng	<i>adj.</i>	(of a style of clothing, song, etc.) popular; fashionable
8.	偶像	偶像	ǒuxiàng	<i>n.</i>	idol
9.	演唱会	演唱會	yǎnchànghuì	<i>n.</i>	vocal recital or concert
10.	歌手	歌手	gēshǒu	<i>n.</i>	singer
11.	红	紅	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	popular
12.	团体	團體	tuántǐ	<i>n.</i>	group
13.	粉丝	粉絲	fěnsī	<i>n.</i>	fan
14.	平常	平常	píngcháng	<i>adv.</i>	usually
15.	青春	青春	qīngchūn	<i>adj./n.</i>	young; youth; youthfulness

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
16.	有活力	有活力	yǒu huó lì	<i>adj.</i>	energetic; vital
17.	刚刚	剛剛	gānggāng	<i>adv.</i>	just recently; just a moment ago
18.	中国风	中國風	Zhōngguó fēng	<i>n.</i>	Chinese style
19.	嘻哈	嘻哈	xīhā	<i>n.</i>	hip hop
20.	节奏	節奏	jiézòu	<i>n.</i>	rhythm; tempo
21.	轻快	輕快	qīngkuài	<i>adj.</i>	light and quick; lively
22.	旋律	旋律	xuánlǜ	<i>n.</i>	melody
23.	洗脑	洗腦	xǐ nǎo	<i>adj./vo.</i>	catchy; hooked; brainwashing; to brainwash
24.	风格	風格	fēnggé	<i>n.</i>	style
25.	歌词	歌詞	gēcí	<i>n.</i>	lyrics
26.	摇滚	搖滾	yáogǔn	<i>n.</i>	rock 'n' roll
27.	现代	現代	xiàndài	<i>n.</i>	modern times; modern age
28.	京剧	京劇	jīngjù	<i>n.</i>	Beijing Opera



Grammar

语法

3. Subject + 从来没 / 没有 (cónglái méi/méiyǒu) + verb 过 (guò) + object (...have never done something)

The expression 从来没 (cónglái méi), meaning “have never,” always occurs before “verb + 过”.

Structure: Subject + 从来没 / 没有 + verb 过 + object

他很爱唱歌，但是，从来没唱过卡拉 OK。

Tā hěn ài chàng gē, dànshì, cónglái méi chàngguò kǎ lā OK.

He loves to sing but has never sung karaoke.

我从来没见过我的偶像，真希望明年可以见到他。

Wǒ cónglái méi jiànguò wǒ de ǒuxiàng, zhēn xīwàng míngnián kěyǐ jiàndào tā.

I have never seen my idol. I really hope to be able to see him next year.

很多美国人从来没有听过《中国话》这首歌。

Hěn duō Měiguórén cónglái méiyǒu tīngguò 《Zhōngguóhuà》 zhè shǒu gē.

Many Americans have never heard of this song called *Zhōngguóhuà*.

4. A 或者 / 或 (huòzhě/huò) B (A or B in a statement)

The expression “A 或者 / 或 (huòzhě / huò) B” offers two alternatives in a statement. It differs from “A 还是 (háishi) B”, a question that appears in previous lessons.

很多同学喜欢听嘻哈或者摇滚。

Hěn duō tóngxué xǐhuan tīng xīhā huòzhě yáogǔn.

Many classmates like to listen to hip hop or rock.

明天我们去 KTV 会唱中文歌或者韩文歌。

Míngtiān wǒmen qù KTV huì chàng Zhōngwéngē huòzhě Hánwéngē.

Tomorrow we will go to KTV to sing Chinese songs or Korean songs.

老师说，我们做视频的时候，可以加音乐或者配音。

Lǎoshī shuō, wǒmen zuò shìpín de shíhòu, kěyǐ jiā yīnyuè huòzhě pèi yīn.

The teacher said that when we make a video, we can add music or dubbing.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Interact with a host
upon entering a
Chinese house.

A: 你们来了! 请进请进!

B: 哇! 你家好大, 好漂亮!

A: 谢谢! 来, 这儿有拖鞋。

B: 谢谢。你爸妈不在家吗?

A: 他们今天不在家, 我们想
做什么, 就做什么!

B: 太棒了! 那我们玩电脑游
戏吧!

A: 好, 我们先玩电脑游戏,
然后再看电影。

II Exchange comments
on 皮影戏 and talk
about one 皮影
shadow puppet that I
wish to make.

A: 你看过皮影戏吗?

B: 我上个星期在中文班看过。

A: 你觉得皮影戏怎么样?

B: 太精彩了, 非常特别。我想做一个皮影。

A: 那你想做什么样的皮影?

B: 我要做一只会飞的马。

A: 好特别啊! 我从来没见过会飞的马。

B: 你呢? 你想做什么?

A: 我想做一个孙悟空。

B: 你想用什么颜色?

A: 做孙悟空要用的颜色很多, 什么颜色都可以用。

B: 你想不想加背景音乐?

A: 想啊! 但是, 皮影戏要用传统乐器。

B: 没问题, 我会拉二胡, 也会弹古筝。

A: 太好了! 要不要找人配音?

B: 好啊!

A: 你觉得谁最合适?

B: 我啊!

A: 对对对, 你的中文最好, 找你配音最合适了。



Discuss my experiences and favorite music, and comment on genres.

A: 你唱过卡拉 OK 吗?

B: 我从来没唱过卡拉 OK。

A: 以后你可以来我家唱, 我们家有卡拉 OK。对了, 我最近刚听了一个演唱会。

B: 是谁的演唱会?

A: 周杰伦 (Zhōu Jiélún; Jay Chou), 他是我最喜欢的歌手。

B: 是吗? 他的演唱会很精彩吗?

A: 当然! 他有很多粉丝, 是很多人的偶像。

B: 他唱了什么有名的歌?

A: 太多了! 我最喜欢《给我一首歌的时间》。

B: 他是不是也唱过一首歌, 叫《听妈妈的话》?

A: 对啊! 不管是大人还是小孩, 都喜欢这首歌, 连我爸爸妈妈都会唱。

B: 他的音乐有什么风格?

A: 什么风格都有, 有嘻哈、说唱、摇滚, 旋律跟节奏都很“洗脑”。

B: 哇! 好酷啊!

A: 除了现代音乐以外, 他的歌也有传统中国风。

B: 他真的太厉害了! 去你家唱卡拉OK的时候, 我一定要点他的歌。

IV Describe the movie
孙子从美国来
(*A Grandson from
America*) and share
comments.

我们最近上中文课的时候，看了《孙子从美国来》这部电影。我觉得这部电影拍得很好，演员演得很好，剧情很搞笑，结局也非常感人。现在让我来介绍 (jièshào; introduce) 一下这部电影。

电影里有一个小孩，是美国人，他跟爸爸妈妈到了中国以后，爸爸妈妈就到别的地方去工作了，没有跟他住在一起，所以，他每天都跟爷爷在一起生活。开始的时候，他听不懂中文，不知道怎么跟爷爷说话，很不喜欢爷爷，也很不快乐。有一天，他看到了爷爷做的皮影，觉得非常好玩。爷爷还给他做了一个蜘蛛侠 (Zhīzhūxiá; Spiderman) 的皮影，然后他也跟爷爷学习怎么演皮影戏。最后，孙子跟爷爷成 (chéng; become) 了很好的朋友。在这部电影里，我们看到了中美文化的不同，也学到了中国的地方风俗。最有趣的是中国的皮影戏，太精彩了！

这部电影的评分很高，我非常推荐。如果你还没看过这部电影的话，一定要找时间看看。

V

Introduce my favorite singer or band/group.

周杰伦 (Zhōu Jiélún; Jay Chou) 是我最喜欢的歌手，他有很多粉丝，是很多人的偶像。他的生日是一月十八日，属马。他的爸爸妈妈都是老师。

他四岁的时候开始学钢琴，学了十多年的古典 (gǔdiǎn; classical) 音乐以后，开始喜欢流行音乐，写了很多首有名的歌。他在很多地方开过演唱会，红得不得了，在网上可以找到很多他唱歌的视频。

他的音乐风格很特别，有些歌是传统的中国风，有些歌是现代的嘻哈、说唱、摇滚。有些歌的旋律很轻快，有些歌很“洗脑”，听几次就会唱了。听他的歌，可以学到很多中国现代跟传统文化的东西。

他喜欢打篮球，拍过电影，会十多种乐器，是一个天才 (tiāncái; gifted) 歌手。



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Interact with a host upon entering a Chinese house.

A: 你们来了! 请进请进!

B:

A: 谢谢! 来, 这儿有拖鞋。

B:

A: 他们今天不在家, 我们想做什么, 就做什么!

B:, 那.....

.....

Exit Ticket 2

Exchange comments on 皮影戏 and talk about one 皮影 shadow puppet that you wish to make.

Experience and comments

你看过皮影戏吗? 是什么时候看皮影戏的? 是在哪儿看的? 你觉得皮影戏怎么样?

Making a shadow puppet

你想做皮影吗? 什么样的皮影? 你想用什么颜色? 几种颜色?

Adding background music

你想不想加背景音乐? 要用传统乐器吗? 你会拉二胡吗? 会弹古筝吗?

Dubbing

你想配音吗? 你能 / 会配音吗? 你觉得找谁配音最合适?



Exit Ticket 3



Discuss your experience and favorite music, and comment on genres.

Use the following questions to ask and respond to questions with your partner:

1. Experience: verb + 过 + object

你唱过卡拉 OK 吗？你去过 KTV 吗？你在 KTV 点过歌吗？点过几首中文歌？唱过什么歌？听得懂中文歌吗？

你听过演唱会吗？是谁的演唱会？是什么时候听的？是在哪儿听的？是什么风格的演唱会？你觉得这个演唱会很精彩吗？

2. Favorite singer(s): 最喜欢的歌手

你最喜欢哪一个歌手 / 偶像乐团？他 / 她 (他们 / 她们) 是谁？

叫什么名字？他 / 她是你的偶像吗？他 / 她有很多粉丝吗？

他 / 她的歌很有名 / 流行 / 红 / 火吗？有什么样的风格？为什么

你喜欢他 / 她的歌 / 音乐风格？他 / 她的音乐让你觉得怎么样？

听他 / 她的音乐，你学到了什么？

3. Musical genres: 音乐风格

你最 / 平常喜欢听什么音乐？什么风格的音乐？

流行 传统 现代 中国风 美国风 嘻哈 说唱 摇滚

绕口令 京剧

节奏怎么样？旋律怎么样？歌词怎么样？

快 慢 轻快 洗脑 特别 好听 有趣 听得懂 听不懂

Exit Ticket 4

Describe the movie 孙子从美国来 (*A Grandson from America*) and share your comments.

Respond to the following questions, organize all responses, and write a short essay to introduce the movie.

你昨天看中国电影了吗？电影好看吗？叫什么名字？拍得怎么样？演员演得好不好？剧情很搞笑吗？结局很感人吗？

电影里有一个小孩，是中国人吗？他跟爸爸妈妈说到了中国以后，要去做什么？爸爸妈妈跟他住在一起吗？他每天都跟谁在一起？开始的时候，他听得懂中文吗？知道怎么跟爷爷说话吗？喜欢爷爷吗？快乐吗？

有一天，他看到爷爷在做什么？觉得怎么样？他开始跟爷爷学做什么？最后，这个孩子跟爷爷成了好朋友了吗？

在这部电影里，你看到了什么？学到了什么？最有趣的是什么？这部电影很精彩吗？这部电影的评分高不高？你推荐吗？



Exit Ticket 5



Introduce your favorite singer or band/group.

Use the following guided questions as prompts to organize your thoughts.

你最喜欢哪个歌手？他/她是你的偶像吗？你是她/他的粉丝吗？他今年多大？属什么？他的爸爸妈妈做什么工作？

他几岁开始唱歌？他是怎么开始学唱歌的？他开过很多演唱会吗？很红/火吗？你最喜欢哪首歌？那首歌叫什么名字？

他的音乐风格怎么样？是现代风格还是传统风格？是嘻哈、说唱、摇滚吗？节奏怎么样？旋律怎么样？很“洗脑”吗？听他的歌，你学到了什么？

除了唱歌以外，他还喜欢做什么？他是一个什么样的人？

Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	刺激	刺激	cìjī	<i>adj./v.</i>	thrilling; exciting; to provoke
2.	意想不到	意想不到	yìxiǎng-búdào	<i>adj.</i>	unexpected; previously unimagined
3.	优美	優美	yōuměi	<i>adj.</i>	(music) beautiful
4.	乐队	樂隊	yuèduì	<i>n.</i>	band
5.	吉他	吉他	jítā	<i>n.</i>	guitar
6.	小提琴	小提琴	xiǎotíqín	<i>n.</i>	violin
7.	吹	吹	chuī	<i>v.</i>	to blow
8.	笛子	笛子	dízi	<i>n.</i>	flute; bamboo flute
9.	长笛	長笛	chángdí	<i>n.</i>	flute
10.	黑管	黑管	hēiguǎn	<i>n.</i>	clarinet
11.	喇叭	喇叭	lǎbā	<i>n.</i>	trumpet
12.	鼓	鼓	gǔ	<i>n.</i>	drum



拉二胡
lā èrhú



弹琵琶
tán pípa



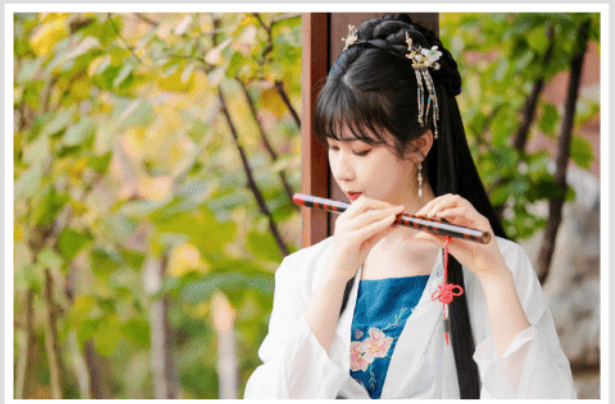
弹古筝
tán gǔzhēng



吹葫芦丝
chuī húlusī

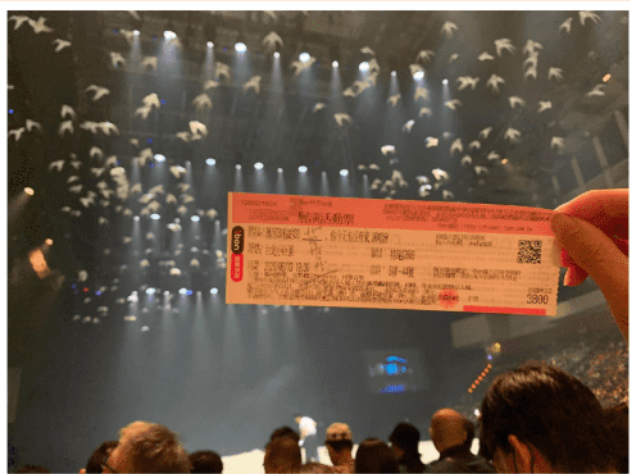


拉马头琴
lā mǎtóuqín



吹笛子
chuī dízi

Do you know any other Chinese traditional instruments? Which one do you want to try?



Who is your favorite Chinese singer? What kind of music concert would you go to?



Have you ever sung karaoke before? What type of songs can you recognize from the screen in the karaoke room (in the picture on the right)?



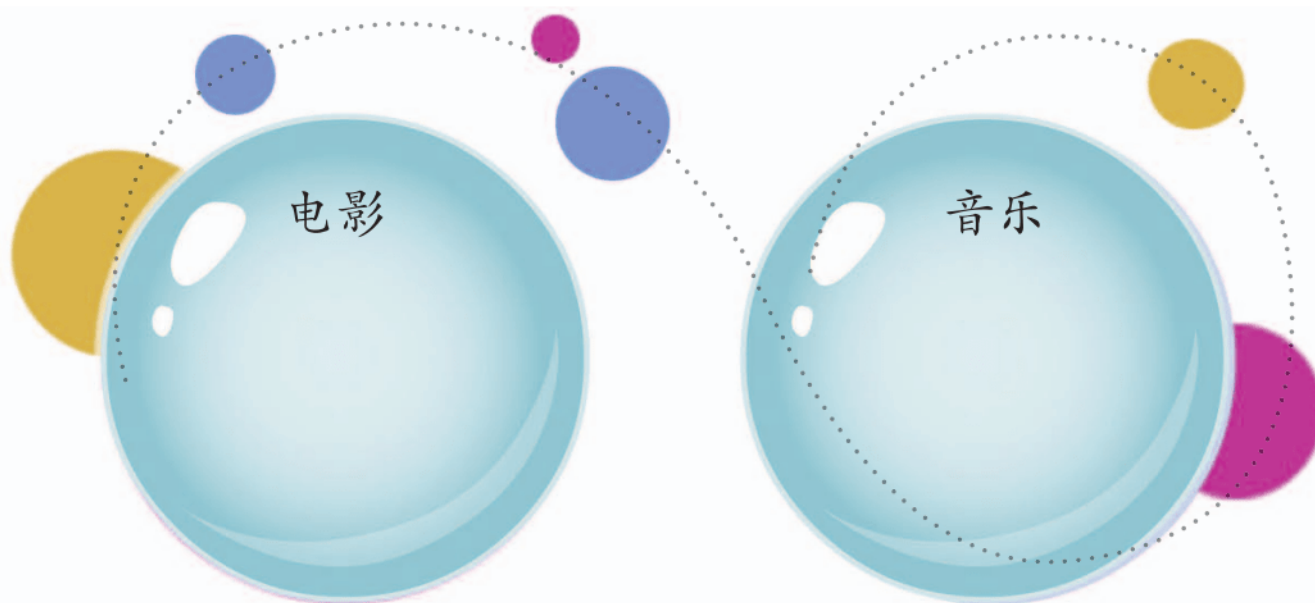
Vocabulary Challenge

词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Categorization

1. What categories do the following words belong to? Movies or music or both?
Put the letters in the bubbles.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|-------|
| a. 结局 | b. 歌词 | c. 节奏 | d. 嘻哈 | e. 演员 |
| f. 评分 | g. 摇滚 | h. 剧情 | i. 配音 | j. 流行 |
| k. 旋律 | l. 歌手 | m. 背景音乐 | | |



2. What verbs can you use to say “play” in Mandarin Chinese? Fill in the blank below with a suitable verb.

_____ 篮球	_____ 无人机	_____ 电脑游戏
_____ 二胡	_____ 古筝	_____ 钢琴

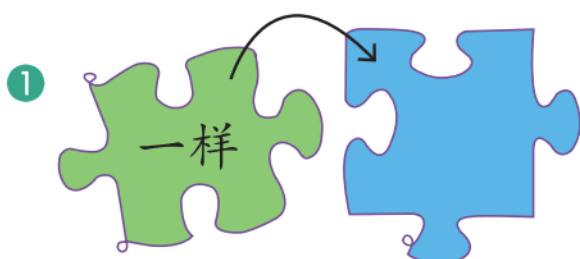
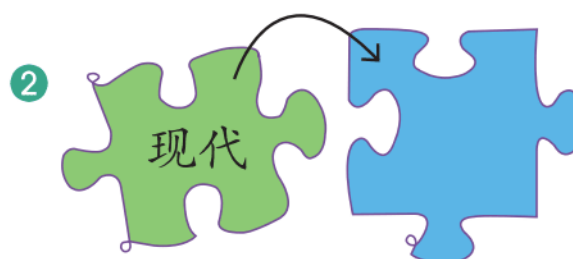
B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

<div> <div>地</div> <div>→</div> </div>	
<div> <div>歌</div> <div>→</div> </div>	
<div> <div>唱</div> <div>→</div> </div>	
<div> <div>乐</div> </div>	<div> <div>yuè</div> <div>→</div> </div> <div> <div>lè</div> <div>→</div> </div>

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a. 阿姨 | b. 孙子 | c. 演员 | d. 叔叔 |
| 2. a. 结局 | b. 洗脑 | c. 剧情 | d. 演员 |
| 3. a. 配音 | b. 流行 | c. 嘻哈 | d. 摇滚 |
| 4. a. 古筝 | b. 乐器 | c. 拖鞋 | d. 二胡 |
| 5. a. 歌词 | b. 偶像 | c. 节奏 | d. 旋律 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



拖鞋
孙子
不同
地方风俗
结局
摇滚

感人
演员
拍电影
剧情
搞笑
现代

评分
皮影戏
精彩
背景
传统乐器
京剧

拉二胡
弹古筝
开始
或者
流行歌手
歌词

偶像团体
演唱会
粉丝
青春
有活力

节奏
轻快
旋律
洗脑
风格

(Go to page 505 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯

小时候，周深家里没有钱。他的爸爸妈妈去了离家很远的地方工作，所以爸爸妈妈没有跟他住在一起，家里只有他跟姐姐。

上小学的时候，周深就很热爱唱歌了，他常常自己一个人练习唱歌。初中的时候，班里的同学都开始变声了，可是周深的声音还是跟女孩一样，大家都笑他，所以周深很怕在人前唱歌。上高中的时候，他参加了校园歌手大赛，得了第一名，他才开始在人前表演。不过，周深的爸爸妈妈从来没有想过让他做歌手。因为大家都觉得好看的人才能做歌手，可是周深没有那么好看。

中国男歌手 周深

周深 (Zhōu Shēn; Charlie), 男, 属猴, 生日是九月二十九日, 是中国很有名的歌手。



上完高中以后，周深去了乌克兰^{Wūkèlán}。因为在乌克兰上大学不是很贵，所以他就去那儿学医。周深一边学乌克兰语一边学医，非常累。虽然他每天只睡两三个小时，可是他还是学得不好。后来周深不想学医了，他要学音乐，可是爸爸妈妈非常不同意，所以他只能自己^{zhuàn qián}赚钱学音乐。

2014年，周深参加了《中国好声音》，因为他的声音很特别，跟女孩子的声音一样，所以有些人开始认识他了。

2016年，周深唱了一首歌，叫《大鱼》。这首歌让他变得非常有名。现在，他有了很多粉丝，也是很多人的偶像。他的音乐风格也很特别，什么歌都会唱，有些歌是传统的中国风，有些歌是现代的说唱、摇滚，有些歌的旋律很轻快，有些歌很洗脑，听几次就会唱了。听他的歌，你可以学到很多中国现代跟传统文化的东西。不管是老人还是学生，大家都很喜欢听他的歌。

注释 Notes

- ① 热爱 rè'ài: have passion for
- ② 变声 biàn shēng: voice change
- ③ 大赛 dàsài: competition
- ④ 乌克兰 Wūkèlán: Ukraine
- ⑤ 赚钱 zhuàn qián: to earn money



音乐节目 Music Show



Have you heard about any Chinese talent shows from your Chinese friends or teachers? Back in 2004, *Super Girl* (《超级女声》, Chāojí Nǚshēng), a huge singing competition, took China by storm. As a viewer, you never knew who was going to show up after the audition (海选, hǎi xuǎn), or what they were going to perform. Plus, you could text in and vote (投票, tóu piào) for your favorites. As a singer, it was an amazing opportunity to make your dreams come true. After the success of *Super Girl*, other popular talent shows such as *Super Boy* (《快乐男声》, Kuàilè Nánshēng), *Sing My Song* (《中国好歌曲》, Zhōngguó Hǎo Gēqǔ), and *I Am A Singer* (《我是歌手》, Wǒ Shì Gēshǒu) emerged and gained popularity among audiences. Another notable show, *Voice of China* (《中国好声音》, Zhōngguó Hǎo Shēngyīn; now known as *Sing! China*), features coaches (导师, dǎoshī) who give feedback and guide their team to win the competition, which has gained attention from Chinese people all over the world. Recently, the talent





show format has shifted from solo performers to groups, like in *Produce 101* (《**创造101**》, Chuàngzào 101). This show gathers 101 aspiring female singers from different entertainment companies and agencies, and only 11 of them will be chosen by the viewers to debut as a new c-pop girl group. Similarly, *Sisters Who Make Waves* (《**乘风破浪的姐姐**》, Chéngfēng-pòlàng de Jiějie) and *Call Me By Fire* (《**披荆斩棘的哥哥**》, Pījīng-zhǎnjí de Gēge) are all about singing, dancing, and promoting teamwork, but are also more like reality TV shows.

- ◎ **So, what is your favorite talent show?**
- ◎ **Do you have any ideas for what you would like to see in future shows?**



It is always fun to discuss these topics with your classmates and teacher.



課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1 in traditional characters**

Moli, Yingzi, and David visit Li Ming's house and watch a film there.

李明：你們來了！請進請進！

茉莉：哇！你家好漂亮！

李明：謝謝！來，這兒有拖鞋。

茉莉、英子、大衛：好，謝謝。

(Three people take off their shoes and put on indoor slippers.)

大衛：叔叔、阿姨在家嗎？

李明：今天我爸媽不在家，他們去看我爺爺奶奶了。我們想做什麼，就做什麼！

英子：太棒了！那我們看電影吧。你們想看什麼電影？

茉莉：林老師推薦了一部中國電影，叫《孫子從美國來》，你們想看嗎？

大衛：好啊！老師說，在這部電影裡，我們可以看到中美文化的不同，也可以學到中國的地方風俗。

(They watch the movie.)

李明：這部電影的結局太感人了，演員演得真好。

英子：對啊，拍得真好，劇情也很搞笑。這部電影的評分應該很高吧！

茉莉：我看看。哇！這部電影有 8.5 分呢！

李明：大衛，你怎麼不說話？

大衛：我在網上找皮影戲的東西，電影裡的皮影戲太精彩了，我也想做一個。

李明：你想做什麼樣的皮影？

大衛：我要做一個超人，做好以後，要表演給中文班的同學看。

李明：那我也要試一試，我想做一個孫悟空的皮影。

英子：你們要用什麼顏色？

大衛：網上說皮影常用的顏色是紅、黃、藍、綠、黑這幾種，我想用紅色、黃色和藍色做超人皮影。

李明：做孫悟空要用的顏色很多，什麼顏色都得用。

茉莉：那我幫你們加背景音樂吧！皮影戲要用傳統樂器，我會拉二胡，也會彈古箏。

英子：你太厲害了！那我就幫你們配音吧！



Dialogue 1 in English

Moli, Yingzi, and David visit Li Ming's house and watch a film there.

Li Ming: You're here! Come in please, come in!

Moli: Wow! Your home is so beautiful!

Li Ming: Thank you! Come, here are slippers.

Moli, Yingzi, David: Okay, thank you.

(Three people take off their shoes and put on indoor slippers.)

David: Are your parents at home?

Li Ming: My parents are not at home today. They went to visit my grandparents. We can do whatever we want!

Yingzi: Great! Let's watch a movie then. What movie do you want to see?

Moli: Teacher Lin recommended a Chinese movie called *The Grandson Comes from America*. Would you like to watch it?

David: OK! Teacher said that in this movie, we can see the differences between Chinese and American cultures, and we can also learn the local customs in China.

(They watch the movie.)

Li Ming: The ending of this movie is so touching, and the actors were really good.

Yingzi: Yes, the filming is really good, and the plot is also very funny. The rating of this movie should be very high!

Moli: Let me see. Wow! This movie has a rating of 8.5!

Li Ming: David, why are you so quiet?

David: I was looking up shadow puppets on the Internet. The shadow puppets in the movie are so wonderful. I want to make one too.

Li Ming: What kind of shadow puppets do you want to make?

David: I want to make a Superman, and when I'm done, I'll show it to my classmates in Chinese class.

Li Ming: Then I want to try it too. I want to make a shadow puppet of Monkey King.

Yingzi: What color do you want to use?

David: The Internet says that the commonly used colors for shadow puppets are red, yellow, blue, green, and black. I want to use red, yellow, and blue to make my Superman shadow puppet.

Li Ming: There are many colors to be used to make Monkey King. All the colors must be used.

Moli: Then let me add background music for you! Shadow puppetry uses traditional musical instruments. I can play the erhu and the guzheng.

Yingzi: You are so talented! Then I'll do the dubbing for you guys!



Dialogue 2 in traditional characters

Yingzi, David, Li Ming and Moli go to KTV together to sing karaoke.

英子：哇，這家 KTV 的環境真不錯！來，我們點歌吧！

大衛：我從來沒唱過卡拉 OK，你們幫我點吧，我只會唱一首中文歌——《小蘋果》。

李明：這兒什麼歌都有！你可以點英文歌或者中文歌。

大衛：我想點一首現在最流行的歌，我一唱你們就知道了。

(David plays a song and starts to sing along.)

李明：她是我的偶像！我在紐約看過她的演唱會。我跟你一起唱！

(While David and Li Ming are singing, Moli and Yingzi are chatting.)

茉莉：英子，你有没有喜歡的歌手？

英子：韓國有一個很紅的偶像團體，叫 BTS，我是他們的粉絲！你聽過他們的歌嗎？

茉莉：聽過一兩首，可是我聽不懂韓文。我平常都聽中國的流行音樂。

英子：是嗎？中國有什麼有名的偶像團體？

茉莉：TFBOYS，中文名字是加油男孩，你知道他們嗎？

英子：我知道！他們又青春又有活力，我會唱他們的歌。

(Li Ming finishes singing.)

大衛：李明，你剛剛唱的那首歌叫什麼名字？太好聽了！

李明：叫《中國話》，是一首中國風的嘻哈歌，節奏很輕快，旋律也很“洗腦”。

大衛：是啊，我很喜歡這種風格！歌詞還有我們學過的繞口令。

李明：茉莉，你還沒點歌，點一首吧！你喜歡什麼風格的音樂？

大衛：茉莉最喜歡聽中國的流行音樂，對不對？

茉莉：對，不過我今天想點一首搖滾。這首歌不但有現代的說唱，也有傳統的京劇。

大衛：聽起來很特別！茉莉，你就點這首歌吧！

茉莉：好啊，但是，如果唱得不好，你們別笑我啊！

**Dialogue 2 in English**

Yingzi, David, Li Ming and Moli go to KTV together to sing karaoke.

Yingzi: Wow, the atmosphere of this KTV is pretty nice! Come on, let's pick a song!

David: I have never sung karaoke. You guys help me pick songs. I can only sing one Chinese song — “Xiao Pingguo (Little Apple).”

Li Ming: There are all kinds of songs here! You can choose English songs or Chinese songs.

David: I want to choose a song that is most popular right now. As soon as I sing it you will know it.

(David plays a song and starts to sing along.)

Li Ming: She is my idol! I went to her concert in New York. I'll sing with you!

(While David and Li Ming are singing, Moli and Yingzi are chatting.)

Moli: Yingzi, do you have a favorite singer?

Yingzi: There is a very popular idol group in Korea called BTS. I'm such a fan! Have you heard their songs?

Moli: I've heard one or two songs, but I can't understand Korean. I usually listen to Chinese pop music.

Yingzi: Really? Are there any famous idol groups in China?

Moli: TFBOYS. The Chinese name is Jiayou Nanhai (The Fighting Boys). Do you know them?

Yingzi: I know! They are young and energetic. I can sing their songs.

(Li Ming finishes singing.)

David: Li Ming, what's the name of that song you sang just now? It sounds amazing!

Li Ming: It's called “Zhongguohua (Chinese Language).” It's a hip hop song with a Chinese style. The rhythm is very happy. The melody is very catching.

David: Yeah, I really like this style! The lyrics also have tongue twisters that we have learned.

Li Ming: Moli, you haven't chosen a song yet. Please choose one! What style of music do you like?

David: Moli likes listening to Chinese pop music the most, right?

Moli: Yes, but I want to choose a rock song today. This song has not only modern rap, but also traditional Beijing Opera.

David: Sounds very unique! Moli, choose this song!

Moli: All right, but don't laugh at me if I don't sing well!

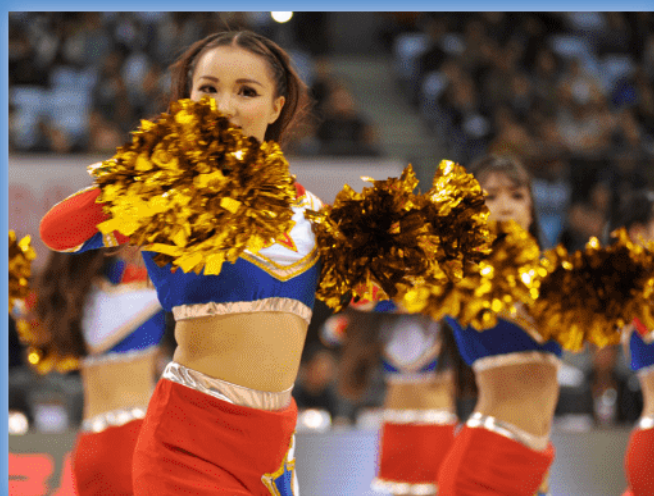
第八课 Lesson 8

Theme

个人与社群认同
Personal and Public Identities

Topic

运动比赛
Sports Game

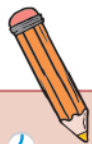


What is your favorite sport? Do you have a favorite player?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 8, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » understand a conversation about a sports game and players.
- » comprehend the descriptions of a sports game.
- » identify information in an athlete's profile.
- » interpret thoughts and values about heroism and team spirit.

Interpersonal

- » discuss a sports game and players.
- » exchange thoughts and values about team spirit versus heroism.

Presentational

- » describe a sports game with Wh-word information.



Dialogue 1

对话一



Li Ming and David are chatting at the gym.



李明



大卫



英子



大卫，今天晚上你想不想来我家看球赛？

今天晚上有球赛吗？是什么球赛？



是美国队跟中国队的篮球赛！

好啊！我最爱看篮球赛了！你要为哪一队加油？





不管哪一队赢，我都^①会为他们加油，因为我是华裔美国人。你觉得哪一队会赢？



当然是美国队！美国队比中国队厉害多了。



谁说的！中国队也很强，不能小看中国队。美国队的主力是谁？



主力是一个明星球员，叫安东尼，后卫是一个华裔美国人，叫林书豪，你知道吗？



他是我们华裔的骄傲，也叫“林来疯”，他很厉害。



那我们来打赌，看哪一队会赢。



好，输的人请客！

(one day later)



听说你们昨天看球赛了，哪一队打得比较好？



上半场中国队打得很好，他们的主力投篮投得又快又准，马上就得了二十分。



最后谁赢了？

本来我们以为中国队会赢，可是，下半场美国队越打越好^②，后来居上，结果拿了冠军。



虽然中国队输了，可是他们打得也很不错。

哇，这场比赛好激烈啊！



是啊，不过，比赛的结果不重要，最重要的是团队精神。中国队虽然输了，可是我觉得每个球员都是英雄。

谁说结果不重要？你记得昨天你跟我打赌了吗？哈哈，你输了！



对对对，我记得！今天下课以后，我请你喝珍珠奶茶。

别忘了带你们自己的环保杯。



Pinyin Dialogue 1

Li Ming and David are chatting at the gym.



Lǐ Míng



Dàwèi



Yīngzǐ



Dàwèi, jīntiān wǎnshang nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng
lái wǒ jiā kàn qiúsài?

Jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu qiúsài ma? Shì shénme
qiúsài?



Shì Měiguóduì gēn Zhōngguóduì de lánqiúsài!

Hǎo a! Wǒ zuì ài kàn lánqiúsài le! Nǐ yào wèi
nǎ yí duì jiā yóu?



Bùguǎn nǎ yí duì yíng, wǒ **dōu**^① huì wèi
tāmen jiā yóu, yīnwèi wǒ shì huáyì Měi-
guórén. Nǐ juéde nǎ yí duì huì yíng?

Dāngrán shì Měiguóduì! Měiguóduì bǐ
Zhōngguóduì lìhai duō le.



Shéi shuō de! Zhōngguóduì yě hěn qiáng,
bù néng xiǎokàn Zhōngguóduì. Měiguóduì
de zhǔlì shì shéi?



Zhǔlì shì yí gè míngxīng qiúyuán, jiào Ān-dōngní, hòuwèi shì yí gè huáyì Měiguórén, jiào Lín Shūháo, nǐ zhīdào tā ma?



Tā shì wǒmen huáyì de jiāo'ào, yě jiào "Lín Láifēng", tā hěn lìhai.



Nà wǒmen lái dǎ dǔ, kàn nǎ yí duì huì yíng.



Hǎo, shū de rén qǐngkè!

(one day later)



Tīngshuō nǐmen zuótiān kàn qiúsài le, nǎ yí duì dǎ de bǐjiào hǎo?



Shàng bàn chǎng Zhōngguóduì dǎ de hěn hǎo, tāmen de zhǔlì tóu lán tóu de yòu kuài yòu zhǔn, mǎshàng jiù dé le èrshí fēn.



Zuìhòu shéi yíng le?



Běnlái wǒmen yǐwéi Zhōngguóduì huì yíng, kěshì, xià bàn chǎng Měiguóduì **yuè** dǎ **yuè** hǎo^②, hòulái-jūshàng, jiéguǒ ná le guànjūn.



Suīrán Zhōngguóduì shūle, kěshì tāmen dǎ de yě hěn bú cuò.



Wā, zhè chǎng bǐsài hǎo jīliè a!



Shì a, búguò, bǐsài de jiéguǒ bú zhòngyào,
zuì zhòngyào de shì tuándùì jīngshén.
Zhōngguóduì suīrán shūle, kěshì wǒ juéde
měi gè qiúyuán dōu shì yīngxióng.



Shéi shuō jiéguǒ bú zhòngyào? Nǐ jìde zuótiān
nǐ gēn wǒ dǎ dǔ le ma? Hāhā, nǐ shūle!



Duì duì duì, wǒ jìde! Jīntiān xià kè yǐhòu, wǒ
qǐng nǐ hē zhēnzhū nǎichá.



Bié wàngle dài nǐmen zìjǐ de huánbǎobēi.

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	球赛	球賽	qiú sài	<i>n.</i>	ball game
2.	为…… 加油	為…… 加油	wèi...jiā yóu	<i>misc.</i>	cheer for...
3.	赢	贏	yíng	<i>v.</i>	to beat; to win
4.	华裔	華裔	huáyì	<i>n.</i>	ethnic Chinese
5.	强	強	qiáng	<i>adj.</i>	strong; powerful
6.	小看	小看	xiǎokàn	<i>v.</i>	to look down on; to underestimate
7.	主力	主力	zhǔlì	<i>n.</i>	main force; first team; leading player
8.	明星	明星	míngxīng	<i>n.</i>	star; celebrity
9.	安东尼	安東尼	Āndōngní	<i>pn.</i>	Anthony
10.	后卫	後衛	hòuwèi	<i>n.</i>	guard in a basketball team
11.	林书豪	林書豪	Lín Shūháo	<i>pn.</i>	Jeremy Lin
12.	骄傲	驕傲	jiāo'ào	<i>n./adj.</i>	pride; proud of something
13.	林来疯	林來瘋	Lín Láifēng	<i>pn.</i>	Linsanity; craze over Jeremy Lin
	疯	瘋	fēng	<i>adj.</i>	insane; crazy
14.	打赌	打賭	dǎ dǔ	<i>vo.</i>	to bet; to make a bet

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
15.	输	輸	shū	v.	to lose
16.	上半场	上半場	shàng bàn chǎng	n.	first half (of a game)
17.	投篮	投籃	tóu lán	vo.	to shoot for the basket (basketball)
18.	准	準	zhǔn	adj.	(shoot) well; accurate
19.	得(分)	得(分)	dé (fēn)	v.	to score; to get (score)
20.	本来	本來	běnlái	adv.	originally; at first
21.	以为	以為	yǐwéi	v.	to assume erroneously
22.	下半场	下半場	xià bàn chǎng	n.	second half (of a game)
23.	后来居上	後來居上	hòulái-jūshàng	idiom	to catch up from behind
24.	结果	結果	jiéguǒ	n./conj.	outcome; result; in the end; as a result
25.	拿	拿	ná	v.	to win (an award); to take
26.	冠军	冠軍	guànjūn	n.	champion
27.	场	場	chǎng	mw.	a measure word for sporting or recreational activities
28.	比赛	比賽	bǐsài	n./v.	competition (sports, etc.); match; to compete

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
29.	激烈	激烈	jīliè	<i>adj.</i>	(of competition or fighting) intense
30.	重要	重要	zhòngyào	<i>adj.</i>	important; significant; major
31.	团队	團隊	tuánduì	<i>n.</i>	team
32.	精神	精神	jīngshén	<i>n.</i>	spirit
33.	英雄	英雄	yīngxióng	<i>n.</i>	hero
34.	珍珠奶茶	珍珠奶茶	zhēnzhū nǎichá	<i>n.</i>	bubble milk tea
	珍珠	珍珠	zhēnzhū	<i>n.</i>	pearl; tapioca bubble
	奶茶	奶茶	nǎichá	<i>n.</i>	milk tea



Grammar

语法

1. 不管 (bùguǎn) + question word, (subject) 都 (dōu) …… (no matter...)

The structure begins with **不管** (bùguǎn) followed by a question word such as which (**哪**; nǎ), who (**谁**; shéi), where (**哪儿**; nǎr), when (**什么时候**; shénme shíhou), or how (**怎么样**; zěnmeyàng). The second clause always has **都** (dōu), meaning all or frequency of an action.

Structure: 不管 + question word, (subject) 都……

不管在哪一个学校上学, 我**都**希望认识很多朋友。(which)

Bùguǎn zài nǎ yí gè xuéxiào shàng xué, wǒ dōu xīwàng rènshi hěn duō péngyou.

No matter which school I study at, I hope to meet a lot of friends.

不管什么人来, **都**能喝到免费的珍珠奶茶。(who)

Bùguǎn shénme rén lái, dōu néng hēdào miǎnfèi de zhēnzhū nǎichá.

No matter who comes, they will be able to get free bubble tea.

不管去哪儿玩, **都**可以带自己的手机。(where)

Bùguǎn qù nǎr wán, dōu kěyǐ dài zìjǐ de shǒujī.

No matter where you go, you can bring your own smartphone.

不管什么时候, 我**都**会很想他。(when)

Bùguǎn shénme shíhou, wǒ dōu huì hěn xiǎng tā.

No matter when, I will miss him a lot.

不管怎么样, 大家一定**都**要参加比赛。(how)

Bùguǎn zěnmeyàng, dàjiā yídìng dōu yào cānjiā bǐsài.

No matter what, you should all attend the game.

2. 越 (yuè) + verb + 越 (yuè) + adjective (is getting more and more...)

The structure “越 (yuè) + verb + 越 (yuè) + adjective” indicates the degree of change for a certain action or movement as time passes.

Structure: 越 + verb + 越 + adjective

他一边说话，一边吃饭，越吃越多。

Tā yìbiān shuō huà, yìbiān chī fàn, yuè chī yuè duō.

He talks and eats at the same time and eats more and more.

他昨天睡了很久，可是越睡越累。

Tā zuótiān shuì le hěn jiǔ, kěshì yuè shuì yuè lèi.

He slept quite a long time yesterday, but the more he slept, the more he felt tired.

学中文很有趣，同学们越学越高兴。

Xué Zhōngwén hěn yǒuqù, tóngxuémen yuè xué yuè gāoxìng.

Learning Chinese is very interesting. The more my classmates learn, the happier they feel.

他每天都练习跑步，结果现在越跑越快。

Tā měi tiān dōu liànxí pǎo bù, jiéguǒ xiànzài yuè pǎo yuè kuài.

He practices running every day. As a result, he is running faster and faster.

那部电影很可怕，我们越看越紧张。

Nà bù diànyǐng hěn kǐpà, wǒmen yuè kàn yuè jǐnzhāng.

The film is so terrifying. The more we watched it, the more nervous we felt.



英子的日记

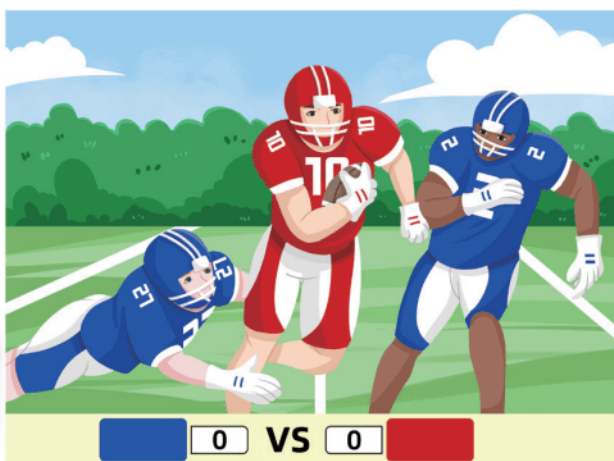
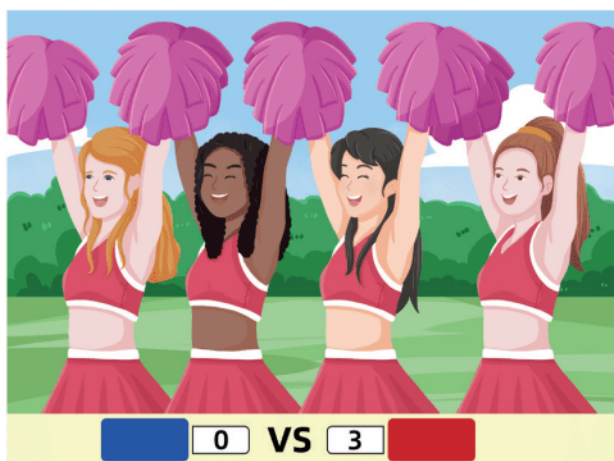
2023 年 9 月 23 日

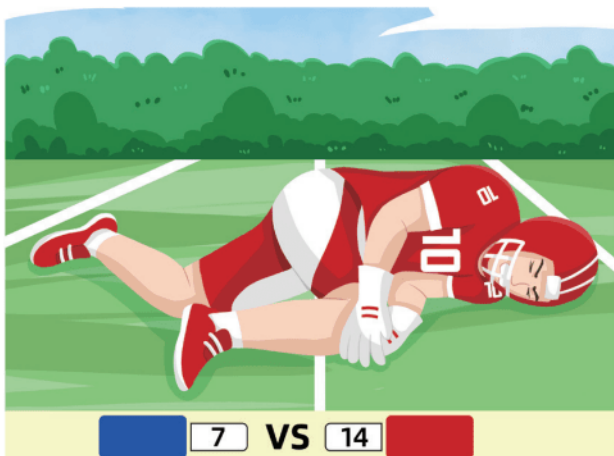
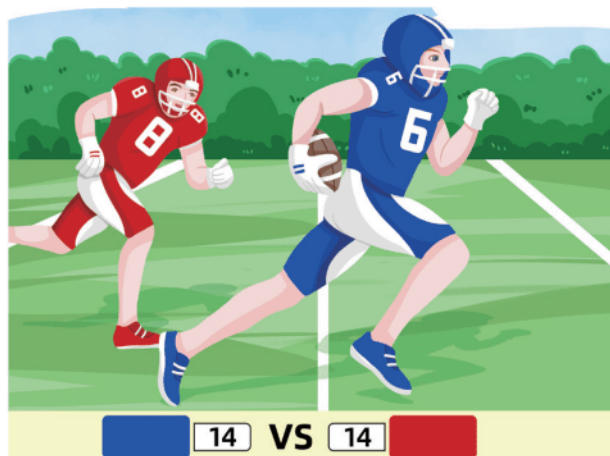
星期六

天气：晴

今天天气非常好，上午十点，我跟茉莉在学校看了一场橄榄球赛，是我们学校跟友谊高中的比赛。

比赛开始以前，教练告诉球员要怎么打赢这场球赛。上半场开始的时候，友谊高中的 10 号球员跑得特别快，虽然我们非常努力，可是他们还是先得了三分。我们一边看比赛，一边喊“加油”，为我们的球员打气。上半场结束的时候，我们输了三分。下半场一开始，友谊高中的主力球员就受伤了。我们抓住这个机会，好不





容易得了七分。后来^③，两队平分，我跟茉莉都紧张死了！到了最后五分钟的时候，我们的6号球员抱着球跑得非常快，帮我们得了七分。结果，我们赢了，比分是二十一比十四。我跟茉莉又跳又叫^④，开心得不得了！

这场球赛太精彩了！下个学期，我希望能参加学校的啦啦队，为我们的校队加油！

Pinyin Narrative

Yīngzǐ de Rìjì

2023 nián 9 yuè 23 rì

Xīngqīliù

tiānqì: qíng

Jīntiān tiānqì fēicháng hǎo, shàngwǔ shí diǎn, wǒ gēn Mòlì zài xuéxiào kànle yì chǎng gǎnlǎnqiúsài, shì wǒmen xuéxiào gēn Yǒuyì Gāozhōng de bǐsài.

Bǐsài kāishǐ yǐqián, jiàoliàn gāosu qiúyuán yào zěnmē dǎyíng zhè chǎng qiúsài. Shàng bàn chǎng kāishǐ de shíhou, Yǒuyì Gāozhōng de shí hào qiúyuán pǎo de tèbié kuài, suīrán wǒmen fēicháng nǚlì, kěshì tāmen háishi xiān déle sān fēn. Wǒmen yìbiān kàn bǐsài, yìbiān hǎn “jiāyóu”, wèi wǒmen de qiúyuán dǎ qì. Shàng bàn chǎng jiéshù de shíhou, wǒmen shūle sān fēn. Xià bàn chǎng yì kāishǐ, Yǒuyì Gāozhōng de zhǔlì qiúyuán jiù shòu shāng le. Wǒmen zhuāzhù zhè gè jīhuì, hǎo bù róngyì déle qī fēn. Hòulái^③, liǎng duì píngfēn, wǒ gēn Mòlì dōu jǐnzhāng sǐ le! Dàole zuìhòu wǔ fēnzhōng de shíhou, wǒmen de liù hào qiúyuán bàozhe qiú pǎo de fēicháng kuài, bāng wǒmen déle qī fēn. Jiéguǒ, wǒmen yíngle, bǐfēn shì èrshíyī bǐ shí sì. Wǒ gēn Mòlì yòu tiào yòu jiào^④, kāixīn de bùdéliǎo!

Zhè chǎng qiúsài tài jīngcǎi le! Xià gè xuéqī, wǒ xīwàng néng cānjiā xuéxiào de lālāduì, wèi wǒmen de xiàoduì jiā yóu!

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	日记	日記	rìjì	<i>n.</i>	diary
2.	橄榄球	橄欖球	gǎnlǎnqiú	<i>n.</i>	American football
3.	友谊	友誼	yǒuyì	<i>n.</i>	friendship; companionship; fellowship
4.	高中	高中	gāozhōng	<i>n.</i>	senior high school
5.	教练	教練	jiàoliàn	<i>n.</i>	sports coach; trainer
6.	打赢	打贏	dǎyíng	<i>vc.</i>	to beat
7.	努力	努力	nǚlì	<i>adj.</i>	great effort; to try hard; to strive
8.	喊	喊	hǎn	<i>v.</i>	to yell; to shout
9.	打气	打氣	dǎ qì	<i>vo.</i>	to encourage; to boost morale
10.	结束	結束	jiéshù	<i>v.</i>	to finish; to end; to conclude
11.	受伤	受傷	shòu shāng	<i>vo./adj.</i>	to sustain injuries; wounded; harmed
12.	抓住	抓住	zhuāzhù	<i>vc.</i>	to grab; to capture
13.	机会	機會	jīhuì	<i>n.</i>	opportunity; chance
14.	好不容易	好不容易	hǎo bù róngyì	<i>phr.</i>	with great difficulty; very difficult
15.	后来	後來	hòulái	<i>t.</i>	afterwards; later

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
16.	平分	平分	píng fēn	<i>vo.</i>	to tie; to have tied score
17.	紧张	緊張	jǐnzhāng	<i>adj.</i>	nervous
18.	抱着	抱著	bàozhe	<i>v.</i>	is carrying or holding in the arms
19.	比分	比分	bǐfēn	<i>n.</i>	score
20.	啦啦队	啦啦隊	lālāduì	<i>n.</i>	cheerleading squad



Grammar

语法

3. Sentence 1, 后来 (hòulái; later, afterward), sentence 2

后来 (hòulái) is used to connect two sentences that sequence two past events or happenings.

比赛开始的时候，他们打得不好，后来，他们很努力，终于赢了。

Bǐsài kāishǐ de shíhou, tāmen dǎ de bù hǎo, hòulái, tāmen hěn nǔlì, zhōngyú yíngle.

At the beginning of the game, they did not do well. Later, they made a lot of effort and finally won.

他以前参加篮球校队，后来，功课很多，就不参加了。

Tā yǐqián cānjiā lánqiú xiàoduì, hòulái, gōngkè hěn duō, jiù bù cānjiā le.

He took part in the basketball school team before. Later he had a lot of homework, so he stopped.

我上个星期没有时间买电影票，后来，朋友帮我买了。

Wǒ shàng gè xīngqī méiyǒu shíjiān mǎi diànyǐngpiào, hòulái, péngyou bāng wǒ mǎi le.

I did not have time to buy movie tickets last week. Later, my friend bought them for me.

上个学期我觉得写汉字很难，后来，我常常练习，越写越好。

Shàng gè xuéqī wǒ juéde xiě Hànzì hěn nán, hòulái, wǒ chángcháng liànxí, yuè xiě yuè hǎo.

Last semester, I found writing Chinese characters very difficult. Later, I practiced a lot and my Chinese writing is getting better and better.

Comparison: 后来 (hòulái) and 以后 (yǐhòu)

后来 (hòulái) and **以后** (yǐhòu) have distinct uses. **后来** (hòulái) always stands alone, but **以后** (yǐhòu) can be used alone or occur with a time expression or a completed action. **后来** (hòulái) is used to express past events only, whereas **以后** (yǐhòu) can express the past, or future.

✓ 我在中国工作三个月**以后**就回美国了。
Wǒ zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò sān gè yuè **yǐhòu** jiù huí Měiguó le.

✗ 我在中国工作三个月**后来**就回美国了。
Wǒ zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò sān gè yuè **hòulái** jiù huí Měiguó le.
I worked in China for three months, and later I returned to America.

✓ 爸爸明天下班**以后**会来学校接我。
Bàba míngtiān xià bān **yǐhòu** huì lái xuéxiào jiē wǒ.

✗ 爸爸明天下班**后来**会来学校接我。
Bàba míngtiān xiàbān **hòulái** huì lái xuéxiào jiē wǒ.
After work tomorrow, Dad will pick me up from school.

Comparison: 然后 (ránhòu) and 以后 (yǐhòu)

然后 (ránhòu) and **以后** (yǐhòu) are easily distinguishable. **然后**, meaning “and then,” is a conjunction word that often occurs at the beginning of a second sentence that follows the first sentence with **先**, as in the structure “Subject **先** + action 1, **然后 (再)** + action 2.”

✓ 昨晚妈妈先打了电话，**然后**开了电脑。
Zuówǎn māma xiān dǎle diànhuà, **ránhòu** kāile diànnǎo.

✗ 昨晚妈妈先打了电话，**以后**开了电脑。
Zuówǎn māma xiān dǎle diànhuà, **yǐhòu** kāile diànnǎo.
Last night, Mom made a call first and then turned on the computer.

✓ 吃火锅的时候，我们先选汤底，**然后再**点肉跟别的东西。
Chī huǒguō de shíhou, wǒmen xiān xuǎn tāngdǐ, **ránhòu** zài diǎn ròu gēn biéde dōngxi.

✗ 吃火锅的时候，我们先选汤底，**以后**点肉跟别的东西。
Chī huǒguō de shíhou, wǒmen xiān xuǎn tāngdǐ, **yǐhòu** diǎn ròu gēn biéde dōngxi.
When eating a hot pot, we choose soup base first and then order meat and other stuff.

4. 又 (yòu) + verb 1 + 又 (yòu) + verb 2

The expression “又 (yòu) + verb 1 + 又 (yòu) + verb 2” signals two separate qualities or actions that coexist.

Structure: 又 + verb 1 + 又 + verb 2

看球赛的人太紧张了，**又跳又叫**。

Kàn qiú sài de rén tài jǐnzhāng le, **yòu tiào yòu jiào**.

The people who were watching the game were so nervous. They jumped and screamed.

同学们在 KTV 又说又唱，高兴极了。

Tóngxuémen zài KTV yòu shuō yòu chàng, gāoxìng jí le.

The classmates chatted and sang at a KTV. They were so happy.

他们在餐厅又吃又喝，花了很多钱。

Tāmen zài cāntīng yòu chī yòu hē, huāle hěn duō qián.

They ate and drank at the restaurant. They spent a lot of money.

昨天又刮风又下雨，天气很不好。

Zuótiān yòu guā fēng yòu xià yǔ, tiānqì hěn bù hǎo.

It was windy and rainy yesterday. The weather was not very good.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Discuss a sports game and players.

By now you have learned to use the following questions and answer them right.

(1) Interest in watching a sports game (when, where, what)

你今天晚上想不想/要不要/会不会/
可不可以看球赛?

今天晚上有球赛吗? 是什么球赛?
几点/什么时候有球赛? 去/在哪儿看
球赛? 什么队跟什么队比赛?

(2) About sports players

你要为哪一队加油? 一共有多少个
球员? 主力是谁? 后卫是谁? 谁是
明星球员? 他们很厉害吗?

(3) About sports teams and results

你觉得哪一队比较厉害? 哪一队打
得比较好? 哪一队比较强? 哪一队
会赢/输?

上半场/下半场打得怎么样? 得多少
分? 打得很激烈吗? 哪一队越打越
好? 哪一队后来居上? 比分是几比
几? 两队平分吗? 最后/结果, 哪一
队赢/输了? 谁拿了冠军/亚军?



II

Exchange
thoughts and
values about
team spirit
versus heroism.

(1) Result versus process

比赛的输赢/结果重要吗？比赛的过程
(guòchéng; process) 重要吗？

你觉得比赛的结果重要还是过程重要？

(2) Star player/heroism versus team spirit

什么是明星球员？什么是团队精神？你觉得
明星球员重要还是团队精神重要？为什么？

李明说：“中国队虽然输了，可我觉得每个
球员都是英雄。”你同意这样的看法吗？为
什么？

“赢的人是英雄，输的人不是英雄”，你同意
这样的看法吗？为什么？

“赢的球队是英雄，输的球队不是英雄”，你
同意这样的看法吗？为什么？

(3) Attitude toward nationalism

如果你是美国人，你也会为中国队加油吗？
为什么？

如果你是华裔美国人，你会为哪一队加油？
为什么？

比赛的时候，可不可以小看对手 (duìshǒu;
opponent)？小看对手可能会有什么结果？



Describe a sports game with Wh-word information.

By now you have learned to use the following template to describe a sports game with detailed information.

1) First paragraph: Basic information about the game

Time and date (when), place (where), people (who), game and teams (what)

今天天气非常好，上午十点，……
(time and date)

我跟茉莉在学校看了一场橄榄球赛，……
(people, place and sports game)

是我们学校跟友谊高中的比赛。
(teams)

2) Second paragraph: Progression and development of the game

Use the following expressions to connect a sequence of actions in chronological order and include information about when, how, who, and what about the sports game:

Beginning

比赛开始以前，……

上半场开始的时候，……

Middle

上半场结束的时候，……



下半场一开始, subject + 就……

后来, ……

到了最后五分钟的时候, ……

End

结果, ……输了/赢了, 比分是……比……

Nouns for roles and teams:

教练 球员 球赛 球队 主力 后卫
明星 球员 英雄

Vocabulary/expressions for detailed description:

努力 打赢 受伤 抓住机会 打得很激烈
得分 比分 两队平分 越打越好 后来居上
看比赛喊“加油”(一边……, 一边……)
啦啦队为……加油/打气
输了/赢了 拿/得了 冠军/亚军

Adjectives for expressing feelings:

紧张 高兴 快乐 开心

Other expressions:

adjective + 得不得了 又叫又跳

3) Third paragraph: Conclusion

精彩 希望



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Discuss a sports game and players (refer to Item I in What I Have Learned).

Work with your partner to take turns asking and responding to the following questions on page 343.

Self-checklist:

	yes	no
1. I can ask about interest in watching a sports game.	☐	☐
2. I can talk about sports players.	☐	☐
3. I can discuss sports teams and results.	☐	☐

Exit Ticket 2

**Exchange thoughts and values about team spirit versus heroism
(refer to Item II in What I Have Learned)**

Can you ask and respond to the questions on page 344.

Self-checklist:

	yes	no
1. I can ask and respond appropriately about the results and process of the game.	☐	☐
2. I can ask and respond appropriately about star player/heroism versus team spirit.	☐	☐
3. I can discuss attitudes toward nationalism.	☐	☐



Exit Ticket 3



**Describe a sports game with Wh-word information
(refer to Item III in What I Have Learned)**

Can you come up with three paragraphs by using the template on page 345–346.

Self-checklist: Use the following checklist to track your progress:

	yes	no
1. My narrative includes three paragraphs.	☐	☐
2. My first paragraph includes basic information about time (when), place (where), people (who), and the game and teams (what).	☐	☐
3. My second paragraph includes detailed descriptions of the beginning, middle, and end of the game, i.e., information about when, how, who, and what.	☐	☐
4. My third paragraph includes a conclusion about comments and any best wishes.	☐	☐

Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	热身	熱身	rè shēn	vo.	to warm up (sports)
2.	犯规	犯規	fàn guī	vo.	to break the rules; to foul; a foul
3.	裁判	裁判	cáipàn	n.	referee; umpire; judge (sports)
4.	暂停	暫停	zàntíng	v.	time-out (sports)
5.	排球	排球	páiqiú	n.	volleyball
6.	乒乓球	乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis; ping-pong
7.	网球	網球	wǎngqiú	n.	tennis
8.	棒球	棒球	bàngqiú	n.	baseball
9.	羽毛球	羽毛球	yǔmáoqiú	n.	badminton
10.	冰球	冰球	bīngqiú	n.	ice hockey
11.	足球	足球	zúqiú	n.	soccer
12.	踢	踢	tī	v.	to kick; to play (soccer)



Have you ever participated in 运动会 before? Can you guess what 运动会 means? (Hint: It is a perfect event to cultivate team spirit!)



独竹漂
dúzhúpiāo
Bamboo Drifting



划龙舟
huá lóngzhōu
Row the Dragon Boat

Do you like water sports? Which one do you want to play, 独竹漂 or 划龙舟?



板鞋竞速
bǎnxié jìngsù
Board-shoe Racing



踩高跷
cǎi gāoqiāo
Walking on Stilts

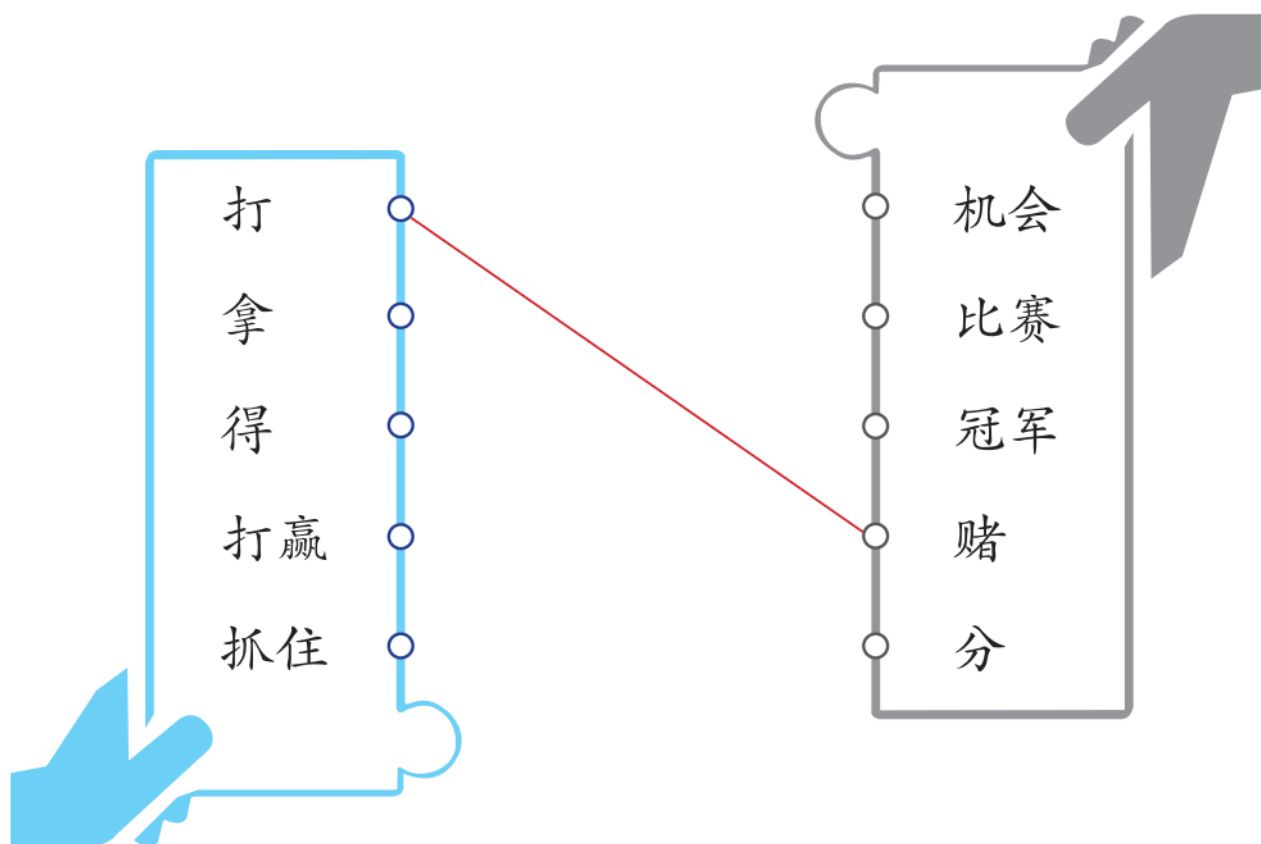
Can you guess what they are doing? Have you played any similar sports before?



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.



B Vocabulary Expansion

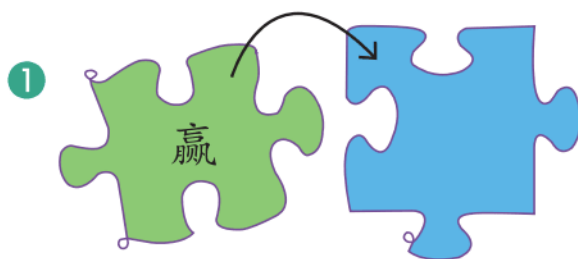
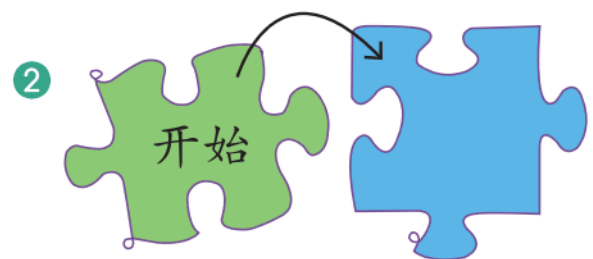
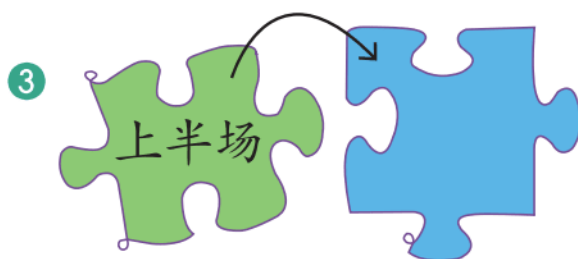
What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

<div>结 →</div>	
<div>比 →</div>	

分 →	
后 →	
队 →	

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



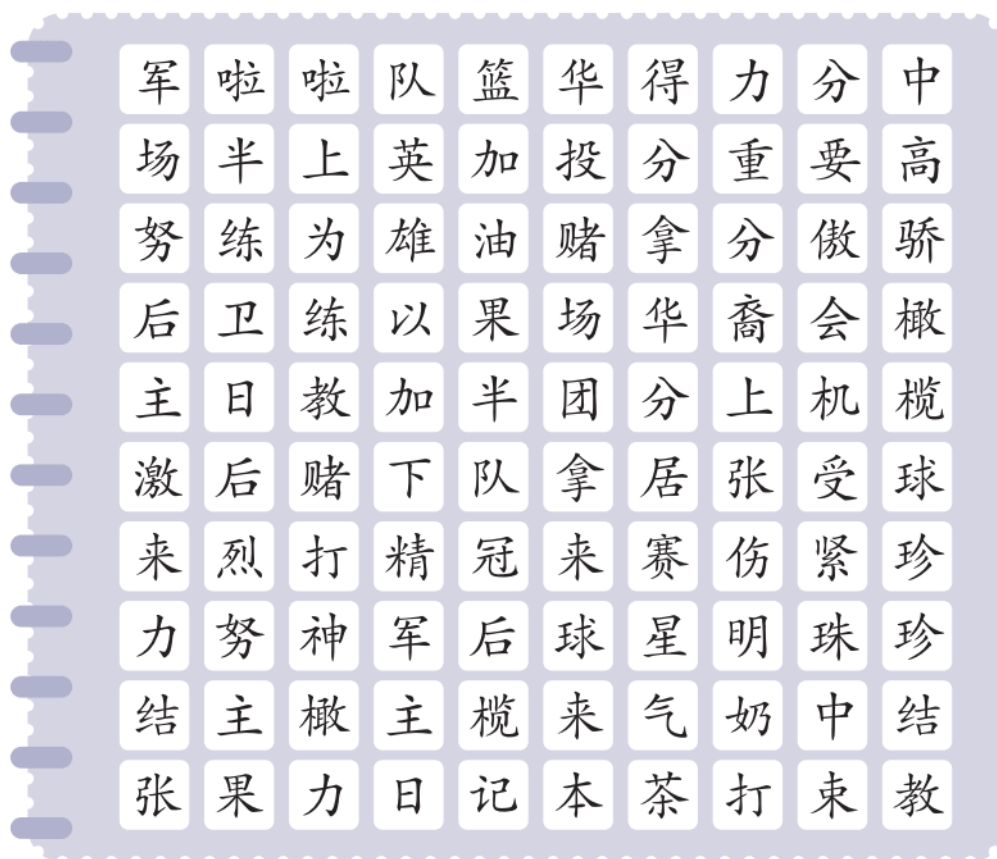
D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. a. 教练 | b. 日记 | c. 球员 | d. 啦啦队 |
| 2. a. 赢 | b. 比赛 | c. 华裔 | d. 输 |
| 3. a. 机会 | b. 激烈 | c. 紧张 | d. 精彩 |
| 4. a. 比分 | b. 投篮 | c. 骄傲 | d. 得分 |
| 5. a. 后来 | b. 结果 | c. 重要 | d. 一开始 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



球赛
加油
主力
明星
后卫
华裔

骄傲
打赌
上半场
投篮
得分
本来

以为
下半场
后来居上
结果
拿冠军
激烈

重要
团队精神
英雄
珍珠奶茶
日记
橄榄球

高中
教练
努力
打气
结束

受伤
机会
后来
紧张
啦啦队

(Go to page 506 to find the answer keys.)



中国女排 vs. 巴西女排

中国女排是很多中国人的偶像，她们不但很强，而且很有团队精神。

2016 年，中国女排去巴西参加奥运会。2016 年 8 月 16 日，是中国队跟巴西队的比赛。在这场比赛以前，中国队已经输了三场。如果她们再输了这场的话，那中国队就要回家了。而且，巴西队是非常厉害的球队，所以大家都觉得中国队赢的机会很小。

比赛开始以前，教练为球员加油，教球员怎么打赢比赛。比赛一开始，巴西队很快就先得了几分，大家又喊又跳，都为巴西队加油。第一局比赛结束的时候，比分是 15 比 25，巴西队赢了，中国队输了。

虽然第一局输了，可是中国队没有放弃。中国的啦啦队也为

中国队加油打气。中国队的得分手朱婷特别厉害，打得又快又准，得了很多分。所以中国队后来居上，赢了第二局和第三局。

第三局结束以后，巴西队的球员觉得不能小看中国队。第四局比赛开始以后，巴西队的球员打得特别努力，好不容易赢了第四局。比赛到了最紧张的时候，两队平分。

最后第五局比赛，谁先拿到 15 分，谁就赢了。所以看比赛的每一个人都很紧张。第五局比赛开始以后，中国队越打越好，巴西队也没有放弃，抓住每一个得分的机会。后来，中国队拿了 14 分，巴西队拿了 13 分，只要再拿一分，中国队就赢了！巴西人都非常紧张，有一个小男孩还哭了。中国教练告诉球员：“你们是最棒的，加油！”

结果，中国队赢了，比分是 15 比 13！球员们抱在一起，又笑又哭。

注释 Notes

- ① 巴西 Bāxī: Brazil
- ② 奥运会 Àoyùnhuì: the Olympic Games
- ③ 第一局 dì-yī jú: first set
- ④ 放弃 fàngqì: give up





Chasing Your Dreams as an Athlete

追梦运动员

Have you heard of Guo Jingjing 郭晶晶 (Guō Jīngjīng) and Li Na 李娜 (Lǐ Nà)? Guo Jingjing is referred to as the diving queen of China and Li Na is a tennis legend.

Guo Jingjing had an impressive career in diving. She won four Olympic gold medals 奥运金牌 (Àoyùn jīnpái; the Olympic gold medal). Despite facing challenges, like injuries during her training, she never gave up and kept pushing herself. She won the three-meter springboard individual and double champion at both the Athens Olympics Games in 2004 and the Beijing Olympic Games in 2008. Now that she is retired, she is giving back to her community through her work with sports committees, public service, and organizations like UNICEF and WWF. She wants to inspire the next generation to pursue their dreams and make a positive impact in their communities.





Li Na was a tennis player and maybe one of the most influential sports stars in China. She is the first and only Asian tennis player in history to win two Grand Slam 大满贯 (dà mǎn guàn) events in 2011 and 2014. She also collected seven WTA singles titles and reached a career-high ranking of World No.2 during her career. After retiring from tennis, she has devoted herself to training young amateurs to continue making contributions to the game. In 2013, *Li Na* wrote an autobiography based on her own experiences. The book is called *Li Na:*

My Life. It tells an inspirational story about a young girl who has achieved tennis success beyond her wildest dreams. As she said, “You try your best to live your dream, if not, you are still better than your old self.”

Both Guo Jingjing and Li Na have had a big impact in their fields and have demonstrated the power of hard work and determination. They are examples of athletes who not only competed at the highest level, but also made efforts to promote cultural exchange and understanding between different countries.

◎ **Have you ever been inspired by someone to pursue your own dreams?**

Let's discuss in class!

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

Li Ming and David are chatting at the gym.

李明：大衛，今天晚上你想不想來我家看球賽？

大衛：今天晚上有球賽嗎？是什麼球賽？

李明：是美國隊跟中國隊的籃球賽！

大衛：好啊！我最愛看籃球賽了！你要為哪一隊加油？

李明：不管哪一隊贏，我都會為他們加油，因為我是華裔美國人。你覺得哪一隊會贏？

大衛：當然是美國隊！美國隊比中國隊厲害多了。

李明：誰說的！中國隊也很強，不能小看中國隊。美國隊的主力是誰？

大衛：主力是一個明星球員，叫安東尼，後衛是一個華裔美國人，叫林書豪，你知道他嗎？

李明：他是我們華裔的驕傲，也叫“林來瘋”，他很厲害。

大衛：那我們來打賭，看哪一隊會贏。

李明：好，輸的人請客！

(one day later)

英子：聽說你們昨天看球賽了，哪一隊打得比較好？

大衛：上半場中國隊打得很好，他們的主力投籃投得又快又準，馬上就得了二十分。

英子：最後誰贏了？

李明：本來我們以為中國隊會贏，可是，下半場美國隊越打越好，後來居上，結果拿了冠軍。

大衛：雖然中國隊輸了，可是他們打得也很不錯。

英子：哇，這場比賽好激烈啊！

李明：是啊，不過，比賽的結果不重要，最重要的是團隊精神。中國隊雖然輸了，可是我覺得每個球員都是英雄。

大衛：誰說結果不重要？你記得昨天你跟我打賭了嗎？哈哈，你輸了！

李明：對對對，我記得！今天下課以後，我請你喝珍珠奶茶。

英子：別忘了帶你們自己的環保杯。



Dialogue 1 in English

Li Ming and David are chatting at the gym.

Li Ming: David, would you like to come to my house to watch the ball game tonight?

David: Is there a ball game tonight? What game is it?

Li Ming: It's a basketball game between the US team and the Chinese team!

David: Okay! I love watching basketball games the most! Which team will you root for?

Li Ming: No matter which team wins, I will cheer for them, because I am American and Chinese. Which team do you think will win?

David: Team USA of course! The US team is much better than the Chinese team.

Li Ming: Who said that! The Chinese team is also very strong. We cannot underestimate the Chinese team. Who is the main player of the US team?

David: The main player is a star player named Anthony, and the defender is a Chinese-American named Jeremy Lin. Do you know him?

Li Ming: He is the pride of us Chinese, also known as "Linsanity." He is so amazing.

David: Then let's make a bet to see which team will win.

Li Ming: Alright, the loser treats snacks!

(one day later)

Yingzi: I heard that you watched the ball game yesterday. Which team played better?

David: The Chinese team played very well in the first half. Their main shooter was fast and accurate, and they scored twenty points immediately.

Yingzi: Who won in the end?

Li Ming: Originally we thought that the Chinese team would win, but in the second half, the US team played better and better. They were originally behind but ultimately won the championship.

David: Although the Chinese team lost, they played very well.

Yingzi: Wow, the game was so intense!

Li Ming: Yes, but the result of the game is not important. The most important thing is team spirit. Although the Chinese team lost, I think every player is a hero.

David: Who said results don't matter? Do you remember the bet you made with me yesterday? Ha ha, you lost!

Li Ming: Yes, yes, yes, I remember! After class today, I'll treat you to bubble tea.

Yingzi: Don't forget to bring your own eco-friendly cups.



Yingzi's Diary

in traditional characters

英子的日記

2023 年 9 月 23 日 星期六 天氣：晴

今天天氣非常好，上午十點，我跟茉莉在學校看了一場橄欖球賽，是我們學校跟友誼高中的比賽。

比賽開始以前，教練告訴球員要怎麼打贏這場球賽。上半場開始的時候，友誼高中的 10 號球員跑得特別快，雖然我們非常努力，可是他們還是先得了三分。我們一邊看比賽，一邊喊“加油”，為我們的球員打氣。上半場結束的時候，我們輸了三分。下半場一開始，友誼高中的主力球員就受傷了。我們抓住這個機會，好不容易得了七分。後來，兩隊平分，我跟茉莉都緊張死了！到了最後五分鐘的時候，我們的 6 號球員抱著球跑得非常快，幫我們得了七分。結果，我們贏了，比分是二十一比十四。我跟茉莉又跳又叫，開心得不得了！

這場球賽太精彩了！下個學期，我希望能參加學校的啦啦隊，為我們的校隊加油！



Yingzi's Diary

in English

Yingzi's Diary

Saturday, September 23, 2023

Weather: Sunny

The weather was very nice today. At ten o'clock in the morning, Moli and I watched a football game at school. It was a game between our school and Friendship High School.

Before the game started, the coach told the players how to win the game. At the beginning of the first half, the No. 10 player from Friendship High School ran very fast. Although we tried very hard, they still scored three points first. While watching the game, we shouted “go” to cheer for our players. At the end of the first half, we were down by three points. Right after the second half began, the main player of Friendship High School was injured. We seized this opportunity and finally managed to score seven points. Later, the two teams were tied, and Moli and I were so nervous! In the last five minutes, our No. 6 player ran very fast with the ball and helped us score seven points. As a result, we won with a score of twenty-one to fourteen. Moli and I jumped and shouted. We were so happy!

This game was so exciting! Next semester, I hope to join the school’s cheerleading team and cheer for our school team!

第九课 | Lesson 9

Theme

全球挑战
Global Challenges

Topic

省水省电
Energy and Water Saving

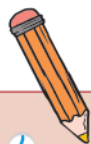


What do you do to protect the environment in your daily life?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 9, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » understand why someone feels upset.
- » comprehend and interpret information about ways to save power.
- » comprehend and interpret information about ways to save water.

Interpersonal

- » talk about why someone feels upset.
- » discuss ways to save power.
- » discuss ways to save water at home.

Presentational

- » present resolutions to save power.
- » present resolutions to save water at home.
- » present resolutions to reduce carbon emissions.



Dialogue 1

对话一



David, Li Ming, Yingzi, and Moli are chatting
before the teacher enters the classroom.



大卫



李明



英子



茉莉



你今天怎么了？看起来很不高兴。

昨天晚上我爸妈吵架了。



怎么回事儿？

我爸爸早上出门的时候，常常不关空调，也不关灯。结果，我们家这个月的电费比上个月多了一百多美元^①，妈妈很生气。



我弟弟也是，家里开空调的时候，常常不关窗户。

这样真的太浪费电了！现在好多地方都缺电。



英子，你是我们学校的环保大使，你有没有什么省电的好方法？

空调不要开太强，夏天我们家的空调都开七十八华氏度，可以省很多电。



对啊！新闻说，空调开七十八华氏度最合适，不但能节约用电，而且可以减少碳排放。

中国有些学校的教室里没有中央空调^②，他们都开窗或者开电风扇。



我们出门的时候一定要记得关灯，除了在家里要节约用电以外，在外面也应该注意。





说得很对，我回美国以后，看到很多办公大楼晚上都不关灯，太浪费了。



对，我们应该要随手关灯。另外，我认为学校应该用节能灯。



节能灯很不错，我们家都用节能家电，又省电又省钱。



我认为最好的方法是用智能灯，教室里没人的时候，会自动关。



好主意！

Pinyin Dialogue 1

David, Li Ming, Yingzi, and Moli are chatting
before the teacher enters the classroom.



Dàwèi



Lǐ Míng



Yīngzǐ



Mòlì



Nǐ jīntiān zěnmē le? Kàn qǐlái hěn bù gāoxìng.

Zuótiān wǎnshang wǒ bà mā chǎo jià le.



Zěnmē huí shìr?

Wǒ bàba zǎoshang chū mén de shíhou,
chángcháng bù guān kōngtiáo, yě bù
guān dēng. Jiéguǒ, wǒmen jiā zhè gè yuè
de diànfèi **bǐ** shàng ge yuè **duōle yìbǎi**
duō měiyuán^①, māma hěn shēngqì.



Wǒ dìdi yě shì, jiā lǐ kāi kōngtiáo de shíhou,
chángcháng bù guān chuānghu.

Zhèyàng zhēn de tài làngfèi diàn le! Xiànzài
hǎo duō dìfang dōu quē diàn.



Yīngzǐ, nǐ shì wǒmen xuéxiào de huánbǎo
dàshǐ, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shénme shěng diàn
de hǎo fāngfǎ?



Kōngtiáo bú yào kāi tài qiáng, xiàtiān wǒmen jiā de kōngtiáo dōu kāi qīshíbā huáshìdù, kěyǐ shěng hěn duō diàn.



Duì a! Xīnwén shuō, kōngtiáo kāi qīshíbā huáshìdù zuì héshì, búdàn néng jiéyuē yòng diàn, érqiě kěyǐ jiǎnshǎo tàn páifàng.



Zhōngguó yǒuxiē xuéxiào de jiàoshì lǐ méiyǒu zhōngyāng kōngtiáo^②, tāmen dōu kāi chuāng huòzhě kāi diànfēngshàn.



Wǒmen chū mén de shíhou yídìng yào jìde guān dēng, chúle zài jiā lǐ yào jiéyuē yòng diàn yǐwài, zài wàimiàn yě yīnggāi zhùyì.



Shuō de hěn duì, wǒ huí Měiguó yǐhòu, kàndào hěn duō bàngōng dàlóu wǎnshang dōu bù guān dēng, tài làngfèi le.



Duì, wǒmen yīnggāi yào suíshǒu guān dēng. Lìngwài, wǒ rènwéi xuéxiào yīnggāi yòng jiénéngdēng.



Jiénéngdēng hěn bú cuò, wǒmen jiā dōu yòng jiénéng jiādiàn, yòu shěng diàn yòu shěng qián.



Wǒ rènwéi zuì hǎo de fāngfǎ shì yòng zhìnéngdēng, jiàoshì lǐ méi rén de shíhou, huì zìdòng guān.



Hǎo zhǔyì!

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	怎么了	怎麼了	zěnmē le	<i>phr.</i>	what's up; what's going on; what happened?
2.	吵架	吵架	chǎo jià	<i>vo.</i>	to quarrel; to have a row; quarrel
3.	怎么回事 (儿)	怎麼回事 (兒)	zěnmē huíshìr	<i>phr.</i>	what's the matter; what's going on; how could that be; how did that come about; what's it all about?
4.	关	關	guān	<i>v.</i>	to close; to shut; to turn off
5.	空调	空調	kōngtiáo	<i>n.</i>	air conditioning; air conditioner
6.	灯	燈	dēng	<i>n.</i>	lamp; light
7.	电费	電費	diànfèi	<i>n.</i>	electricity bill
8.	生气	生氣	shēngqì	<i>vo./adj.</i>	to get angry; angry
9.	开	開	kāi	<i>v.</i>	to open; to start; to turn on
10.	窗户	窗戶	chuānghu	<i>n.</i>	window
11.	这样	這樣	zhèyàng	<i>pron.</i>	so; this way; like this
12.	浪费	浪費	làngfèi	<i>v.</i>	to waste; to squander
13.	缺	缺	quē	<i>v.</i>	lack; to run short of
14.	省	省	shěng	<i>v.</i>	to save; to economize
15.	新闻	新聞	xīnwén	<i>n.</i>	news
16.	节约用电	節約用電	jiéyuē yòng diàn	<i>phr.</i>	to save electricity
	节约	節約	jiéyuē	<i>v.</i>	to conserve (resources); to economize

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
17.	碳排放	碳排放	tànpáifàng	<i>n.</i>	carbon emission
	碳	碳	tàn	<i>n.</i>	carbon
	排放	排放	páifàng	<i>v.</i>	to discharge; to exhaust
18.	中央空调	中央空調	zhōngyāng kōngtiáo	<i>n.</i>	central air-conditioning
19.	电风扇	電風扇	diànfēngshàn	<i>n.</i>	electric fan
20.	注意	注意	zhùyì	<i>v./n.</i>	to pay attention to; to notice; attention
21.	办公大楼	辦公大樓	bàngōng dàlóu	<i>n.</i>	office building
	大楼	大樓	dàlóu	<i>n.</i>	building (a relatively large, multi-story one)
22.	随手	隨手	suíshǒu	<i>adv.</i>	without extra effort, at someone's convenience
23.	另外	另外	lìngwài	<i>conj.</i>	furthermore; in addition
24.	认为	認為	rènwéi	<i>v.</i>	to think; to consider
25.	节能	節能	jiénéng	<i>v./adj.</i>	to save energy; energy-saving
26.	家电	家電	jiādiàn	<i>n.</i>	household electric appliance
27.	智能	智能	zhìnéng	<i>adj.</i>	intelligent; smart (phone, system)
28.	自动	自動	zìdòng	<i>adj./adv.</i>	automatic; automatically



Grammar

语法

1. A 比 (bǐ) B adjective + number + measure word

形容词: 贵 (guì) / 便宜 (piányi) 大 (dà) / 小 (xiǎo)
快 (kuài) / 慢 (màn) 高 (gāo) / 低 (dī)

Structure: A 比 B adjective + number + measure word

这个月我们家的电费比上个月多一百多美元。

Zhè gè yuè wǒmen jiā de diànfèi bǐ shàng gè yuè duō yìbǎi duō měiyuán.

This month's electricity bill is one hundred dollars more than last month's.

这件衣服比那件衣服便宜三十块钱。

Zhè jiàn yīfu bǐ nà jiàn yīfu piányi sānshí kuài qián.

This shirt is thirty RMB cheaper than that shirt.

他比妹妹高三英寸。

Tā bǐ mèimei gāo sān yīngcùn.

He is taller than his younger sister by three inches.

她的鞋子比我的大一号。

Tā de xiézi bǐ wǒ de dà yí hào.

Her shoe size is one size bigger than mine.

她比我快三分钟。

Tā bǐ wǒ kuài sān fēnzhōng.

She is quicker than me by three minutes.

2. Existential sentence: Place + 里 (lǐ) + 有 / 没有 (yǒu/méiyǒu) + something or someone

In Mandarin Chinese, an existential sentence expresses a proposition about the existence or presence of something or someone. The verb 有 (yǒu; there is / are) in existential sentences occurs in the middle of a sentence. It is preceded by a place with a preposition word and followed by something or someone at the end of a sentence.

图书馆里有很多书。

Túshūguǎn lǐ yǒu hěnduō shū.

There are many books at the library.

学校里没有中央空调。

Xuéxiào lǐ méiyǒu zhōngyāng kōngtiáo.

There is no central air-conditioning at the school.

教室里没人的时候，节能灯会自动关。

Jiàoshì lǐ méi rén de shíhòu, jiénéngdēng huì zìdòng guān.

When there is no one in the classroom, the energy-saving lamp will automatically turn off.



Dialogue 2

对话二



Yingzi, Moli, David, and Li Ming are chatting after the Chinese language class.



英子



茉莉



大卫



李明



下个星期是学校的“环保周”，林老师让我们用中文做一个报告。你们想好题目了吗？



今天上科学课的时候，老师教我们怎么省水。这个题目怎么样？





挺好的，我们平常浪费太多水了，省水应该从日常生活做起。

那我们怎么办呢？



有很多方法。比如说，你可以洗澡洗得快一点儿，这样就可以少用一点儿水。

哦，那太容易了，我洗澡洗得很快，五分钟就洗完了。



你知道吗？在中国，很多人常常用泡澡的水冲马桶。

下雨的时候，我外公外婆会用水桶装雨水，然后用雨水浇花。对了，大卫，你们家的草坪那么大，你们多久浇一次水^③？



我们一个星期浇一次水。

我们家也是。另外，洗碗机、洗衣机都得用很多水。所以，我们应该等到有很多碗盘、衣服的时候再洗^④。



还有，洗手以后要记得关好水龙头。



这些方法都很好，“环保周”的时候，我们每个人都拍一个视频，介绍在家里省水的方法，怎么样？



好主意，我今天回家就做，我要当“省水大使”。

Pinyin Dialogue 2

Yingzi, Moli, David, and Li Ming are chatting
after the Chinese language class.



Yīngzǐ



Mòlì



Dàwèi



Lǐ Míng



Xià gè xīngqī shì xuéxiào de “huánbǎozhōu”,
Lín lǎoshī ràng wǒmen yòng Zhōngwén zuò
yí gè bàogào. Nǐmen xiǎnghǎo tí mù le ma?



Jīntiān shàng kē xuékè de shíhou, lǎoshī
jiāo wǒmen zěnmē shěng shuǐ. Zhè gè
tí mù zěnmeyàng?



Tíng hǎo de, wǒmen píngcháng làngfèi
tài duō shuǐ le, shěng shuǐ yīnggāi cóng
rìcháng shēnghuó zuò qǐ.



Nà wǒmen zěnmē zuò ne?



Yǒu hěn duō fāngfǎ. Bǐrú shuō, nǐ kěyǐ xǐ zǎo
xǐ de kuài yìdiǎnr, zhèyàng jiù kěyǐ shǎo yòng
yìdiǎnr shuǐ.



Ò, nà tài róngyì le, wǒ xǐ zǎo xǐ de hěn kuài, wǒ
fēnzhōng jiù xǐwán le.



Nǐ zhīdào ma? Zài Zhōngguó, hěn duō rén
chángcháng yòng pào zǎo de shuǐ chōng
mǎtǒng.



Xià yǔ de shíhou, wǒ wàigōng wàipó huì
yòng shuǐtǒng zhuāng yǔshuǐ, ránhòu yòng
yǔshuǐ jiāo huā. Duì le, Dàwèi, nǐmen jiā de
cǎopíng nàme dà, nǐmen **duō jiǔ jiāo yí cì**
shuǐ^③?



Wǒmen yí gè xīngqī jiāo yí cì shuǐ.



Wǒmen jiā yě shì. Lìngwài, xǐwǎnjī、xǐyījī
dōu děi yòng hěn duō shuǐ. Suǒyǐ, wǒmen
yīnggāi **děngdào** yǒu hěn duō wǎn pán、
yīfu de shíhou **zài** xǐ^④.



Háiyǒu, xǐ shǒu yǐhòu yào jìde guānhǎo shuǐlóngtóu.



Zhèxiē fāngfǎ dōu hěn hǎo, “huánbǎozhōu”
de shíhou, wǒmen měi gè rén dōu pāi yí
gè shìpín, jièshào zài jiā lǐ shěng shuǐ de
fāngfǎ, zěnmeyàng?



Hǎo zhǔyì, wǒ jīntiān huí jiā jiù zuò, wǒ
yào dāng “shěngshuǐ dàshǐ”.

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	报告	報告	bàogào	<i>n./v.</i>	report; presentation; to report; to present
2.	题目	題目	tímù	<i>n.</i>	topic; title
3.	从……做起	從……做起	cóng… zuò qǐ	<i>misc.</i>	start with...; begin with...
4.	日常生活	日常生活	rìcháng shēnghuó	<i>n.</i>	daily life
	日常	日常	rìcháng	<i>adj.</i>	daily; everyday
	生活	生活	shēnghuó	<i>n.</i>	life; livelihood
5.	比如说	比如說	bǐrú shuō	<i>prep.</i>	for example; for instance
6.	洗澡	洗澡	xǐ zǎo	<i>vo.</i>	to take a shower; to bathe
7.	泡澡	泡澡	pào zǎo	<i>vo.</i>	to take a bath
8.	冲	沖	chōng	<i>v.</i>	to flush; to rinse
9.	马桶	馬桶	mǎtǒng	<i>n.</i>	toilet
10.	外公	外公	wàigōng	<i>n.</i>	mother's father; maternal grandfather
11.	外婆	外婆	wàipó	<i>n.</i>	mother's mother; maternal grandmother
12.	水桶	水桶	shuǐtǒng	<i>n.</i>	bucket
13.	装	裝	zhuāng	<i>v.</i>	to fill with; to take; to load; to pack

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
14.	雨水	雨水	yǔshuǐ	<i>n.</i>	rainwater
15.	浇花	澆花	jiāo huā	<i>vo.</i>	to water the flowers
	浇	澆	jiāo	<i>v.</i>	to water the plants; to water
	花	花	huā	<i>n.</i>	flower
16.	草坪	草坪	cǎopíng	<i>n.</i>	lawn
17.	洗碗机	洗碗機	xǐwǎnjī	<i>n.</i>	dishwasher
18.	洗衣机	洗衣機	xǐyījī	<i>n.</i>	washer; washing machine
19.	碗盘	碗盤	wǎn pán	<i>n.</i>	dishes; bowl and plate
20.	洗手	洗手	xǐ shǒu	<i>vo.</i>	to wash one's hands
21.	水龙头	水龍頭	shuǐlóngtóu	<i>n.</i>	faucet
22.	介绍	介紹	jièshào	<i>v./n.</i>	to introduce; introduction
23.	当	當	dāng	<i>v.</i>	to be; to act as



Grammar

语法

3. ……多久 (duō jiǔ) + verb + number + 次 (cì) + object?

In this structure, the verbal phrase, i.e., verb + object, is inserted by a number and a measure word.

Structure: ……多久 + verb + number + 次 + object?



你们多久浇一次水?
Nǐmen duō jiǔ jiāo yí cì shuǐ?
How often do you water it?

我们一个星期浇一次水。
Wǒmen yí gè xīngqī jiāo yí cì shuǐ.
We water it once a week.



.....



你们多久见一次面?
Nǐmen duō jiǔ jiàn yí cì miàn?
How often do you all meet?

我们两个月见一次面。
Wǒmen liǎng gè yuè jiàn yí cì miàn.
We meet once a month.



.....



你们多久看一次中文电影？

Nǐmen **duō jiǔ** kàn **yí cì** Zhōngwén diànyǐng?
How often do you all watch a Chinese movie?

我们一学期看两次中文电影。

Wǒmen **yì xuéqī** kàn **liǎng cì** Zhōngwén diànyǐng.
We watch Chinese movies twice a semester.



4. **等到……的时候 + 再 + verbal phrase** (děng dào ... de shíhou + zài + verbal phrase; wait until the time when)

The structure “**等到** (děng dào) **……的时候再** (de shíhou zài)” usually indicates that when a specific point arrives, an action will be taken. It emphasizes waiting for a particular moment and then taking an action. In this structure, **的时候** (de shíhou) can be exchanged by **以后** (yǐhòu), but the meaning slightly changes: it emphasizes performing another activity after a certain event or action.

Structure 1: 等到……的时候 + 再 + verbal phrase

我们应该**等到**有很多碗盘、衣服**的时候再**洗。

Wǒmen yīnggāi **děngdào** yǒu hěn duō wǎn pán、yīfu **de shíhou zài** xǐ.
We should wait until there are many dishes and clothes before washing.

外面太冷了，我们**等到**天气暖和一点儿**的时候再**出门。

Wàimiàn tài lěng le, wǒmen **děngdào** tiānqì nuǎnhuo yìdiǎnr **de shíhou zài** chū mén.

It is too cold outside. Let's wait until the weather gets warmer to leave.

现在太吵了，大家等到安静一点儿的时候再打电话。

Xiànzài tài chǎo le, dàjiā děngdào ānjìng yìdiǎnr de shíhou zài dǎ diànhuà.

It is too loud now. Let's wait until it's quieter to make the phone call.

Structure 2: 等到……以后 + 再 + verbal phrase

我妹妹很喜欢学习，她常常等到功课做完以后再看电视。

Wǒ mèimei hěn xǐhuan xuéxí, tā chángcháng děngdào gōngkè zuòwán yǐhòu zài kàn diànshì.

My younger sister loves to study. She often waits to watch television until after she finishes her homework.

中文班的学生会等到春节以后再一起包饺子、写书法。

Zhōngwénbān de xuéshēng huì děngdào chūnjié yǐhòu zài yìqǐ bāo jiǎozi, xiě shūfǎ.

Students in the Chinese class wait until after Chinese New Year to make dumplings and write calligraphy together.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Talk about why someone feels upset.

A: 你今天怎么了? 怎么那么不高兴?

B: 我跟弟弟吵架了。

A: 怎么回事儿?

B: 我弟弟昨天出门的时候, 忘了关灯, 也没有关窗户。

II Discuss ways to save power.

Questions to seek opinions about saving power:

你有没有什么省电的好方法?

我们应该怎么省电?

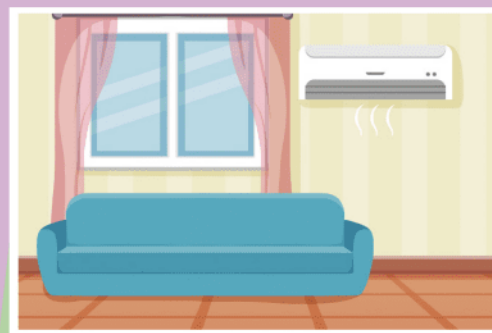
你认为怎么节约用电最好?

什么是节约用电最好的方法?

Review the following eight ways to save power in Dialogue 1 and discuss with your partner to see if he or she agrees.



出门的时候, 记得关空调。



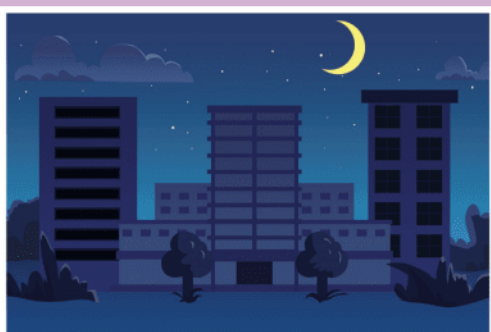
开空调的时候, 记得关窗户。



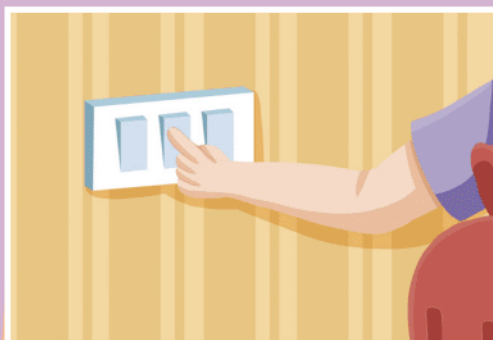
空调不要开太强，夏天的时候开 78 华氏度最合适。



教室少开空调，多开窗或者开电风扇比较好。



晚上办公大楼要关灯。



随手关灯



用节能灯



用智能灯



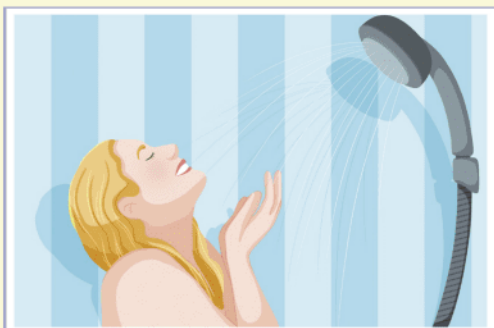
III Discuss ways to save water at home.

Questions to seek opinions about saving water:

你有没有什么省水的好方法？
我们应该怎么省水？怎么节约用水？

你认为怎么节约用水最好？
什么是节约用水最好的方法？

Review the following eight ways to save water in Dialogue 2 and discuss with your partner to see if he or she agrees.



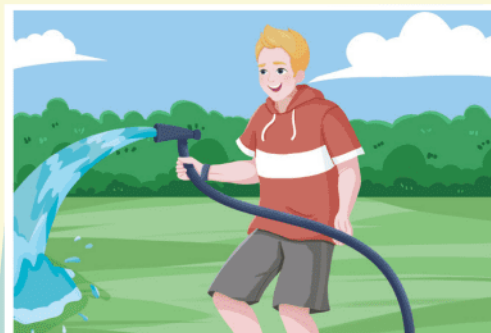
洗澡洗得快一点儿，
少用一点儿水。



用泡澡的水冲马桶。



用水桶装雨水，然后用
雨水浇花。



家里的草坪很大，一个
星期浇一次水就好了。



等到有很多碗盘的时候再用洗碗机。



等到有很多衣服的时候再用洗衣机。



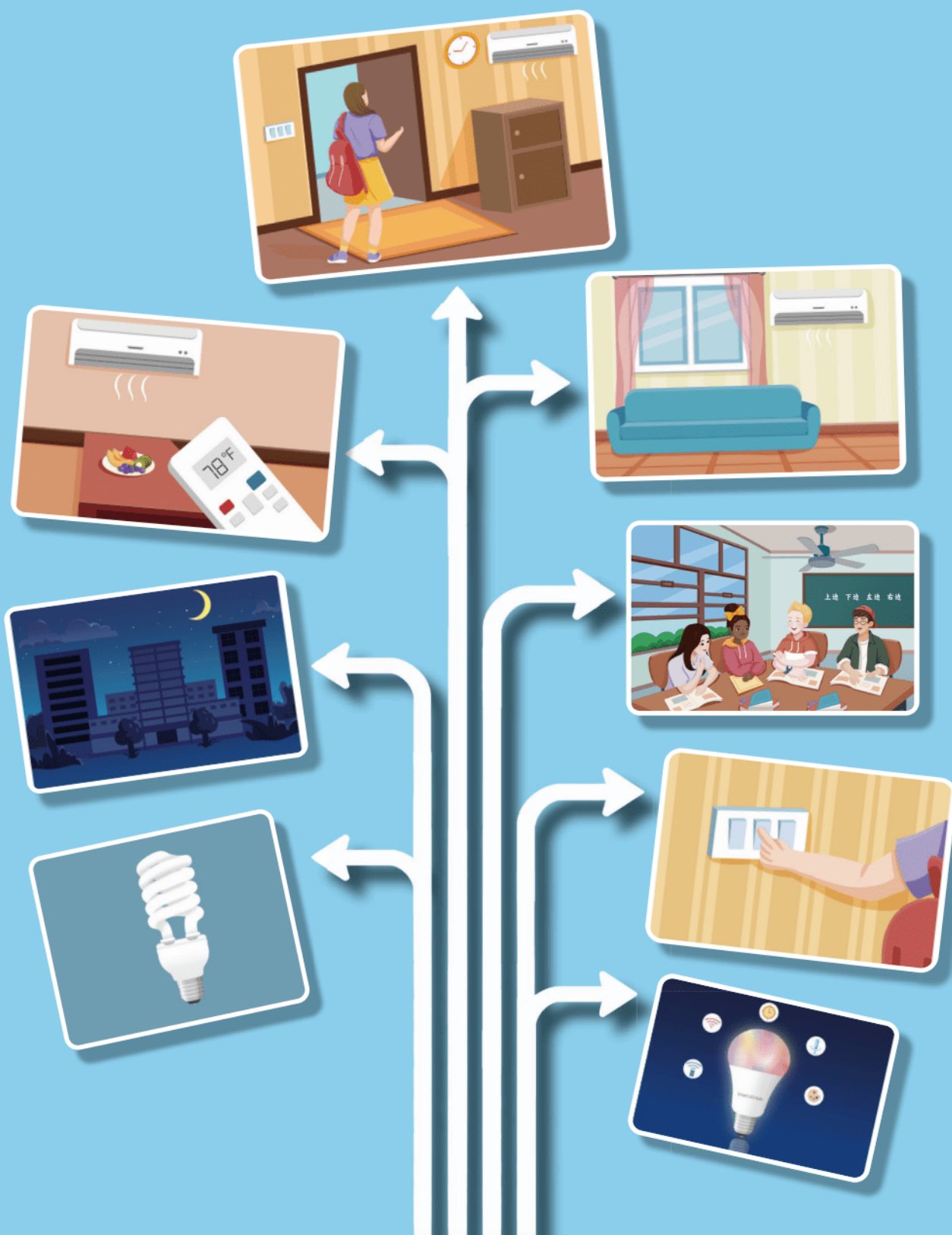
洗手以后要记得关好水龙头。



省水应该从日常生活做起!

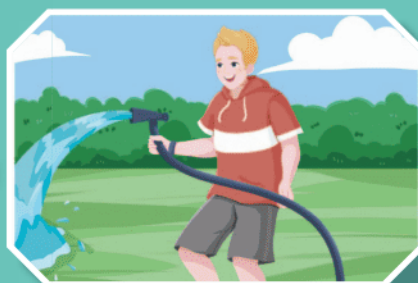
IV Present resolutions to save power.

你认为我们应该怎么省电（节约用电）？看图说一说省电的方法。



V Present
resolutions to save
water at home.

你认为我们在家里应该怎么省水（节约用水）？看图说一说省水的方法。





Exit Tickets 通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Talk about why someone feels upset.

A: 你今天怎么了? 怎么那么不高兴?

B:

A: 怎么回事儿?

B:

Exit Ticket 2

Discuss ways to save power (refer to Steps 4-5 in Task 4 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist

	yes	no
1. I can ask my partner to know if he or she agrees with each of the eight ways to save power.	☐	☐
2. I can express my agreement or disagreement with the eight ways to save power.	☐	☐
3. I can exchange ideas with my partner to brainstorm additional ways to save power.	☐	☐



Exit Ticket 3



Discuss ways to save water at home. (refer to Steps 1-3 in Task 7 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist

	yes	no
1. I can ask my partner if he or she agrees with each of the eight ways to save water.	☐	☐
2. I can express my agreement or disagreement with the eight ways to save water.	☐	☐
3. I can exchange ideas with my partner to brainstorm additional ways to save water.	☐	☐

Exit Ticket 4

Present resolutions to save power (refer to Task 5 in the Task Workbook).

你认为我们应该怎么省电（节约用电）？请你介绍一下省电的方法。

My presentation includes the following:

	yes	no
1. An attractive slogan as a title	☐	☐
2. Habits that waste energy	☐	☐
3. Ways to save energy	☐	☐

Opening

老师好，同学们好，我们要报告的题目是……

Middle

Suggested structures:

我们平常太浪费……了。

有的时候……，比如说……。

有的时候……，比如说……。

另外，……。

我们应该……，可以 / 不可以……。

别……，不要忘记……，要记得……。

还有……，另外……。

不但……，而且……。

除了……以外，……。

比如说，……，少 + verbal phrase，多 + verbal phrase。

Closure

同学们，让我们一起保护地球，节约用电。如果你有更好的方法，请你告诉我们。谢谢！



Exit Ticket 5



Present resolutions to save water at home (refer to Task 9 in the Task Workbook).

你认为我们在家里应该怎么省水(节约用水)? 你是“省水大使”, 现在准备拍一个视频, 介绍省水的方法。

My presentation includes the following:

Opening
大家好! 我是……。今天我要跟你们说一说我们在家省水的好方法。
Middle
<p>Suggested structures:</p> <p>我们平常太浪费……了。</p> <p>有的时候……, 比如说……。</p> <p>有的时候……, 比如说……。</p> <p>另外, ……。</p> <p>我们应该……, 可以 / 不可以……。</p> <p>别……, 不要忘记……, 要记得……。</p> <p>还有……, 另外……。</p> <p>不但……, 而且……。</p> <p>除了……以外, ……。</p> <p>比如说, ……, 少 + verbal phrase, 多 + verbal phrase。</p>
Closure
让我们一起节约用水、保护地球。如果你有更好的方法, 请你告诉我。谢谢!

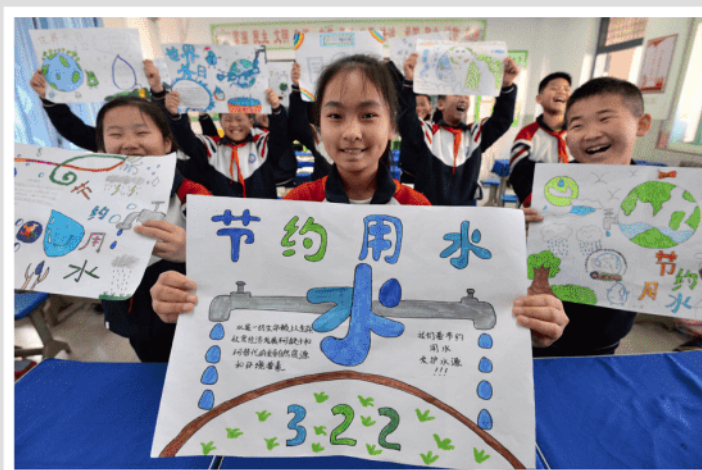
Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词



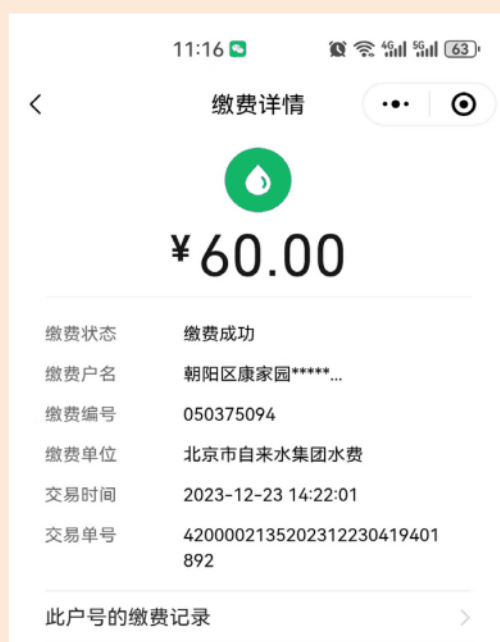
No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	温度	溫度	wēndù	<i>n.</i>	temperature
2.	脏	髒	zāng	<i>adj.</i>	dirty
3.	节能减排	節能減排	jiénéng jiǎnpái	<i>phr.</i>	to save energy and reduce emissions
4.	温室气体	溫室氣體	wēnshì qìtǐ	<i>n.</i>	greenhouse gas
5.	能源	能源	néngyuán	<i>n.</i>	energy
6.	绿色能源	綠色能源	lùsè-néngyuán	<i>n.</i>	green energy
7.	可再生能源	可再生能源	kězàishēng-néngyuán	<i>n.</i>	renewable energy
8.	太阳能	太陽能	tàiyángnéng	<i>n.</i>	solar energy
9.	风能	風能	fēngnéng	<i>n.</i>	wind power
10.	水力	水力	shuǐlì	<i>n.</i>	hydropower; water power
11.	地热	地熱	dìrè	<i>n.</i>	geothermal energy



What are the environmentally conscious actions in the pictures above? What others can you think of?



What is the poster about? Have you done any projects related to the same theme?



What receipt is this? How much does it cost in US dollars?



Have you tried airing out quilts in the sun before? It's both fun and environmentally friendly!



Have you used a 蒲扇 (púshàn) before? What material is it made of?



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.

付	关灯
关	用水
开	题目
冲	花
浇	电
浪费	空调
节约	马桶
随手	窗户
报告	电费

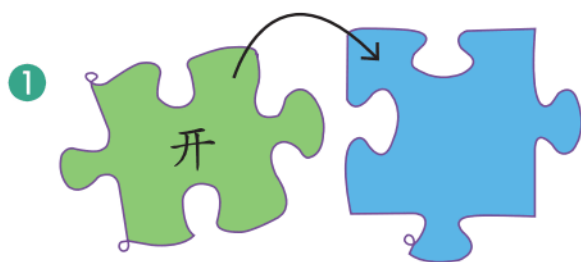
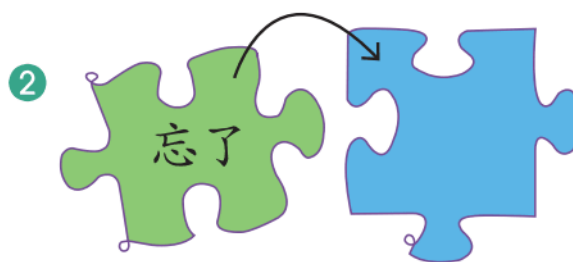
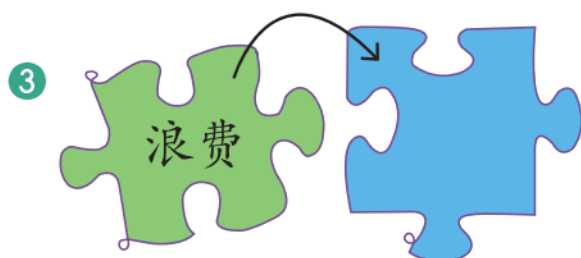
B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

开	to open →	
	to turn on →	
	others →	
洗	→	
电	→	
机	→	
常	→	

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. a. 报告 | b. 题目 | c. 介绍 | d. 窗户 |
| 2. a. 智能 | b. 浇花 | c. 节能 | d. 碳排放 |
| 3. a. 节约 | b. 自动 | c. 浪费 | d. 省 |
| 4. a. 空调 | b. 碗盘 | c. 家电 | d. 电风扇 |
| 5. a. 草坪 | b. 马桶 | c. 洗碗机 | d. 洗衣机 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



吵架
关空调
电费
生气
开窗户
洗衣机

浪费
缺水
省电
新闻
节约用电
水龙头

碳排放
中央空调
电风扇
注意
办公大楼
介绍

随手关灯
另外
认为
节能家电
智能
泡澡

自动
报告
题目
日常生活
比如说

冲马桶
水桶
雨水
浇花
草坪

(Go to page 507 to find the answer keys.)



Reading Ladder 阅读阶梯



夏天有什么省电的好方法？



读书会

23-10-9 13:16 来自 华为 5G
发布于 北京

一到夏天，温度就越来越高，电费也越花越多。你有什么省电的好方法？在评论区告诉大家吧！

赏



刚刚遇见：我们这儿的夏天非常热，每天都要开空调，省电真的有点儿难。不过，现在的空调都很智能，所以我们调了在家和不在家的温度。上班的时间，家里没有人，空调的温度可以开得高一点，这样空调就不用一直工作了。

2023-10-09



cuee：我们家用节能灯，不用的时候就随手关灯。空调不要开得太强，开两个小时以后就可以关了，然后开电风扇。中午的时候多做点儿饭菜，晚上不用做饭，热一热中午的饭菜就好了。少做饭也可以环保省电，哈哈！

2023-10-09



你有我有全都有哇：我们家现在用太阳能。以前没觉得这个东西多好，现在知道了！虽然我们家的房子很大，但是每个月的电费都只有五十块钱。我们家只用智能空调。空调的温度也不会开得很低，因为我很怕冷。夏天我会开77度。冬天太干了，白天我会开74度，晚上我会开72度。另外，我家也用智能灯，用手机就可以开灯关灯，这样也可以节约用电。

2023-10-09



注释 Notes

1 评论区 pínglùn qū: comment section

2 调 tiáo: set



Culture Corner 文化角



Environmental Protection 环境保护

Hi, have you ever thought about how important the environmental protection 环境保护 (huánjìng bǎohù) of our planet is? Can you image being a Student Environmental Protection Ambassador 学生环保大使 (xuéshēng huánbǎo dàshǐ) in China? Through a variety of activities offered by schools, districts, and cities, you will learn about our planet, reflect on human behavior and its impact on the environment, and help to keep “the beautiful China” 美丽中国 (měilì Zhōngguó). And the best part? These activities are not only educational, but also lots of fun. You will attend seminars on climate change, visit natural heritage sites, participate in environmental writing contests, and even attend an environmental education camp with your peers.

Now, you can also protect the environment on your cell phone through the mobile app, Alipay Ant Forest 蚂蚁森林 (mǎyǐ sēnlín). Every time when you take a step to reduce your emissions, such as going paperless, buying sustainable products, reading eBooks, or walking or biking more, you will receive “green energy points” 绿色能量 (lǜsè néngliàng). These green energy points grow into a virtual tree on your cell phone app, which Alipay matches by planting a real tree or protecting a conservation area, in partnership with local NGOs. By 2020, there are more than 500 millions users, more than 100 million real trees have been planted, and a total area of 12,000 hectares of conservation land in Northwest China has been protected.

© What actions do you think we can take to protect the environment?

Let's discuss in class and come up with some ideas to make a positive impact.



課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

David, Li Ming, Yingzi, and Moli are chatting before the teacher enters the classroom.

大衛：你今天怎麼了？看起來很不高興。

李明：昨天晚上我爸媽吵架了。

大衛：怎麼回事兒？

李明：我爸爸早上出門的時候，常常不關空調，也不關燈。結果，我們家這個月的電費比上個月多了一百多美元，媽媽很生氣。

英子：我弟弟也是，家裡開空調的時候，常常不關窗戶。

茉莉：這樣真的太浪費電了！現在好多地方都缺電。

李明：英子，你是我們學校的環保大使，你有没有什麼省電的好方法？

英子：空調不要開太強，夏天我們家的空調都開七十八華氏度，可以省很多電。

李明：對啊！新聞說，空調開七十八華氏度最合適，不但能節約用電，而且可以減少碳排放。

茉莉：中國有些學校的教室裡沒有中央空調，他們都開窗或者開電風扇。

英子：我們出門的時候一定要記得關燈，除了在家裡要節約用電以外，在外面也應該注意。

茉莉：說得很對，我回美國以後，看到很多辦公大樓晚上都不關燈，太浪費了。

李明：對，我們應該要隨手關燈。另外，我認為學校應該用節能燈。

茉莉：節能燈很不錯，我們家都用節能家電，又省電又省錢。

大衛：我認為最好的方法是用智能燈，教室裡沒人的時候，會自動關。

茉莉：好主意！



Dialogue 1 in English

David, Li Ming, Yingzi, and Moli are chatting before the teacher enters the classroom.

David: What's the matter with you today? You look very unhappy.

Li Ming: My parents had a quarrel last night.

David: What happened?

Li Ming: When my father goes out in the morning, he often forgets to turn off the air conditioner and the lights. As a result, our family's electricity bill this month was one hundred dollars more than last month. My mother was very angry.

Yingzi: My younger brother does the same. When the air conditioner is on at home, he often does not close the windows.

Moli: This is really a waste of electricity! Many places are lacking power right now.

Li Ming: Yingzi, you are the environmental protection ambassador of our school. Do you have any good ways to save electricity?

Yingzi: Do not turn on the air conditioner too low. In summer, the air conditioner in our house is turned on at 78 degrees Fahrenheit. This can save a lot of electricity.

Li Ming: Yes! The news says that it is most suitable to turn on the air conditioner at 78 degrees Fahrenheit. This not only can save electricity, but can also reduce carbon emissions.

Moli: In China, there are some schools without central air-conditioning. They all open windows or turn on electric fans.

Yingzi: We must remember to turn off the lights when we go out. In addition to saving electricity at home, we should also pay attention outside the house.

Moli: You are right. After I came back to the United States, I saw that many office buildings do not turn off the lights at night. This is too wasteful.

Li Ming: Yes, we should turn off the lights as we leave. Besides, I think schools should use energy-saving lights.

Moli: Energy-saving lights are very good. Everyone in my family uses energy-saving home appliances. This saves electricity and money.

David: I think the best way is to use smart lights. They will automatically turn off when no one is in the classroom.

Moli: Great idea!



Dialogue 2 in traditional characters

Yingzi, Moli, David, and Li Ming are chatting after the Chinese language class.

英子：下個星期是學校的“環保周”，林老師讓我們用中文做一個報告。你們想好題目了嗎？

茉莉：今天上科學課的時候，老師教我們怎麼省水。這個題目怎麼樣？

英子：挺好的，我們平常浪費太多水了，省水應該從日常生活做起。

大衛：那我們怎麼做呢？

茉莉：有很多方法。比如說，你可以洗澡洗得快一點兒，這樣就可以少用一點水。

大衛：哦，那太容易了，我洗澡洗得很快，五分鐘就洗完了。

茉莉：你知道嗎？在中國，很多人常常用泡澡的水沖馬桶。

李明：下雨的時候，我外公外婆會用水桶裝雨水，然後用雨水澆花。對了，大衛，你們家的草坪那麼大，你們多久澆一次水？

大衛：我們一個星期澆一次水。

英子：我們家也是。另外，洗碗機、洗衣機都得用很多水。所以，我們應該等到有很多碗盤、衣服的時候再洗。

李明：還有，洗手以後要記得關好水龍頭。

英子：這些方法都很好，“環保周”的時候，我們每個人都拍一個視頻，介紹在家裡省水的方法，怎麼樣？

大衛：好主意，我今天回家就做，我要當“省水大使”。



Dialogue 2 in English

Yingzi, Moli, David, and Li Ming are chatting after the Chinese language class.

Yingzi: Next week is the school's "Environmental Protection Week." Teacher Lin asked us to give a report in Chinese. Have you guys thought of a topic yet?

Moli: In science class today, the teacher taught us how to save water. How about this topic?

Yingzi: That's very good, we usually waste too much water. Water saving should start from daily activities.

David: So how do we do it?

Moli: There are many ways. For example, you can shower a bit faster. In this way, you can use less water.

David: Oh, that's so easy. I take quick showers, done in five minutes.

Moli: You know what? In China, many people often flush the toilet with bath water.

Li Ming: When it rains, my grandparents will use buckets to store rainwater, and then use the rainwater to water the flowers. By the way, David, your lawn is so big. How often do you water it?

David: We water it once a week.

Yingzi: So does our family. In addition, dishwashers and washing machines use a lot of water. So, we should wait until there are a lot of dishes and clothes before washing.

Li Ming: Also, remember to turn off the tap after washing your hands.

Yingzi: These methods are very good. During the environmental protection week, each of us should make a video to introduce these methods of saving water at home. How does that sound?

David: Great idea. I'll make it when I get home today. I want to be a "Water Saving Ambassador."

第十课 Lesson 10

Theme

家庭与社区
Families and Communities

Topic

暑假计划
Summer Plan

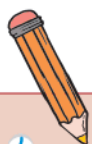


What are your summer plans? Are you traveling, volunteering, taking classes, or getting a summer job?



Learning Objectives 学习目标

In Lesson 10, I will learn to...



Interpretive

- » identify information about summer plans.
- » understand “three generations under one roof,” in comparison with US nursing homes.
- » comprehend and interpret a narrative about a travel plan.

Interpersonal

- » discuss summer plans for travel, a part-time job, and community service.
- » exchange opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home.

Presentational

- » express opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home.
- » describe summer plans in an email.



Dialogue 1

对话一



After finishing their exams, Li Ming, Moli, David, and Yingzi are discussing their summer plans.



李明



茉莉



大卫



英子



终于考完试了！

是啊，快要放假了^①！你们暑假打算做什么？



今年暑假我打算去中国旅游，除了北京以外，我还要去好几个有名的大城市！



真的好羡慕你！我也想去中国看朋友，可是我得在纽约打工赚钱。



你要去哪里打工？能赚很多钱吗？

我准备去中国餐厅当服务员，可以一边赚钱一边练习中文。一个小时十八美元，还可以赚小费。



真是一举两得，李明、茉莉，你们呢？

我的外公外婆今年暑假要来美国看我。我已经好几年没见到他们了，真的很想他们。



我要去养老院做义工，因为我需要社区服务的小时数。

养老院的义工要做什么？



大部分时间就是陪老人说话、玩游戏、做手工。我觉得这些老人没有家人在身边，都很孤单。

在中国，很多家庭都是三代同堂。中国人一般不愿意送老人去养老院，因为担心养老院不能好好地^②照顾老年人。





在美国不太一样，不少老人都住在养老院，不想跟孩子住在一起。因为他们觉得孩子长大了，应该要有自己的生活。



等我老了，我也不要跟自己的孩子住在一起。我要坐邮轮旅行，环游世界。



哈哈，那我跟你一起环游世界吧！

Pinyin Dialogue 1

After finishing their exams, Li Ming, Moli, David, and Yingzi are discussing their summer plans.



Lǐ Míng



Mòlì



Dàwèi



Yīngzǐ



Zhōngyú kǎowán shì le!

Shì a, **kuàiyào** fàng jià **le**^①! Nǐmen shǔjià dǎsuàn zuò shénme?



Jīnnián shǔjià wǒ dǎsuàn qù Zhōngguó lǚyóu, chúle Běijīng yǐwài, wǒ hái yào qù hǎo jǐ gè yǒumíng de dà chéngshì!

Zhēn de hǎo xiànmù nǐ! Wǒ yě xiǎng qù Zhōngguó kàn péngyou, kěshì wǒ děi zài Niǔyuē dǎ gōng zhuàn qián.



Nǐ yào qù nǎlǐ dǎ gōng? Néng zhuàn hěn duō qián ma?

Wǒ zhǔnbèi qù Zhōngguó cāntīng dāng fúwùyuán, kěyǐ yìbiān zhuàn qián yìbiān liànxí Zhōngwén. Yí gè xiǎoshí shíbā měiyuán, hái kěyǐ zhuàn xiǎofèi.



Zhēn shì yìjǔ-liǎngdé, Lǐ Míng、Mòlì, nǐmen ne?

Wǒ de wàigōng wàipó jīnnián shǔjià yào lái
Měiguó kàn wǒ. Wǒ yǐjīng hǎo jǐ nián méi
jiàndào tāmen le, zhēn de hěn xiǎng tāmen.



Wǒ yào qù yǎnglǎoyuàn zuò yìgōng, yīnwèi wǒ
xūyào shèqū fúwù de xiǎoshíshù.

Yǎnglǎoyuàn de yìgōng yào zuò shénme?



Dàbùfen shíjiān jiù shì péi lǎorén shuō huà,
wán yóuxì, zuò shǒugōng. Wǒ juéde zhèxiē
lǎorén méiyǒu jiārén zài shēnbiān, dōu hěn
gūdān.

Zài Zhōngguó, hěn duō jiātíng dōu shì
sān dài tóngtáng. Zhōngguó rén yìbān bú
yuànyì sòng lǎorén qù yǎnglǎoyuàn, yīnwèi
dānxīn yǎnglǎoyuàn bù néng hǎohao de^②
zhàogù lǎoniánrén.



Zài Měiguó bú tài yíyàng, bù shǎo lǎorén dōu
zhù zài yǎnglǎoyuàn, bù xiǎng gēn háizi zhù
zài yìqǐ. Yīnwèi tāmen juéde háizi zhǎngdà le,
yīnggāi yào yǒu zìjǐ de shēnghuó.

Děng wǒ lǎo le, wǒ yě bú yào gēn zìjǐ de
háizi zhù zài yìqǐ. Wǒ yào zuò yóulún lǚxíng,
huányóu shìjiè.



Hāhā, nà wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ huányóu shìjiè ba!

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	放假	放假	fàng jià	vo.	to have a holiday or vacation
2.	暑假	暑假	shǔjià	n.	summer vacation
3.	打算	打算	dǎsuàn	v./n.	to plan; to intend; plan; intention
4.	旅游	旅遊	lǚyóu	v./n.	to travel; trip; journey
5.	羡慕	羨慕	xiànmù	v.	to envy; to admire
6.	打工	打工	dǎ gōng	vo.	to have a part-time job; to have a job outside of class time, or during vacation
7.	赚钱	賺錢	zhuàn qián	vo.	to earn money
8.	一举两得	一舉兩得	yìjǔ-liǎngdé	idiom	one move, two gains; two birds with one stone
9.	想	想	xiǎng	v.	to miss (feel wistful about the absence of someone or something)
10.	养老院	養老院	yǎnglǎoyuàn	n.	nursing home
	养老	養老	yǎng lǎo	vo.	to enjoy a life in retirement
11.	做义工	做義工	zuò yìgōng	vo.	to be a volunteer; to do volunteer work
12.	需要	需要	xūyào	v.	to need; to demand; to require
13.	社区服务	社區服務	shèqū fúwù	n.	community service
	社区	社區	shèqū	n.	community; neighborhood

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
14.	小时数	小時數	xiǎoshíshù	<i>n.</i>	hours of...
15.	大部分	大部分	dàbùfen	<i>n.</i>	in large part; the majority; most of...
16.	陪	陪	péi	<i>v.</i>	to accompany; to keep sb company
17.	手工	手工	shǒugōng	<i>n.</i>	handcraft
18.	身边	身邊	shēnbiān	<i>n.</i>	at one's side; around
19.	孤单	孤單	gūdān	<i>adj.</i>	lonely
20.	三代同堂	三代同堂	sān dài tóngtáng	<i>phr.</i>	three generations under one roof
21.	愿意	願意	yuànyì	<i>mv.</i>	to be willing
22.	送	送	sòng	<i>v.</i>	to deliver; to send
23.	担心	擔心	dānxīn	<i>vo./adj.</i>	to worry; to be anxious; worried; anxious
24.	照顾	照顧	zhàogù	<i>v.</i>	to take care of; to look after
25.	长大	長大	zhǎngdà	<i>vc.</i>	to grow up
26.	邮轮	郵輪	yóulún	<i>n.</i>	cruise
27.	旅行	旅行	lǚxíng	<i>v./n.</i>	to travel; trip; journey
28.	环游世界	環遊世界	huányóu shìjiè	<i>phr.</i>	to travel around the world
	世界	世界	shìjiè	<i>n.</i>	world



Grammar

语法

1. 快要 (kuàiyào) + verb/verbal phrase + 了 (le) (is about to)

The expression “快要 (kuàiyào) + verb/verbal phrase + 了 (le)” signals that something is about to happen. It can have either 快 (kuài) or 要 (yào) omitted structurally.

我们快要放暑假了。

Women kuàiyào fàng shǔjià le.

We are almost on summer break.

火车快要开了。

Huǒchē kuàiyào kāi le.

The train is almost leaving.

夏天快要来了。

Xiàtiān kuàiyào lái le.

Summer is almost here.

中文课快要上完了。

Zhōngwénkè kuàiyào shàngwán le.

Chinese class is almost over.

2. Adjective 地 (de) + verb phrase

When an adverb occurs before a verb or verbal phrase, 地 (de) is like the marker of adverbial that should be added after the adverb and before the verb.

放假的时候，大家都希望好好地休息、睡觉。

Fàng jià de shíhòu, dàjiā dōu xīwàng hǎohào de xiūxi, shuì jiào.

Everyone hopes to rest and sleep well over break.

小强很高兴地说：“我明天要去旅行了！”

Xiǎo Qiáng hěn gāoxìng de shuō: “Wǒ míngtiān yào qù lǚxíng le!”

Xiao Qiang happily says, “I am going on vacation tomorrow!”

马上就要下雨了，大家都很快地跑回家。

Mǎshàng jiù yào xià yǔ le, dàjiā dōu hěn kuài de pǎo huí jiā.

It is almost raining. Everyone quickly runs home.

The three characters 的, 得, and 地 are all pronounced “de.” They are distinguishable in meaning and usage as outlined below.

De	Usage and function	Sentences	Structure
的	The mark of an attribute	他的书。 Tā de shū.	Pronoun + 的 + noun Possessive attribute
		我们的老师。 Wǒmen de lǎoshī.	
		可爱的熊猫。 Kě'ài de xióngmāo.	Adjective + 的 + noun Descriptive attribute
		健康的孩子。 Jiànkāng de hái zi.	
得	The mark of a complement	他唱歌唱得很好。 Tā chàng gē chàng de hěn hǎo. He sings very well. 教练说话说得很大声。 Jiàoliàn shuō huà shuō de hěn dà shēng. The coach speaks loudly.	Verb + object + verb + 得 + adjective Descriptive complement
地	the mark of an adverbial	我慢慢地走路回家。 Wǒ mànman de zǒu lù huí jiā. I slowly walk home.	Adjective + 地 + verb/verbal phrase Descriptive adverbial

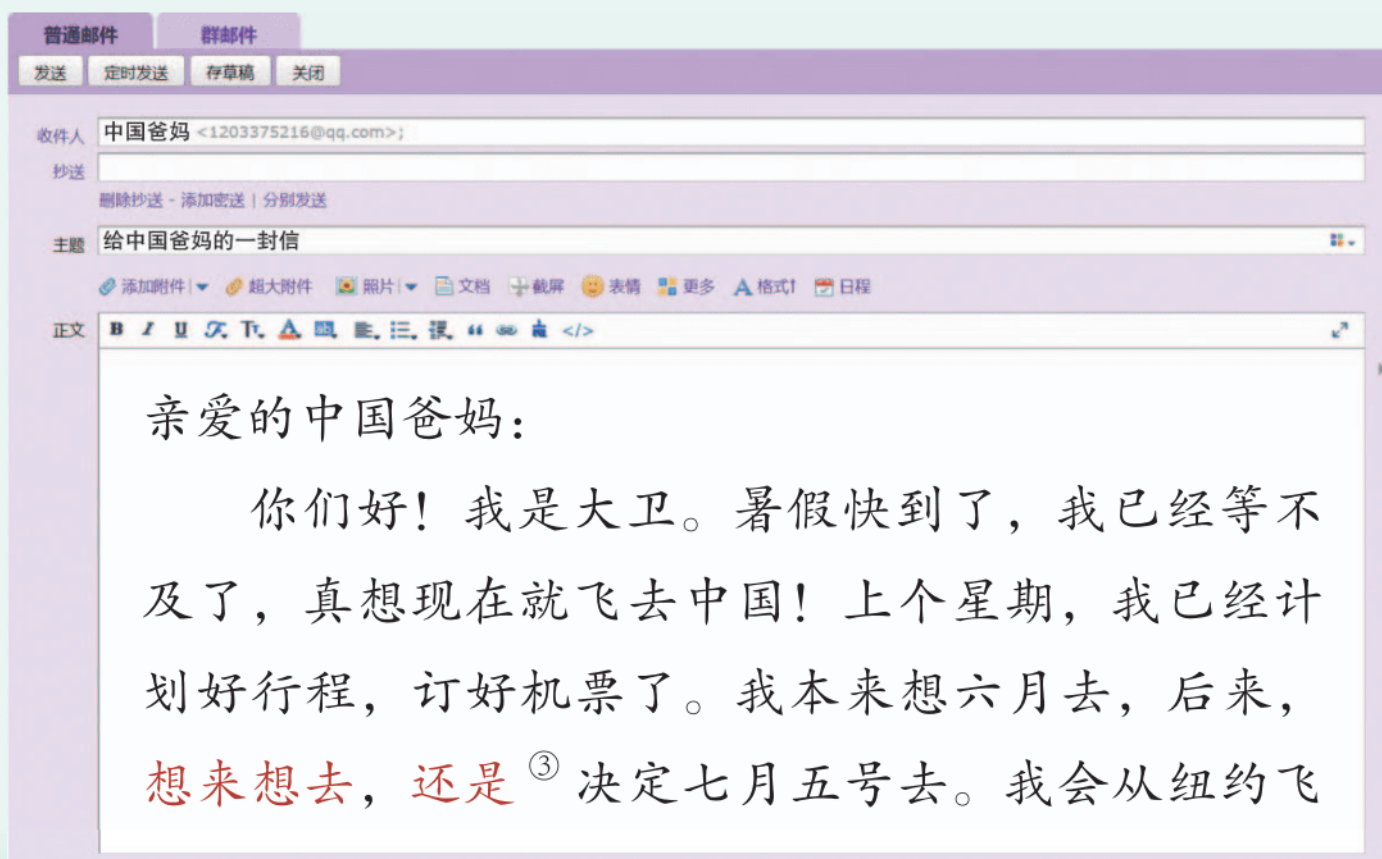


An Email

一封邮件



David is writing an email to share his summer travel plans with his host family in China.



普通邮件 群邮件

发送 定时发送 存草稿 关闭

正文

去中国，先去上海和杭州旅游，然后再去北京和你们见面。

在上海，我最想去的景点是外滩，听说那儿有很多高楼和商店，人山人海，热闹极了！我准备在上海玩三天。第三天的晚上，我会坐高铁去杭州。中国的高铁又快又方便，从上海到杭州只要一个小时。林老师说过“上有天堂，下有苏杭”，意思是苏州和杭州都很漂亮，跟天堂一样美。到了杭州以后，我打算坐船游西湖，去看看西湖的风景和名胜古迹。

在杭州待两天以后，我会坐飞机去北京。我一定要吃地道的北京烤鸭，我在美国吃的北京烤鸭都不地道。我还要爬长城，有一句话说“不到长城非好汉”，我要做一个好汉！哈哈！对了，我的朋友李明告诉我，在中国很多家庭都是三代同堂，你们家也是吗？请你们告诉我，我想带一些礼物给你们。

期待跟你们见面！

祝好！

大卫

An Email in Pinyin

David is writing an email to share his summer travel plans with his host family in China.

普通邮件 群邮件

发送 定时发送 存草稿 关闭

收件人 中国爸妈 <1203375216@qq.com>;

抄送

删除抄送 - 添加密送 | 分别发送

主题 给中国爸妈的一封信

添加附件 | 超大附件 | 照片 | 文档 | 截屏 | 表情 | 更多 | 格式 | 日程

正文

Qīn'ài de Zhōngguó bà mā:

Nǐmen hǎo! Wǒ shì Dàwèi. Shǔjià kuàidào le, wǒ yǐjīng děngbují le, zhēn xiǎng xiànzài jiù fēi qù Zhōngguó! Shàng ge xīngqī, wǒ yǐjīng jìhuà hǎo xíngchéng, dìnghǎo jīpiào le. Wǒ běnlái xiǎng Liù yuè qù, hòulái, xiǎng lái xiǎng qù, hái shì^③ juédìng Qī yuè wǔ hào qù. Wǒ huì cóng Niǔyuē fēi qù Zhōngguó, xiān qù Shànghǎi hé Hángzhōu lǚyóu, ránhòu zài qù Běijīng hé nǐmen jiàn miàn.

Zài Shànghǎi, wǒ zuì xiǎng qù de jǐngdiǎn shì Wàitān, tīngshuō nàr yǒu hěn duō gāolóu hé shāngdiàn, rénshān-rénhǎi, rènào jí le! Wǒ zhǔnbèi zài Shànghǎi wán sān tiān. Dì sān tiān de wǎnshang, wǒ huì zuò gāotiě qù Hángzhōu. Zhōngguó de gāotiě yòu kuài yòu fāngbiàn, cóng Shànghǎi dào Hángzhōu zhǐ yào yí gè xiǎoshí. Lín lǎoshī shuōguò

普通邮件 群邮件

发送 定时发送 存草稿 关闭

正文

“shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū-Háng”, yìsi shì Sūzhōu hé Hángzhōu dōu hěn piàoliang, gēn tiāntáng yíyàng měi. Dàole Hángzhōu yǐhòu, wǒ dǎsuàn zuò chuán yóu Xīhú, qù kànkàn Xīhú de fēngjǐng hé míngshèng-gǔjì.

Zài Hángzhōu dāi liǎng tiān yǐhòu, wǒ huì zuò fēijī qù Běijīng. Wǒ yídìng yào chī dìdao de Běijīng kǎoyā, wǒ zài Měiguó chī de Běijīng kǎoyā dōu bú dìdao. Wǒ hái yào pá Chángchéng, yǒu yí jù huà shuō “Bú dào Chángchéng fēi hǎohàn”, wǒ yào zuò yí gè hǎohàn! Hāhā! Duì le, wǒ de péngyou Lǐ Míng gàosu wǒ, zài Zhōngguó hěn duō jiātíng dōu shì sān dài tóngtáng, nǐmen jiā yě shì ma? Qǐng nǐmen gàosù wǒ, wǒ xiǎng dài yìxiē lǐwù gěi nǐmen.

Qīdài gēn nǐmen jiàn miàn!

Zhù hǎo!

Dàwèi

Vocabulary List 生词表

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	亲爱的	親愛的	qīn'ài de	<i>adj.</i>	dear
2.	等不及	等不及	děngbují	<i>vc.</i>	cannot wait
3.	飞	飛	fēi	<i>v.</i>	to fly
4.	计划	計劃	jìhuà	<i>v.</i>	to plan
		計畫	jìhuà	<i>n.</i>	plan
5.	行程	行程	xíngchéng	<i>n.</i>	itinerary; course of a journey
6.	订	訂	dìng	<i>v.</i>	to book (tickets, hotels, etc.); to reserve; to order
7.	机票	機票	jīpiào	<i>n.</i>	air ticket
8.	决定	決定	juéding	<i>v./n.</i>	to decide; decision
9.	杭州	杭州	Hángzhōu	<i>pn.</i>	Hangzhou
10.	景点	景點	jǐngdiǎn	<i>n.</i>	scenic spot; place of interest (tourism)
11.	外滩	外灘	Wàitān	<i>pn.</i>	the Shanghai Bund or Waitan
12.	人山人海	人山人海	rénshān-rénhǎi	<i>idiom</i>	vast crowds of people
13.	热闹	熱鬧	rènao	<i>adj.</i>	bustling with noise and excitement; lively
14.	天堂	天堂	tiāntáng	<i>n.</i>	heaven
15.	苏州	蘇州	Sūzhōu	<i>pn.</i>	Suzhou

No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
16.	船	船	chuán	<i>n.</i>	boat; vessel; ship
17.	游	遊	yóu	<i>v.</i>	to tour
18.	西湖	西湖	Xīhú	<i>pn.</i>	Xihu or West Lake in Hangzhou
19.	风景	風景	fēngjǐng	<i>n.</i>	scenery; landscape
20.	名胜古迹	名勝古蹟	míngshèng-gǔjì	<i>n.</i>	historical sites and scenic spots
21.	待	待	dāi	<i>v.</i>	to stay
22.	爬	爬	pá	<i>v.</i>	to climb; to crawl; to get up
23.	长城	長城	Chángchéng	<i>pn.</i>	the Great Wall
24.	不到长城 非好汉	不到長城 非好漢	búdào Chángchéng fēi hǎohàn	<i>phr.</i>	until you reach the Great Wall, you're not a proper person; to get over difficulties before reaching the goal
25.	礼物	禮物	lǐwù	<i>n.</i>	gift; present
26.	期待	期待	qīdài	<i>v./n.</i>	to look forward to; to expect; expectation



Grammar

语法

3. Subject verb 来 (lái) verb 去 (qù), 还是 (háishi).....

The expression “verb 来 (lái) verb 去 (qù)” refers to a situation in which someone repeats the same action over and over again and then either makes a decision or leaves things undecided or unclear. It is often followed by a clause beginning with an adverb 还是 (háishi; still).

我们想来想去，还是觉得坐火车去纽约最方便。

Wǒmen xiǎng lái xiǎng qù, hái shì juéde zuò huǒchē qù Niǔyuē zuì fāngbiàn.
After much deliberation, we still think that it is the most convenient to take the train to New York.

大家说来说去，还是决定不去看演唱会了。

Dàjiā shuō lái shuō qù, hái shì juéding bú qù kàn yǎnchànghuì le.
After talking back and forth, everyone decided not to go to the concert.

选课的时间到了，我选来选去，还是只选了六门课。

Xuǎn kè de shíjiān dào le, wǒ xuǎn lái xuǎn qù, hái shì zhǐ xuǎn le liù mén kè.
It's time to choose classes. After choosing over and over again, I only chose six courses.

我弟弟很想学日文，可是学来学去，还是学不会。

Wǒ dìdì hěn xiǎng xué Rìwén, kěshì xué lái xué qù, hái shì xué bù huì.
My younger brother really wants to learn Japanese, but after learning over and over again, he is still not able to catch on to it.

我跟爸爸妈妈讨论来讨论去，还是不知道要买什么礼物给爷爷奶奶。

Wǒ gēn bàba māmā tāolùn lái tāolùn qù, hái shì bù zhīdào yào mǎi shénme lǐwù gěi yéye nǎinai.

After discussing with my parents over and over again, we still don't know what gift to buy for my grandparents.

很多人计划来计划去，还是没有办法决定什么是最好的计划。

Hěn duō rén jìhuà lái jìhuà qù, hái shì méiyǒu bànfǎ juédìng shénme shì zuìhǎo de jìhuà.

Many people planned over and over again, but they still could not find a way to decide on the best plan.



What I Have Learned 我学了……

I Discuss summer plans for travel, a part-time job, and community service.

Practice asking and answering the following questions with your partners:

你暑假打算做什么？

你暑假有什么打算/计划？

你暑假要去哪儿旅游？

你暑假要去哪里/哪儿打工？

能赚很多钱吗？

你暑假要去哪里/哪儿做社区服务？

你暑假要去养老院做义工吗？

养老院义工要做什么？

你暑假打算做几个小时的社区服务？

暑假做什么事可以“一举两得”？



II

Exchange opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home.

Practice asking and answering the following questions with your partners:

Three generations under one roof 三代同堂

什么是三代同堂？

在中国，很多家庭都是三代同堂，在美国呢？为什么？

中国人一般不愿意送老人去养老院，美国人呢？为什么？

美国老人想跟孩子住在一起吗？中国人呢？为什么？

你认为老人住在养老院会孤单吗？在养老院工作的人能好好地照顾老人吗？在养老院，老人可以做什么？住在养老院有什么好处？

三代同堂有什么好处？两代同堂有什么好处？

等你老了，你想跟孩子住在一起吗？你想坐邮轮旅行，环游世界吗？为什么？

Living in a nursing home 住在养老院

你觉得爸爸妈妈/爷爷奶奶/外公外婆应该跟我们一起住吗？

应该住在养老院吗？他们应该自己住吗？为什么？

老人住在养老院会开心吗？为什么？

他们的生活怎么样？为什么？

你觉得最好的养老院是什么样的？

如果你老了，你想住在养老院吗？为什么？



III Express
opinions
about “three
generations
under one
roof” and
living in a
nursing home.

Three generations under one roof 三代同堂

我认为跟爷爷奶奶 / 外公外婆住在一起有一些 / 很多 / ……个好处。

第一，……。第二，……。第三，……。

我认为跟爷爷奶奶 / 外公外婆住在一起有一些 / 很多 / ……个坏处。

第一，……。第二，……。第三，……。

我认为不跟爷爷奶奶 / 外公外婆住在一起有一些 / 很多 / ……个好处。

第一，……。第二，……。第三，……。

我认为不跟爷爷奶奶 / 外公外婆住在一起有一些 / 很多 / ……个坏处。

第一，……。第二，……。第三，……。

Living in a nursing home 住在养老院

First paragraph: Introduction (topic sentence)

很多人觉得……好，也有很多人觉得……好。

Second paragraph: My perspective

我认为住在孩子家比较好，因为家人们可以好好地照顾老年人。

我认为住养老院比较好，因为养老院有很多其他的老年人，他们可以一起聊天、玩游戏、做手工。

Third paragraph: Agreement or disagreement with my partner's perspective

我(不)同意……，因为……。

Fourth paragraph: Conclusion

不管……，……都……；虽然……，可是……如果……的话，就可以“一举两得”。

IV Describe summer plans in an email.

Analyze the narrative in Part II of this lesson and identify the following elements:

recipient's name

亲爱的中国爸妈：

greeting

opening sentences

你们好！我是大卫。暑假快到了，我已经等不及了，真想现在就飞去中国！上个星期，我已经计划好行程，订好机票了。我本来想六月去，后来，想来想去，还是决定七月五号去。我会从纽约飞去中国，先去上海和杭州旅游，然后再去北京和你们见面。

a brief summary of summer travel plan

在上海，我最想去的景点是外滩，听说那儿有很多高楼和商店，人山人海，热闹极了！我准备在上海玩三天。第三天的晚上，我会坐高铁去杭州。中国的高铁又快又方便，从上海到杭州只要一个小时。林老师说过“上有天堂，下有苏杭”，意思是苏州和杭州都很漂亮，跟天堂一样美。到了杭州以后，我打算坐船游西湖，去看看西湖的风景和名胜古迹。

travel plan in the first two cities (supporting details)

在杭州待两天以后，我会坐飞机去北京。我一定要吃地道的北京烤鸭，我在美国吃的北京烤鸭都不地道。我还要爬长城，有一句话说“不到长城非好汉”，我要做一个好汉！哈哈！

travel plan in the third city (supporting details)

对了，我的朋友李明告诉我，在中国很多家庭都是三代同堂，你们家也是吗？请你们告诉我，我想带一些礼物给你们。

an inquiry about “three generations under one roof” and reason

期待跟你们见面！

closing sentences

祝好！

best wishes

sender's name

大卫



Exit Tickets

通关卡

Exit Ticket 1



Discuss summer plans about travel, a part-time job, and community service (refer to Tasks 1-3 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist: I can talk about my summer plans with the necessary information

	yes	no
1. When? 什么时候? 几月几号?	☐	☐
2. What? 参加什么活动? 做什么事?	☐	☐
3. Where? 在 / 去哪儿?	☐	☐
4. Why? 为什么参加这个 / 些活动? 做这件 / 些事?	☐	☐
5. How about? 怎么样?	☐	☐
6. Additional comments 最有意思, 最健康, 最有意义 (yǒu yìyì, meaningful)	☐	☐

Exit Ticket 2

Exchange opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home (refer to Tasks 5-7 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist: I can exchange opinions about 三代同堂 and 住养老院

	yes	no
1. I can ask appropriate questions about 三代同堂	☐	☐
2. I can respond to questions about 三代同堂	☐	☐
3. I can take turns and add comments and opinions about 三代同堂	☐	☐
4. I can ask appropriate questions about 养老院	☐	☐
5. I can respond to questions about 养老院	☐	☐
6. I can take turns and add comments and opinions about 养老院	☐	☐



Exit Ticket 3



Express opinions about “three generations under one roof” and living in a nursing home (refer to Task 8 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist:

	yes	no
1. I can talk about three advantages and disadvantages of 三代同堂	☐	☐
2. I can talk about three advantages and disadvantages of 两代同堂	☐	☐
3. I can express my opinions about living in a nursing home in three paragraphs. first paragraph: introduce a topic sentence second paragraph: present my perspectives third paragraph: give a conclusion	☐	☐

Exit Ticket 4

Describe your summer plan in an email (refer to Task 4 in the Task Workbook).

Self-checklist:

	yes	no
My mind map includes all possible Wh-word information: when, what, where, who, how, why	☐	☐
	yes	no
My email includes the following elements:		
1. recipient's name	☐	☐
2. greeting	☐	☐
3. opening sentences	☐	☐
4. a brief summary of summer travel plan	☐	☐
5. travel plan in the first several places	☐	☐
6. travel plan in the remaining places	☐	☐
7. closing sentences	☐	☐
8. best wishes	☐	☐
9. sender's name	☐	☐



Supplementary Word Bank 补充生词

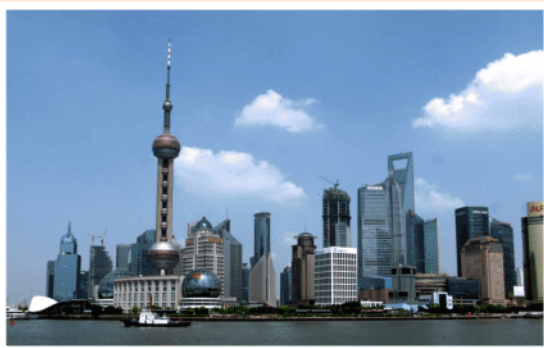
No.	Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of speech	Definition
1.	寒假	寒假	hánjià	<i>n.</i>	winter break
2.	暑期学校	暑期學校	shǔqī xuéxiào	<i>n.</i>	summer school
3.	夏令营	夏令營	xiàlìngyíng	<i>n.</i>	summer camp
4.	实习	實習	shíxí	<i>v./n.</i>	to intern; internship
5.	有意义	有意義	yǒu yìyì	<i>adj.</i>	meaningful; significant
6.	邮件	郵件	yóujiàn	<i>n.</i>	email



Have you ever volunteered at a senior home before? If not, would you consider doing it?



What kind of volunteer work are they doing in the pictures?



Can you identify the places that are mentioned in this lesson?



There is a well-known saying carved on the stone monument. Can you guess what it is? (Hint: you have learned the saying in this lesson!)



Do you know what building in Taipei this is? How tall is it?



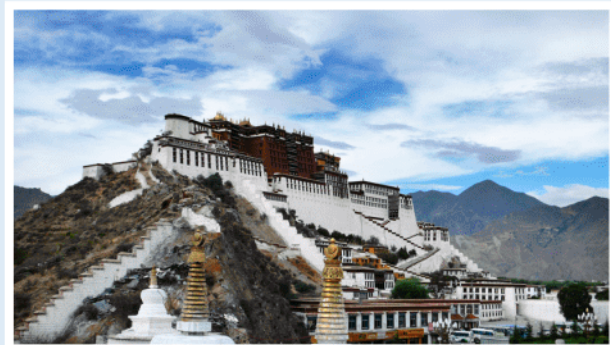
新疆喀什
Xīnjiāng Kāshí
Kashi, Xinjiang



宁夏银川
Níngxià Yínchuān
Yinchuan, Ningxia



内蒙古呼伦贝尔
Nèiménggǔ Hūlúnbèi'ěr
Hulun Buir, Nei Mongol



西藏拉萨
Xīzàng Lāsà
Lhasa, Xizang

There are many ethnic groups in China, each with a distinctive style of architectures, traditional clothing, food, and cultural events. Do research about the places above, and see which place you would like to visit.



台湾宜兰
Táiwān Yílán
Yilan, Taiwan



Can you tell what people are buying based on the store signs? What do they do after buying it?



Have you heard of Pingxi Lantern Festival? It is a festival when wishes light up the night sky. What wishes would you write on the lanterns?



Vocabulary Challenge 词汇挑战

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.

B Vocabulary Expansion

1. What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

--	--

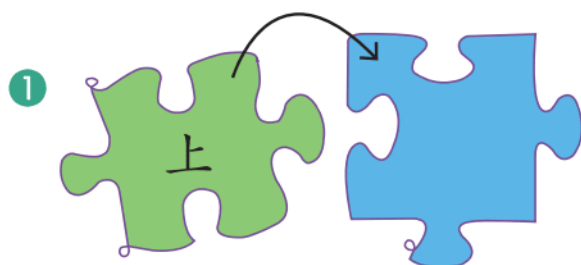
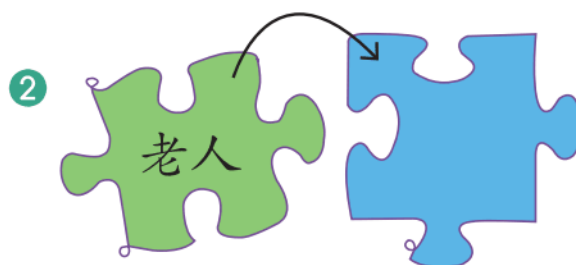
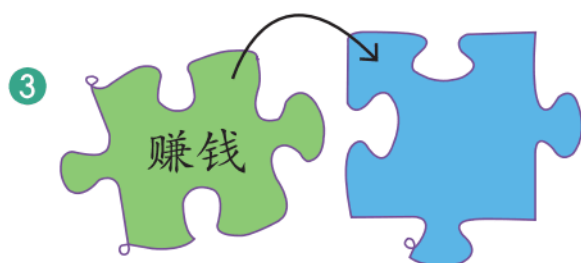
游 →		
点 →		
边 →		
长	cháng →	
	zhǎng →	

2. Are you the “King of Idioms”? What are the idioms below?

- (1) _____: 一看到叶子就知道秋天到了。
- (2) _____: 不管什么事都很努力, 不输别人。
- (3) _____: 常常很开心, 常常笑。
- (4) _____: 本来输了, 后来, 赢了。
- (5) _____: 做一件事能有两个好处。
- (6) _____: 什么地方都是人, 跟山和海一样多。

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?



D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|---------|
| 1. a. 打工 | b. 旅游 | c. 羡慕 | d. 做义工 |
| 2. a. 行程 | b. 担心 | c. 计划 | d. 旅行 |
| 3. a. 暑假 | b. 邮轮 | c. 飞机 | d. 船 |
| 4. a. 景点 | b. 期待 | c. 风景 | d. 名胜古迹 |
| 5. a. 长城 | b. 外滩 | c. 热闹 | d. 西湖 |

E Word Search

How many can you find?



放假
打算
旅游
羡慕
打工
赚钱

一举两得
养老院
做义工
需要
社区服务
大部分

身边
孤单
三代同堂
愿意
担心
照顾

长大
邮轮
环游世界
等不及
计划
行程

订机票
决定
景点
人山人海
热闹

风景
名胜古迹
不到长城非好汉
礼物
期待

(Go to page 508 to find the answer keys.)



西湖

你听过这句话吗？“上有天堂，下有苏杭”，意思是苏州和杭州跟天堂一样美。杭州最美的地方是西湖，所以如果你来杭州，一定要来西湖看看。

西湖在杭州的西边，它的三面都是山，是有名的历史文化景点。很久以前，人们就喜欢去游西湖，到西湖参加活动。中国历史上有一个有名的美人，叫西施^{Xīshī}。有人说过：“西湖跟西施一样，不管什么时候，都很美”。

“西湖十景”中的一景叫“三潭映月”，中国的人民币上也有这个风景。湖的中间是三个石塔^{shítǎ}，晚上的时候，石塔很亮，在水里的倒影跟月亮一样，天上^{dàoyǐng}有月，水里也有月，美极了。

西湖最有名的十个景点叫“西湖十景”，每一个景点的名字都是很美的四个字。你们可以猜一猜下面三个景点的名字吗？



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____

Duànqiáo cánxuě

a 断桥残雪

Sūdī chūnxiǎo

b 苏堤春晓

Huāgǎng guānyú

c 花港观鱼

除了坐船游西湖以外，你也一定要喝中国有名的绿茶——西湖的龙井茶^{lóngjǐngchá}。一边看美景一边喝茶，真的舒服极了。如果你想送礼物的话，你可以买龙井茶送给你的家人和朋友。



tí lín ān dī
题临安邸
The Topic Lin'an House

lín shēng
林升
Lin Sheng

shān wài qīng shān lóu wài lóu
山外青山楼外楼，
Outside the hill, outside the Castle Peak Tower,
xī hú gē wǔ jǐ shí xiū
西湖歌舞几时休。
when will the singing and dancing rest at the
West Lake.

nuǎn fēng xūn de yóu rén zuì
暖风熏得游人醉，
The warm wind made the visitors drunk,

zhí bǎ háng zhōu zuò biàn zhōu
直把杭州作汴州。
and mistake Hangzhou for Bianzhou.



注释 Notes

- ① 西施 Xīshī: one of the renowned Four Beauties of ancient China
- ② 三潭印月 Sāntán yinyuè: Three Pools Mirroring the Moon, a famous scenic spot in the West Lake area
- ③ 人民币 rénminbì: CNY, Chinese Yuan
- ④ 石塔 shítǎ: West Lake Stone pagoda
- ⑤ 倒影 dàoyǐng: reflection in water
- ⑥ 龙井茶 lóngjǐngchá: Longjing Tea



Respect the elderly and love the young 尊老爱幼

Respecting the elderly and loving the young, or 尊老爱幼 (zūnlǎo-àiyòu), is still a highly regarded traditional value in Chinese society today. This value shines brightly during the Chongyang Festival, 重阳节 (Chóngyángjié), held on the ninth day of the ninth lunar month. The number nine, 九 (jiǔ), carries a meaning of longevity, which aligns with the festival's theme of celebrating the long lives of the elderly. On this day, young people show their care for the elderly by spending quality time with family, visiting or calling their parents or grandparents to express their love and support. Many young people also choose to volunteer, especially during the Chongyang Festival or on weekends. They visit nursing homes, engaging in activities like reading to residents, helping with chores, making dumplings, or even staging talent shows. These acts of kindness emphasize the societal respect for the elderly.

Equally important is the dedication to children's well-being in Chinese culture. Their health, safety, and education are prioritized. This commitment can be seen in various ways, from the Hope Project and child protection facilities in public spaces to efforts that guarantee educational rights. Moreover, there's the treasured tradition of 支教 (zhījiào). Backed by their community, young students travel to rural areas, bringing with them snacks, supplies, donated books, and a passion to teach subjects such as English, math, art, and music to rural children.

- ◎ **Has anyone had a chance to volunteer in a nursing home or school?**
- ◎ **How was your experience?**
- ◎ **What type of volunteer work do you hope to do in the future?**

Let's discuss with your classmates and teacher.

課文對話的繁體字版和英文版

Texts in Traditional Characters and in English

**Dialogue 1** in traditional characters

After finishing their exams, Li Ming, Moli, David, and Yingzi are discussing their summer plans.

李明：終於考完試了！

茉莉：是啊，快要放假了！你們暑假打算做什麼？

大衛：今年暑假我打算去中國旅遊，除了北京以外，我還要去好幾個有名的大城市！

英子：真的好羨慕你！我也想去中國看朋友，可是我得在紐約打工賺錢。

李明：你要去哪裡打工？能賺很多錢嗎？

英子：我準備去中國餐廳當服務員，可以一邊賺錢一邊練習中文。一個小時十八美元，還可以賺小費。

大衛：真是一舉兩得，李明、茉莉，你們呢？

李明：我的外公外婆今年暑假要來美國看我。我已經好幾年沒見到他們了，真的很想他們。

茉莉：我要去養老院做義工，因為我需要社區服務的小時數。

李明：養老院的義工要做什麼？

茉莉：大部分時間就是陪老人說話、玩遊戲、做手工。我覺得這些老人沒有家人在身邊，都很孤單。

李明：在中國，很多家庭都是三代同堂。中國人一般不願意送老人去養老院，因為擔心養老院不能好好地照顧老年人。

茉莉：在美國不太一樣，不少老人都住在養老院，不想跟孩子住在一起。因為他們覺得孩子長大了，應該要有自己的生活。

英子：等我老了，我也不要跟自己的孩子住在一起。我要坐郵輪旅行，環遊世界。

大衛：哈哈，那我跟你一起環遊世界吧！



Dialogue 1 in English

After finishing their exams, Li Ming, Moli, David, and Yingzi are discussing their summer plans.

Li Ming: The exam is finally over!

Moli: Yes, summer break is coming soon! What are your plans over the summer vacation?

David: I plan to travel to China this summer. Besides Beijing, I also want to visit several famous big cities!

Yingzi: I really envy you! I also want to go to China to see friends, but I have to work in New York to earn money.

Li Ming: Where are you going to work? Can you make a lot of money?

Yingzi: I am going to work as a waiter in a Chinese restaurant, so I can practice Chinese while earning money. It pays eighteen dollars an hour, and I can also earn tips.

David: That really is killing two birds with one stone. Li Ming, Moli, how about you two?

Li Ming: My grandparents will come to America to visit me this summer. I haven't seen them in years, so I really miss them.

Moli: I'm going to volunteer at a nursing home because I need community service hours.

Li Ming: What do volunteers do at nursing homes?

Moli: Most of time is spent on talking with the elderly, playing games, and doing crafts. I think these old people are really lonely without family members around them.

Li Ming: In China, many families have three generations living under the same roof. Chinese people are generally reluctant to send the elderly to nursing homes due to fear that the nursing homes will not take good care of the elderly.

Moli: It's different in the United States. Many elderly people live in nursing homes and don't want to live with their children. They feel that when their children grow up, they should have their own lives.

Yingzi: When I'm old, I also don't want to live with my children. I want to take a cruise and travel around the world.

David: Ha ha, then I will travel around the world with you!



An Email

in traditional characters

David is writing an email to share his summer travel plans with his host family in China.

親愛的中國爸媽：

你們好！我是大衛。暑假快到了，我已經等不及了，真想現在就飛去中國！上個星期，我已經計劃好行程，訂好機票了。我本來想六月去，後來，想來想去，還是決定七月五號去。我會從紐約飛去中國，先去上海和杭州旅遊，然後再去北京和你們見面。

在上海，我最想去的景點是外灘，聽說那兒有很多高樓和商店，人山人海，熱鬧極了！我準備在上海玩三天。第三天的晚上，我會坐高鐵去杭州。中國的高鐵又快又方便，從上海到杭州只要一個小時。林老師說過“上有天堂，下有蘇杭”，意思是蘇州和杭州都很漂亮，跟天堂一樣美。到了杭州以後，我打算坐船遊西湖，去看看西湖的風景和名勝古蹟。

在杭州待兩天以後，我會坐飛機去北京。我一定要吃地道的北京烤鴨，我在美國吃的北京烤鴨都不地道。我還要爬長城，有一句話說“不到長城非好漢”，我要做一個好漢！哈哈！對了，我的朋友李明告訴我，在中國很多家庭都是三代同堂，你們家也是嗎？請你們告訴我，我想帶一些禮物給你們。

期待跟你們見面！

祝好！

大衛



An Email in English

David is writing an email to share his summer travel plans with his host family in China.

Dear Chinese Parents:

Hello! I'm David. Summer break is coming, and I can't wait! I just want to fly to China right now! I already planned my itinerary and booked my plane ticket last week. I originally wanted to go in June, but after much deliberation, I decided to go on July 5th. I will fly from New York to China. First I will travel to Shanghai and Hangzhou, and then go to Beijing to meet you both.

In Shanghai, the scenic spot I want to visit the most is the Bund. I heard that there are many tall buildings and shops there, and that it is lively with crowds of people! I plan on visiting Shanghai for three days. On the night of the third day, I will take the high-speed train to Hangzhou. China's high-speed rail is fast and convenient. It only takes one hour from Shanghai to Hangzhou. Teacher Lin once said that "There is heaven above, and Suzhou and Hangzhou below," which means that Suzhou and Hangzhou are both beautiful, as beautiful as heaven. After arriving in Hangzhou, I plan to take a boat to tour the scenery and scenic spots of West Lake.

After two days in Hangzhou, I will fly to Beijing. I definitely want to eat authentic Peking duck. The Peking duck I ate in the United States was not authentic. I still want to climb the Great Wall. There is a saying, "If you don't reach the Great Wall, you are not a hero." I want to be a hero! Ha ha! By the way, my friend Li Ming told me that many families in China have three generations living under the same roof. Is it the same in your family? Please let me know. I want to bring you some presents.

Looking forward to meeting you!

With best wishes,

David

Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category

Lesson 1

Section	Noun		Proper noun	Pronoun	Verb/Verb plus object	
Dialogue 1	校园	旁边	茉莉		欢迎	
	教室	分钟			带	
	右边	体育馆			参观	
	西班牙文	体育			走	
	左边	大礼堂			离	
	法文	中间				
	对面	操场			下课	
	地方	停车场			跑步	
	餐厅					
Dialogue 2	国际学校		上海	每	住	
	外国				自习	
	自习				训练	
	训练				上学	
Supplementary Vocabulary	上面	东		多久		
	下面	南				
	前面	西				
	后面	北				
		小时				



	Adverb	Adjective	Preposition	Time word	Interjection
		远	从		哦
	难怪 特别	长 国际 别的 特别		每天 一会儿	哈
		近			

Lesson 2

Section	Noun		Pronoun	Verb/ Verb plus complement	Adverb	Adjective	
Dialogue 1	学期 历史 数学 科学 时候	实验 东西 文章 文化		比较 实验 选 读 退步	比较 有一点儿 当然	严格 有趣 下个	
Dialogue 2	物理 化学 美术 社团 活动 机器人 钢琴 晚自习 小时	运动 早操 眼保健操 眼 保健操 手 按摩 眼睛	大家	完 运动 按摩 听起来	先 再	轻松 不好意思 晚	
Supplementary Vocabulary	语文 文学 地理 生物	学生会 义工 服务		服务			

Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category

	Measure word	Conjunction	Time word	Miscellaneous	Idiom	Phrase
	门	而且		有的……有的…… 如果……的话	不落人后	谁说的
	节	然后	下午 下次			不好意思

Lesson 3

Section	Noun		Proper noun	Modal verb	Verb/Verb plus object	Particle	
Dialogue 1	天气	餐馆	中央公园	可能	预报	过	
	预报	太阳					
	阴天	秋天					
	晴天	季节					
	度	公园					
	气温	成语					
	华氏度	班					
Dialogue 2	夏天	哈尔滨		怕			
	冬天						
	脚						
	冰雕						
	雪景						
Supplementary Vocabulary	摄氏度	云			滑雪		
	春天	雾			打雷		
	多云	伞					
	闪电						

	Adverb	Adjective	Preposition	Conjunction	Time word	Miscellaneous	Idiom
	多	可能 冷 高 低 舒服 凉快 美 中央 红			白天		一叶知秋
	极	干 湿	比	不过 但是	去年	不但……而 且……	
		暖和 闷热					

Lesson 4

Section	Noun		Verb/Verb plus object		Adverb	
Dialogue 1	服务员	醋	光临	尝	一共	
	菜单	鱼	点	过敏	马上	
	麻婆豆腐	蚂蚁上树	饿	撕		
	豆腐	蚂蚁	烤	送		
	北京烤鸭	树	红烧			
	鸭	味道				
	牛肉面	海鲜				
	牛肉	蔬菜				
	面	手撕包菜				
	碗	包菜				
	特色菜	盘				
	客人	米饭				
	糖醋鱼	酸辣汤				
	糖	汤				
Dialogue 2	钱	饼干	付	买单		
	卡	数字	刷	吃素		
	现金	意思	服务	刷卡		
	小费		麻烦	打包		
	服务		笑			
	百分之……		开心			
Supplementary Vocabulary	油	鸡肉	放			
	盐	炒饭				
	蛋	炒面				
	猪肉	清蒸鱼				
	羊肉					

	Adjective	Numeral	Measure word	Preposition	Idiom	Phrase
	饿 有名 够 酸 辣		位 家 碗 盘 道			
	饱 地道 咸 新鲜 香	百	块	给	笑口常开	算了
	甜 苦 油 清淡		壶			

Lesson 5

Section	Noun		Modal verb	Verb/Verb plus object	
Dialogue 1	T 恤衫 样式 网上 网店 美元 裙子 鞋子 运费 衣服	实体店 话 号 主意 商店 市中心 附近 收据		买 免 讨价还价 穿 换 逛	打折 下单 上网
Dialogue 2	钱包 天下 商场 二维码 习惯 信用卡	开始 时代 将来 安全 好处	不用	告诉 习惯 开始 进入 花 同意	出门 逛街
Supplementary Vocabulary	裤子 牛仔裤 帽子 袜子 衬衫 毛衣	卫衣 夹克 外套 长短 价钱 售货员		戴	

	Adverb	Adjective	Prefix	Measure word	Time word	Miscellaneous
	挺	双 贵 便宜 合适		件 条 双 句	上午	
	还是	安全	第	些	将来	连……都……
				顶		

Lesson 6

Section	Noun	Verb/Verb plus object/ Verb plus complement	Adverb	
Dialogue 1	火锅 共享单车 单车 高铁 城市 票	开 骑 共享 见面 走路 上班	已经 一般 有时候	
Dialogue 2	频道 土豆 火 片 平板电脑 面条 汤底 最后 羊肉 表演 青菜 价格 土豆片 留言	收看 打卡 轮 排队 放 上菜 涮 点赞 表演 留言 推荐 烧开	最少 终于	
Supplementary Vocabulary	鸳鸯锅 清汤锅 麻辣锅 番茄锅 蘸料 饮料	拍 分享 捞 扫码		



Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category

	Adjective	Pronoun	Conjunction	Time word	Phrase
		多久	不管		太棒了
	火 不得了			刚才	

Lesson 7

Section	Noun		Verb/Verb plus object	Adverb	Adjective	
Dialogue 1	拖鞋 叔叔 阿姨 爷爷 奶奶 孙子 不同 地方风俗 结局 演员	剧情 评分 皮影戏 皮影 戏 背景 传统 乐器 二胡 古筝	演 拍 拉 弹 评分 说话 配音		不同 感人 搞笑 精彩 黄 蓝 传统	
Dialogue 2	KTV 卡拉 OK 苹果 偶像 演唱会 歌手 团体 粉丝 青春	中国风 嘻哈 节奏 旋律 风格 歌词 摇滚 现代 京剧	点歌 洗脑	从来 平常 刚刚	流行 红 青春 有活力 轻快 洗脑	
Supplementary Vocabulary	乐队 吉他 小提琴 笛子	长笛 黑管 喇叭 鼓	刺激 吹		刺激 意想不到 优美	



Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category

	Measure word	Pronoun	Proper noun	Conjunction
	部	什么样	超人 孙悟空	
				或者

Lesson 8

Section	Noun		Verb/Verb plus object/Verb plus complement	Adverb	Adjective	
Dialogue 1	球赛 华裔 主力 明星 后卫 骄傲 上半场 下半场 结果	冠军 比赛 团队 精神 英雄 珍珠奶茶 珍珠 奶茶	赢 拿 小看 比赛 输 得(分) 打赌 以为 投篮	本来	强 骄傲 疯 准 激烈 重要	
Dialogue 2	日记 橄榄球 友谊 高中	教练 机会 比分 啦啦队	喊 受伤 结束 打气 抱着 平分 抓住 打赢		努力 受伤 紧张	
Supplementary Vocabulary	裁判 排球 乒乓球 网球	棒球 羽毛球 冰球 足球	暂停 踢 热身 犯规			



Vocabulary by Lesson and Grammar Category

	Measure word	Proper noun	Conjunction	Time word	Miscellaneous	Idiom	Phrase
	场	安东尼 林书豪 林来疯	结果		为……加油	后来居上	
				后来			好不容易

Lesson 9

Section	Noun		Verb/Verb plus object		Adverb	
Dialogue 1	空调 灯 电费 窗户 新闻 碳排放 碳	中央空调 电风扇 注意 办公大楼 大楼 家电	关 开 浪费 缺 省 节约 排放	注意 认为 节能 吵架 生气	随手 自动	
Dialogue 2	报告 题目 日常生活 生活 马桶 外公 外婆 水桶	雨水 花 草坪 洗碗机 洗衣机 碗盘 水龙头 介绍	报告 冲 装 浇 介绍 当	洗澡 泡澡 浇花 洗手		
Supplementary Vocabulary	温度 温室气体 能源 绿色能源 可再生资源	太阳能 风能 水力 地热				

	Adjective	Pronoun	Conjunction	Preposition	Miscellaneous	Phrase
	生气 节能 智能 自动	这样	另外			怎么了 怎么回事（儿） 节约用电
	日常			比如说	从……做起	
	脏					节能减排

Lesson 10

Section	Noun		Verb/Verb plus object/Verb plus complement		
Dialogue 1	暑假 打算 旅游 养老院 社区服务 社区 小时数	大部分 手工 身边 邮轮 旅行 世界	打算 旅游 羡慕 想 需要 陪 送 照顾 旅行	放假 打工 赚钱 养老 做义工 担心 长大	
Dialogue 2	计划 行程 机票 决定 景点 天堂	船 风景 名胜古迹 礼物 期待	飞 计划 订 决定 游	待 爬 期待 等不及	
Supplementary Vocabulary	寒假 暑期学校 夏令营 实习 邮件		实习		

	Adjective	Modal verb	Proper noun	Idiom	Phrase
	孤单 担心	愿意		一举两得	三代同堂 环游世界
	亲爱的 热闹		杭州 外滩 苏州 西湖 长城	人山人海	不到长城非好汉
	有意义				

Vocabulary Index (Chinese-English)

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
A					
阿姨	阿姨	āyí	<i>n.</i>	maternal aunt	7
安东尼	安東尼	Āndōngní	<i>pn.</i>	Anthony	8
安全	安全	ānquán	<i>adj./n.</i>	safe; secure; safety; security	5
按摩	按摩	àn mó	<i>n./v.</i>	massage; to massage	2
B					
白天	白天	báitiān	<i>t.</i>	daytime; during the day	3
百	百	bǎi	<i>nu.</i>	hundred	4
百分之……	百分之……	bǎi fēn zhī...	<i>n.</i>	percent	4
班	班	bān	<i>n.</i>	class	3
办公大楼	辦公大樓	bàngōng dàlóu	<i>n.</i>	office building	9
包菜	包菜	bāocài	<i>n.</i>	cabbage	4
饱	飽	bǎo	<i>adj.</i>	to eat until full	4
保健操	保健操	bǎojiàncāo	<i>n.</i>	health exercises	2
报告	報告	bàogào	<i>n./v.</i>	report; presentation; to report; to present	9
抱着	抱著	bàozhe	<i>v.</i>	is carrying or holding in the arms	8
北京烤鸭	北京烤鴨	Běijīng kǎoyā	<i>n.</i>	Peking duck	4
背景	背景	bèijǐng	<i>n.</i>	background	7
本来	本來	běnlái	<i>adv.</i>	originally; at first	8

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
比	比	bǐ	prep./v.	compared with (comparison marker); to compare	3
比分	比分	bǐfēn	n.	score	8
比较	比較	bǐjiào	adv./v.	comparatively; relatively; rather; to compare	2
比如说	比如說	bǐrú shuō	prep.	for example; for instance	9
比赛	比賽	bǐsài	n./v.	competition (sports, etc.); match; to compete	8
表演	表演	biǎoyǎn	v./n.	show; performance; to perform; to act	6
别的	別的	biéde	adj.	other; else	1
冰雕	冰雕	bīngdiāo	n.	ice sculpture	3
饼干	餅乾	bǐnggān	n.	biscuit; cracker; cookie	4
不但…… 而且……	不但…… 而且……	búdàn… érqiě…	misc.	not only (...but also...)	3
不到长城 非好汉	不到長城 非好漢	búdào Chángchéng fēi hǎohàn	phr.	until you reach the Great Wall, you're not a proper person; to get over difficulties before reaching the goal	10
不得了	不得了	bùdéliǎo	adj.	desperately serious; disastrous; extremely	6
不管	不管	bùguǎn	conj.	no matter; regardless of	6
不过	不過	búguò	conj.	but; however	3
不好意思	不好意思	bù hǎoyìsi	phr./adj.	to feel embarrassed; to find it embarrassing; to be sorry (for inconveniencing someone)	2
不落人后	不落人後	búluò-rénhòu	idiom	not fall behind	2
不同	不同	bùtóng	adj./n.	different; distinct; not the same; not alike	7
不用	不用	bú yòng	mv.	need not	5

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
部	部	bù	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for works of art, like movies, literature, etc.	7
C					
菜单	菜單	càidān	<i>n.</i>	menu	4
参观	參觀	cānguān	<i>v.</i>	to look around; to tour; to visit	1
餐馆	餐館	cānguǎn	<i>n.</i>	restaurant	3
餐厅	餐廳	cāntīng	<i>n.</i>	dining hall; dining room; restaurant	1
操场	操場	cāochǎng	<i>n.</i>	sports field	1
草坪	草坪	cǎopíng	<i>n.</i>	lawn	9
长	長	cháng	<i>adj.</i>	long	1
长城	長城	Chángchéng	<i>pn.</i>	the Great Wall	10
尝	嘗	cháng	<i>v.</i>	to taste; to try	4
场	場	chǎng	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for sporting or recreational activities	8
超人	超人	Chāorén	<i>pn.</i>	Superman	7
吵架	吵架	chǎo jià	<i>vo.</i>	to quarrel; to have a row; quarrel	9
成语	成語	chéngyǔ	<i>n.</i>	Chinese set expression, typically of four characters, often alluding to a story or historical quotation; idiom; proverb	3
城市	城市	chéngshì	<i>n.</i>	city; town	6
吃素	吃素	chī sù	<i>vo.</i>	to be a vegetarian	4
冲	沖	chōng	<i>v.</i>	to flush; to rinse	9
出门	出門	chū mén	<i>vo.</i>	to go out; to leave home	5
穿	穿	chuān	<i>v.</i>	to wear; to put on	5
传统	傳統	chuántǒng	<i>n./adj.</i>	tradition; traditional	7

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
船	船	chuán	<i>n.</i>	boat; vessel; ship	10
窗户	窗戶	chuānghu	<i>n.</i>	window	9
从	從	cóng	<i>prep.</i>	from	1
从……做起	從……做起	cóng…zuò qǐ	<i>misc.</i>	start with...; begin with...	9
从来	從來	cónglái	<i>adv.</i>	from past till present; always; at all times; never (if used in negative sentence)	7
醋	醋	cù	<i>n.</i>	vinegar	4
D					
打包	打包	dǎ bāo	<i>vo.</i>	to wrap food up; to go (food)	4
打赌	打賭	dǎ dǔ	<i>vo.</i>	to bet; to make a bet	8
打工	打工	dǎ gōng	<i>vo.</i>	to have a part-time job; to have a job outside of class time, or during vacation	10
打卡	打卡	dǎ kǎ	<i>vo.</i>	(on social media) to check in to a location	6
打气	打氣	dǎ qì	<i>vo.</i>	to encourage; to boost morale	8
打算	打算	dǎsuàn	<i>v./n.</i>	to plan; to intend; plan; intention	10
打赢	打贏	dǎyíng	<i>vc.</i>	to beat	8
打折	打折	dǎ zhé	<i>vo.</i>	to give a discount	5
大部分	大部分	dàbùfen	<i>n.</i>	in large part; the majority; most of...	10
大家	大家	dàjiā	<i>pron.</i>	everyone	2
大礼堂	大禮堂	dàlǐtáng	<i>n.</i>	auditorium; assembly hall	1
大楼	大樓	dàlóu	<i>n.</i>	building (a relatively large, multi-story one)	9

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
带	帶	dài	v.	to lead; to bring; to carry; to take along	1
待	待	dāi	v.	to stay	10
担心	擔心	dānxīn	vo./adj.	to worry; to be anxious; worried; anxious	10
单车	單車	dānchē	n.	bike; bicycle	6
但是	但是	dànshì	conj.	but; however	3
当	當	dāng	v.	to be; to act as	9
当然	當然	dāngrán	adv.	of course	2
道	道	dào	mw.	a measure word for courses in a meal	4
得(分)	得(分)	dé(fēn)	v.	to score; to get (score)	8
地道	地道	dìdao	adj.	authentic; genuine	4
地方	地方	dìfang	n.	place	1
地方风俗	地方風俗	dìfāng fēngsú	n.	local custom	7
灯	燈	dēng	n.	lamp; light	9
等不及	等不及	děngbují	vc.	cannot wait	10
低	低	dī	adj.	low	3
第	第	dì		a prefix, indicates ordinal number, e.g., first, number two, etc.	5
点	點	diǎn	v.	to order (food in a restaurant)	4
点歌	點歌	diǎn gē	vo.	to choose a song; to request a song	7
点赞	點讚	diǎn zàn	vo.	to like (on social media)	6
电费	電費	diànfèi	n.	electricity bill	9
电风扇	電風扇	diànfēngshàn	n.	electric fan	9

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
订	訂	dìng	v.	to book (tickets, hotels, etc.); to reserve; to order	10
东西	東西	dōngxi	n.	thing; stuff	2
冬天	冬天	dōngtiān	n.	winter	3
豆腐	豆腐	dòufu	n.	tofu	4
读	讀	dú	v.	to read; to study	2
度	度	dù	n.	degree (temperature)	3
对面	對面	duìmiàn	n.	opposite side; across (the street); to be face to face	1
多	多	duō	adv.	how (to what extent)	3
多久	多久	duō jiǔ	pron.	how long?	6
E					
饿	餓	è	adj./v.	hungry; to be hungry	4
而且	而且	érqiě	conj.	(not only...) but also; moreover; in addition; furthermore	2
二胡	二胡	èrhú	n.	erhu (Chinese two-string fiddle)	7
二维码	二維碼	èrwéimǎ	n.	two-dimensional barcode; QR code	5
F					
法文	法文	Fǎwén	n.	French (language)	1
放	放	fàng	v.	to put	6
放假	放假	fàng jià	vo.	to have a holiday or vacation	10
飞	飛	fēi	v.	to fly	10
分钟	分鐘	fēnzhōng	n.	minute	1
粉丝	粉絲	fěnsī	n.	fan	7
风格	風格	fēnggé	n.	style	7

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
风景	風景	fēngjǐng	<i>n.</i>	scenery; landscape	10
疯	瘋	fēng	<i>adj.</i>	insane; crazy	8
服务	服務	fúwù	<i>v./n.</i>	service; to serve	4
服务员	服務員	fúwùyuán	<i>n.</i>	waiter; waitress	4
付	付	fù	<i>v.</i>	to pay	4
附近	附近	fùjìn	<i>n.</i>	vicinity; nearby; neighboring; nearby area	5
G					
感人	感人	gǎnrén	<i>adj.</i>	touching; moving	7
橄榄球	橄欖球	gǎnlǎnqiú	<i>n.</i>	American football	8
干	乾	gān	<i>adj.</i>	dry	3
刚才	剛才	gāngcái	<i>t.</i>	(just) a moment ago; just now	6
刚刚	剛剛	gānggāng	<i>adv.</i>	just recently; just a moment ago	7
钢琴	鋼琴	gāngqín	<i>n.</i>	piano	2
高	高	gāo	<i>adj.</i>	high	3
高铁	高鐵	gāotiě	<i>n.</i>	high speed rail	6
高中	高中	gāozhōng	<i>n.</i>	senior high school	8
搞笑	搞笑	gǎoxiào	<i>adj.</i>	to get people to laugh; funny; hilarious	7
告诉	告訴	gàosu	<i>v.</i>	to tell; to inform; to let know	5
歌词	歌詞	gēcí	<i>n.</i>	lyrics	7
歌手	歌手	gēshǒu	<i>n.</i>	singer	7
给	給	gěi	<i>prep.</i>	to; for	4
公园	公園	gōngyuán	<i>n.</i>	park (for public recreation)	3
共享	共享	gòngxiǎng	<i>v.</i>	to share	6

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
共享单车	共享單車	gòngxiǎng-dānchē	<i>n.</i>	shared bike; bike-sharing	6
够	夠	gòu	<i>adj.</i>	enough	4
孤单	孤單	gūdān	<i>adj.</i>	lonely	10
古筝	古箏	gǔzhēng	<i>n.</i>	zither or guzheng	7
刮风	颳風	guā fēng	<i>vo.</i>	to be windy	3
关	關	guān	<i>v.</i>	to close; to shut; to turn off	9
冠军	冠軍	guànjūn	<i>n.</i>	champion	8
光临	光臨	guānglín	<i>v.</i>	to honor with one's presence	4
逛	逛	guàng	<i>v.</i>	to stroll; to visit	5
逛街	逛街	guàng jiē	<i>vo.</i>	to window-shop; to stroll down the street	5
贵	貴	guì	<i>adj.</i>	expensive	5
国际	國際	guójì	<i>adj.</i>	international	1
国际学校	國際學校	guójì xuéxiào	<i>n.</i>	international school	1
过	過	guò	<i>p.</i>	(particle used after a verb to indicate a past experience)	3
过敏	過敏	guòmǐn	<i>v.</i>	to be allergic to	4
H					
哈	哈	hā	<i>interj.</i>	ha	1
哈尔滨	哈爾濱	Hā'ěrbīn	<i>pn.</i>	Harbin, subprovincial city and capital of Heilongjiang province 黑龙江 in northeast China	3
还是	還是	háishi	<i>adv.</i>	still	5
海鲜	海鮮	hǎixiān	<i>n.</i>	seafood	4
喊	喊	hǎn	<i>v.</i>	to yell; to shout	8
杭州	杭州	Hángzhōu	<i>pn.</i>	Hangzhou	10

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
好不容易	好不容易	hǎo bù róngyì	<i>phr.</i>	with great difficulty; very difficult	8
好处	好處	hǎochù	<i>n.</i>	advantage; benefit	5
号	號	hào	<i>n.</i>	size	5
合适	合適	héshì	<i>adj.</i>	suitable; fitting; appropriate	5
红	紅	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	popular	7
红	紅	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	red	3
红烧	紅燒	hóngshāo	<i>v.</i>	to braise or stew in soy sauce	4
后来	後來	hòulái	<i>t.</i>	afterwards; later	8
后来居上	後來居上	hòulái-jūshè àng	<i>idiom</i>	to catch up from behind	8
后卫	後衛	hòuwèi	<i>n.</i>	guard in a basketball team	8
花	花	huā	<i>n.</i>	flower	9
花	花	huā	<i>v.</i>	to spend (money, time)	5
华氏度	華氏度	huáshìdù	<i>n.</i>	Fahrenheit	3
华裔	華裔	huáyì	<i>n.</i>	ethnic Chinese	8
化学	化學	huàxué	<i>n.</i>	chemistry	2
话	話	huà	<i>n.</i>	spoken words; talk; words	5
欢迎	歡迎	huānyíng	<i>v.</i>	to welcome	1
环游世界	環遊世界	huányóu shìjiè	<i>phr.</i>	to travel around the world	10
换	換	huàn	<i>v.</i>	to exchange; to change	5
黄	黃	huáng	<i>adj.</i>	yellow	7
活动	活動	huódòng	<i>n.</i>	activity	2
火	火	huǒ	<i>adj./n.</i>	hot (popular); fire	6
火锅	火鍋	huǒguō	<i>n.</i>	hot pot	6

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
或者	或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (used in statements)	7
J					
机会	機會	jīhuì	n.	opportunity; chance	8
机票	機票	jīpiào	n.	air ticket	10
机器人	機器人	jīqìrén	n.	robot	2
激烈	激烈	jīliè	adj.	(of competition or fighting) intense	8
极	極	jí	adv.	extremely	3
计划	計劃	jìhuà	v.	to plan	10
	計畫	jìhuà	n.	plan	10
季节	季節	jìjié	n.	season	3
家	家	jiā	mw.	a measure word for businesses	4
家电	家電	jiādiàn	n.	household electric appliance	9
价格	價格	jiàgé	n.	price	6
见面	見面	jiàn miàn	vo.	to meet; to see each other	6
件	件	jiàn	mw.	a measure word for clothes	5
将来	將來	jiānglái	t./n.	in the future; future; the future	5
浇	澆	jiāo	v.	to water the plants; to water	9
浇花	澆花	jiāo huā	vo.	to water the flowers	9
骄傲	驕傲	jiāo'ào	n./adj.	pride; proud of something	8
脚	腳	jiǎo	n.	foot	3
教练	教練	jiàoliàn	n.	sports coach; trainer	8
教室	教室	jiàoshì	n.	classroom	1
节	節	jié	mw.	a measure word for class periods	2

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
节能	節能	jiénéng	v./adj.	to save energy; energy-saving	9
节约	節約	jiéyuē	v.	to conserve (resources); to economize	9
节约用电	節約用電	jiéyuēyòng diàn	phr.	to save electricity	9
节奏	節奏	jiézòu	n.	rhythm; tempo	7
结果	結果	jiéguǒ	n./conj.	outcome; result; in the end; as a result	8
结局	結局	jiéjú	n.	ending	7
结束	結束	jiéshù	v.	to finish; to end; to conclude	8
介绍	介紹	jièshào	v./n.	to introduce; introduction	9
紧张	緊張	jǐnzhāng	adj.	nervous	8
进入	進入	jìnrù	v.	to enter; to join; to go into	5
京剧	京劇	jīngjù	n.	Beijing Opera	7
精彩	精彩	jīngcǎi	adj.	wonderful; marvelous; brilliant	7
精神	精神	jīngshén	n.	spirit	8
景点	景點	jǐngdiǎn	n.	scenic spot; place of interest (tourism)	10
句	句	jù	mw.	a measure word for phrases or lines of verse	5
剧情	劇情	jùqíng	n.	story line; plot	7
决定	決定	juédìng	v./n.	to decide; decision	10
K					
KTV	KTV	KTV	n.	karaoke television; karaoke bar	7
卡	卡	kǎ	n.	card	4
卡拉OK	卡拉OK	kǎlā OK	n.	karaoke	7
开	開	kāi	v.	to open (a shop)	6

Vocabulary Index (Chinese-English)

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
开	開	kāi	v.	to open; to start; to turn on	9
开始	開始	kāishǐ	v./n.	to begin; to start; beginning	5
开心	開心	kāixīn	v./adj.	to feel happy	4
烤	烤	kǎo	v.	to roast; to bake; to grill	4
科学	科學	kēxué	n.	science	2
可能	可能	kěnéng	mv./adj.	may (happen); possible; probable; maybe; perhaps	3
客人	客人	kèrén	n.	customer; guest; visitor	4
空调	空調	kōngtiáo	n.	air conditioning; air conditioner	9
块	塊	kuài	mw.	a measure word for the basic Chinese monetary unit	4
L					
拉	拉	lā	v.	to play (a bowed instrument); to pull	7
辣	辣	là	adj.	spicy	4
啦啦队	啦啦隊	lālādùì	n.	cheerleading squad	8
蓝	藍	lán	adj.	blue	7
浪费	浪費	làngfèi	v.	to waste; to squander	9
冷	冷	lěng	adj.	cold	3
离	離	lí	v.	to be away from; (in giving distances) from	1
礼物	禮物	lǐwù	n.	gift; present	10
历史	歷史	lìshǐ	n.	history	2
连……都……	連……都……	lián...dōu...	misc.	even	5
凉快	涼快	liángkuài	adj.	nice and cold; pleasantly cool	3

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
林来疯	林來瘋	Lín Láifēng	<i>pn.</i>	Linsanity; craze over Jeremy Lin	8
林书豪	林書豪	Lín Shūháo	<i>pn.</i>	Jeremy Lin	8
另外	另外	lìngwài	<i>conj.</i>	furthermore; in addition	9
留言	留言	liú yán	<i>vo./n.</i>	to leave a message; to leave one's comments; message	6
流行	流行	liúxíng	<i>adj.</i>	(of a style of clothing, song, etc.) popular; fashionable	7
轮	輪	lún	<i>v.</i>	to take turns; to rotate; by turn	6
旅行	旅行	lǚxíng	<i>v./n.</i>	to travel; trip; journey	10
旅游	旅遊	lǚyóu	<i>v./n.</i>	to travel; trip; journey	10
M					
麻烦	麻煩	máfan	<i>v./adj.</i>	to trouble or bother somebody; troublesome	4
麻婆豆腐	麻婆豆腐	mápo dòufu	<i>n.</i>	Mapo tofu	4
马上	馬上	mǎshàng	<i>adv.</i>	at once; right away; immediately	4
马桶	馬桶	mǎtǒng	<i>n.</i>	toilet	9
蚂蚁	螞蟻	mǎyǐ	<i>n.</i>	ant	4
蚂蚁上树	螞蟻上樹	mǎyǐ hàngshù	<i>n.</i>	“Ants climbing a tree,” a Sichuan dish made with bean vermicelli and ground meat	4
买	買	mǎi	<i>v.</i>	to buy; to purchase	5
买单	買單	mǎi dān	<i>vo.</i>	to take the check; to pay the restaurant bill	4
慢	慢	màn	<i>adj.</i>	slow	4
每	每	měi	<i>pron.</i>	every; each	1
每天	每天	měi tiān	<i>t.</i>	every day	1

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
美	美	měi	adj.	beautiful	3
美术	美術	měishù	n.	art; fine arts	2
美元	美元	měiyuán	n.	American dollar; US dollar	5
门	門	mén	mw.	a measure word for academic courses or subjects	2
米饭	米飯	mǐfàn	n.	(cooked) rice	4
免	免	miǎn	v.	to exempt	5
面	麵	miàn	n.	noodle	4
面条	麵條	miàntiáo	n.	noodles	6
名胜古迹	名勝古蹟	míngshèng-gǔjì	n.	historical sites and scenic spots	10
明星	明星	míngxīng	n.	star; celebrity	8
茉莉	茉莉	Mòlì	pn.	character's name	1
N					
拿	拿	ná	v.	to win (an award); to take	8
奶茶	奶茶	nǎichá	n.	milk tea	8
奶奶	奶奶	nǎinai	n.	father's mother; paternal grandmother	7
难怪	難怪	nánguài	adv.	(it's) no wonder (that...); (it's) not surprising (that)	1
嫩	嫩	nèn	adj.	tender; soft	4
牛肉	牛肉	niúròu	n.	beef	4
牛肉面	牛肉麵	niúròumiàn	n.	beef noodles	4
努力	努力	nǔlì	adj.	great effort; to try hard; to strive	8
O					
哦	哦	ò	interj.	oh	1

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
偶像	偶像	ǒuxiàng	<i>n.</i>	idol	7
P					
爬	爬	pá	<i>v.</i>	to climb; to crawl; to get up	10
怕	怕	pà	<i>v.</i>	to be afraid; to fear	3
拍	拍	pāi	<i>v.</i>	to shoot (a film)	7
排队	排隊	pái duì	<i>vo.</i>	to line up	6
排放	排放	páifàng	<i>v.</i>	to discharge; to exhaust	9
盘	盤	pán	<i>mw./n.</i>	a measure word for food; plate; dish	4
旁边	旁邊	pángbiān	<i>n.</i>	side; beside	1
跑步	跑步	pǎo bù	<i>vo.</i>	to run; to jog	1
泡	泡	pào	<i>v.</i>	to soak	3
泡澡	泡澡	pào zǎo	<i>vo.</i>	to take a bath	9
陪	陪	péi	<i>v.</i>	to accompany; to keep sb company	10
配音	配音	pèi yīn	<i>vo.</i>	dubbing (filmmaking)	7
皮影	皮影	píyǐng	<i>n.</i>	shadow puppetry	7
皮影戏	皮影戲	píyǐngxì	<i>n.</i>	shadow puppet play	7
便宜	便宜	piányi	<i>adj.</i>	cheap; inexpensive	5
片	片	piàn	<i>n.</i>	thin piece; flake; a slice	6
票	票	piào	<i>n.</i>	ticket	6
频道	頻道	píndào	<i>n.</i>	(television, video) channel	6
平板电脑	平板電腦	píngbǎn diànnǎo	<i>n.</i>	tablet computer	6
平常	平常	píngcháng	<i>adv.</i>	usually	7
平分	平分	píng fēn	<i>vo.</i>	to tie; to have tied score	8

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
评分	評分	píngfēn	<i>n./vo.</i>	rating; to rate; to grade; to score	7
苹果	蘋果	píngguǒ	<i>n.</i>	apple	7
Q					
期待	期待	qīdài	<i>v./n.</i>	to look forward to; to expect; expectation	10
骑	騎	qí	<i>v.</i>	to ride (a horse, bike, etc.)	6
起来	起來	qǐlái		(after a perception verb, e.g., 看) expressing preliminary judgment	2
气温	氣溫	qìwēn	<i>n.</i>	temperature	3
钱	錢	qián	<i>n.</i>	money	4
钱包	錢包	qiánbāo	<i>n.</i>	purse; wallet	5
强	強	qiáng	<i>adj.</i>	strong; powerful	8
亲爱的	親愛的	qīn'ài de	<i>adj.</i>	dear	10
青菜	青菜	qīngcài	<i>n.</i>	green vegetables	6
青春	青春	qīngchūn	<i>adj./n.</i>	young; youth; youthfulness	7
轻快	輕快	qīngkuài	<i>adj.</i>	light and quick; lively	7
轻松	輕鬆	qīngsōng	<i>adj.</i>	light; relaxed; effortless	2
晴天	晴天	qíngtiān	<i>n.</i>	clear sky; sunny day	3
秋天	秋天	qiūtiān	<i>n.</i>	autumn	3
球赛	球賽	qiú sài	<i>n.</i>	ball game	8
去年	去年	qùnián	<i>t.</i>	last year	3
缺	缺	quē	<i>v.</i>	lack; to run short of	9
裙子	裙子	qúnzi	<i>n.</i>	skirt	5
R					
然后	然後	ránhòu	<i>conj.</i>	then (afterward); after that	2

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
热闹	熱鬧	rènao	adj.	bustling with noise and excitement; lively	10
人山人海	人山人海	rénshān-rénhǎi	idiom	vast crowds of people	10
认为	認為	rènwéi	v.	to think; to consider	9
日常	日常	rìcháng	adj.	daily; everyday	9
日常生活	日常生活	rìcháng shēnghuó	n.	daily life	9
日记	日記	rìjì	n.	diary	8
如果……的话	如果……的話	rúguǒ...dehuà	misc.	if (coming after a conditional clause)	2
S					
三代同堂	三代同堂	sān dài tóngtáng	phr.	three generations under one roof	10
晒太阳	曬太陽	shài tàiyáng	vo.	to be in the sun (getting warm or sunbathing, etc.)	3
商场	商場	shāngchǎng	n.	shopping mall; shopping center; department store	5
商店	商店	shāngdiàn	n.	store; shop	5
上班	上班	shàng bān	vo.	to go to work; to be on duty	6
上半场	上半場	shàng bàn chǎng	n.	first half (of a game)	8
上菜	上菜	shàng cài	vo.	to serve food	6
上海	上海	Shànghǎi	pn.	Shanghai	1
上网	上網	shàng wǎng	vo.	to go online; to surf the Internet	5
上午	上午	shàngwǔ	t.	morning	5
上学	上學	shàng xué	vo.	to go to school; to attend school	1
烧开	燒開	shāokāi	vc.	to boil	6

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
社区	社區	shèqū	<i>n.</i>	community; neighborhood	10
社区服务	社區服務	shèqū fúwù	<i>n.</i>	community service	10
社团	社團	shètuán	<i>n.</i>	club	2
谁说的	誰說的	shéi shuō de	<i>phr.</i>	who said that	2
身边	身邊	shēnbiān	<i>n.</i>	at one's side; around	10
什么样	什麼樣	shénmeyàng	<i>pron.</i>	what kind? what sort? what appearance?	7
生活	生活	shēnghuó	<i>n.</i>	life; livelihood	9
生气	生氣	shēngqì	<i>vo./adj.</i>	to get angry; angry	9
省	省	shěng	<i>v.</i>	to save; to economize	9
湿	濕	shī	<i>adj.</i>	wet; moist	3
时代	時代	shídài	<i>n.</i>	era; age	5
时候	時候	shíhou	<i>n.</i>	(a point in) time; moment;(a duration of) time	2
实体店	實體店	shítǐdiàn	<i>n.</i>	physical (rather than online) retail store	5
实验	實驗	shíyàn	<i>n./v.</i>	experiment; to experiment	2
世界	世界	shìjiè	<i>n.</i>	world	10
市中心	市中心	shìzhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	city center; downtown	5
试	試	shì	<i>v.</i>	to try; to test	3
收据	收據	shōujù	<i>n.</i>	receipt	5
收看	收看	shōukàn	<i>v.</i>	to watch (a TV program, a video)	6
手	手	shǒu	<i>n.</i>	hand	2
手工	手工	shǒugōng	<i>n.</i>	handcraft	10
手撕包菜	手撕包菜	shǒusī bāocài	<i>n.</i>	Hand-torn stir-fried cabbage	4

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
受伤	受傷	shòu shāng	vo./adj.	to sustain injuries; wounded; harmed	8
叔叔	叔叔	shūshu	n.	father's younger brother; uncle	7
舒服	舒服	shūfu	adj.	comfortable	3
输	輸	shū	v.	to lose	8
蔬菜	蔬菜	shūcài	n.	vegetables	4
暑假	暑假	shǔjià	n.	summer vacation	10
树	樹	shù	n.	tree	4
数学	數學	shùxué	n.	mathematics	2
数字	數字	shùzì	n.	number	4
刷	刷	shuā	v.	to swipe; to brush	4
刷卡	刷卡	shuā kǎ	vo.	to pay by credit card	4
涮	涮	shuàn	v.	to cook by dipping finely sliced ingredients briefly in boiling water or soup	6
双	雙	shuāng	mw./adj.	a measure word for a pair; double; pair	5
水龙头	水龍頭	shuǐlóngtóu	n.	faucet	9
水桶	水桶	shuǐtǒng	n.	bucket	9
说话	說話	shuō huà	vo.	to speak; to say; to talk	7
撕	撕	sī	v.	to tear	4
送	送	sòng	v.	to deliver; to send	10
送	送	sòng	v.	to give (as a present)	4
苏州	蘇州	Sūzhōu	pn.	Suzhou	10
酸	酸	suān	adj.	sour	4
酸辣汤	酸辣湯	suānlàtāng	n.	sour and spicy soup	4

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
算了	算了	suàn le	<i>phr.</i>	forget it; never mind	4
随手	隨手	suíshǒu	<i>adv.</i>	without extra effort, at someone's convenience	9
孙悟空	孫悟空	Sūn Wùkōng	<i>pn.</i>	Sun Wukong, the Monkey King, a character in the novel <i>Journey to the West</i>	7
孙子	孫子	sūnzi	<i>n.</i>	grandson	7
T					
T恤衫	T恤衫	T xù shān	<i>n.</i>	T-shirt	5
太棒了	太棒了	tài bàng le	<i>phr.</i>	That's wonderful! That's terrific!	6
太阳	太陽	tàiyáng	<i>n.</i>	sun	3
弹	彈	tán	<i>v.</i>	to strum; to play (a string instrument); to pluck	7
碳	碳	tàn	<i>n.</i>	carbon	9
碳排放	碳排放	tànpáifàng	<i>n.</i>	carbon emission	9
汤	湯	tāng	<i>n.</i>	soup	4
汤底	湯底	tāngdǐ	<i>n.</i>	soup base	6
糖	糖	táng	<i>n.</i>	sugar; candy	4
糖醋鱼	糖醋魚	tángcùyú	<i>n.</i>	sweet and sour fish	4
讨价还价	討價還價	tǎojià-huánjià	<i>v.</i>	to bargain; to haggle over price	5
特别	特別	tèbié	<i>adv./adj.</i>	especially; special; particular; unusual	1
特色菜	特色菜	tèsècài	<i>n.</i>	specialty; signature dish	4
题目	題目	tímù	<i>n.</i>	topic; title	9
体育	體育	tǐyù	<i>n.</i>	physical education; sports	1
体育馆	體育館	tǐyùguǎn	<i>n.</i>	gymnasium; stadium	1

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
天气	天氣	tiānqì	<i>n.</i>	weather	3
天堂	天堂	tiāntáng	<i>n.</i>	heaven	10
天下	天下	tiānxià	<i>n.</i>	the whole world	5
条	條	tiáo	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for long thin things (pants, skirts, ribbon, river, road, etc.)	5
听起来	聽起來	tīng qǐlái	<i>vc.</i>	to sound like	2
停车场	停車場	tíngchēchǎng	<i>n.</i>	parking lot	1
挺	挺	tǐng	<i>adv.</i>	very; quite; rather	5
同意	同意	tóngyì	<i>v.</i>	to agree; to consent; to approve	5
投篮	投籃	tóu lán	<i>vo.</i>	to shoot for the basket (basketball)	8
土豆	土豆	tǔdòu	<i>n.</i>	potato	6
土豆片	土豆片	tǔdòupiàn	<i>n.</i>	potato slice	6
团队	團隊	tuánduì	<i>n.</i>	team	8
团体	團體	tuántǐ	<i>n.</i>	group	7
推荐	推薦	tuījiàn	<i>v.</i>	to recommend; recommendation	6
退步	退步	tuìbù	<i>v.</i>	to do less well than before; to make a concession	2
拖鞋	拖鞋	tuōxié	<i>n.</i>	slippers; flip-flops	7
W					
外公	外公	wàigōng	<i>n.</i>	mother's father; maternal grandfather	9
外国	外國	wàiguó	<i>n.</i>	foreign country	1
外婆	外婆	wàipó	<i>n.</i>	mother's mother; maternal grandmother	9
外滩	外灘	Wàitān	<i>pn.</i>	the Shanghai Bund or Waitan	10

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
完	完	wán	v.	(after a verb) finisheddoing...; to finish	2
晚	晚	wǎn	adj.	late	2
晚自习	晚自習	wǎnzìxí	n.	evening study hall	2
碗	碗	wǎn	mw./ n.	a measure word for dishes; bowl	4
碗盘	碗盤	wǎn pán	n.	dishes; bowl and plate	9
网店	網店	wǎngdiàn	n.	online shop	5
网上	網上	wǎng shàng	n.	online	5
为…… 加油	為…… 加油	wèi…jiā yóu	misc.	cheer for...	8
位	位	wèi	mw.	a measure word for people	4
味道	味道	wèidào	n.	flavor; smell	4
文化	文化	wénhuà	n.	culture	2
文章	文章	wénzhāng	n.	article; essay	2
物理	物理	wùlǐ	n.	physics	2
X					
西班牙文	西班牙文	Xībānyáwén	n.	Spanish (language)	1
西湖	西湖	Xīhú	pn.	Xihu or West Lake in Hangzhou	10
嘻哈	嘻哈	xīhā	n.	hip hop	7
习惯	習慣	xíguàn	v./n.	to be used to; habit; custom	5
洗脑	洗腦	xǐ nǎo	adj./vo.	catchy; hooked; brainwashing; to brainwash	7
洗手	洗手	xǐ shǒu	vo.	to wash one's hands	9
洗碗机	洗碗機	xǐwǎnjī	n.	dishwasher	9
洗衣机	洗衣機	xǐyījī	n.	washer; washing machine	9

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
洗澡	洗澡	xǐ zǎo	vo.	to take a shower; to bathe	9
戏	戲	xì	n.	play	7
下半场	下半場	xià bàn chǎng	n.	second half (of a game)	8
下次	下次	xià cì	t.	next time	2
下单	下單	xià dān	vo.	to place an order; to order	5
下个	下個	xià gè	adj.	next	2
下课	下課	xià kè	vo.	to finish class; to get out of class	1
下午	下午	xiàwǔ	t.	afternoon; p.m.	2
下雪	下雪	xià xuě	vo.	to snow	3
下雨	下雨	xià yǔ	vo.	to rain	3
夏天	夏天	xiàtiān	n.	summer	3
先	先	xiān	adv.	first	2
咸	鹹	xián	adj.	salty	4
现代	現代	xiàndài	n.	modern times; modern age	7
现金	現金	xiànjīn	n.	cash	4
羡慕	羨慕	xiànmù	v.	to envy; to admire	10
香	香	xiāng	adj.	aromatic; used to describe food that smells good	4
想	想	xiǎng	v.	to miss (feel wistful about the absence of someone or something)	10
小费	小費	xiǎofèi	n.	tip	4
小看	小看	xiǎokàn	v.	to look down on; to underestimate	8
小时	小時	xiǎoshí	n.	hour	2
小时数	小時數	xiǎoshíshù	n.	hours of...	10

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
校园	校園	xiàoyuán	<i>n.</i>	campus	1
笑	笑	xiào	<i>v.</i>	to laugh; to smile	4
笑口常开	笑口常開	xiàokǒu-chángkāi	<i>idiom</i>	laugh and smile all the time	4
些	些	xiē	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word indicating a small amount	5
鞋子	鞋子	xiézi	<i>n.</i>	shoe	5
新闻	新聞	xīnwén	<i>n.</i>	news	9
新鲜	新鮮	xīnxiān	<i>adj.</i>	fresh	4
信用卡	信用卡	xìnyòngkǎ	<i>n.</i>	credit card	5
行程	行程	xíngchéng	<i>n.</i>	itinerary; course of a journey	10
需要	需要	xūyào	<i>v.</i>	to need; to demand; to require	10
旋律	旋律	xuánlǜ	<i>n.</i>	melody	7
选	選	xuǎn	<i>v.</i>	to choose; to pick; to select; to elect	2
学期	學期	xuéqī	<i>n.</i>	semester; term	2
雪景	雪景	xuějǐng	<i>n.</i>	snowscape	3
训练	訓練	xùnliàn	<i>v./n.</i>	to train; training	1
Y					
鸭	鴨	yā	<i>n.</i>	duck	4
严格	嚴格	yángé	<i>adj.</i>	strict	2
眼	眼	yǎn	<i>n.</i>	eyes	2
眼保健操	眼保健操	yǎnbǎojiàncāo	<i>n.</i>	eye exercises	2
眼睛	眼睛	yǎnjīng	<i>n.</i>	eyes	2
演	演	yǎn	<i>v.</i>	to act	7
演唱会	演唱會	yǎnchànghuì	<i>n.</i>	vocal recital or concert	7

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
演员	演員	yǎnyuán	<i>n.</i>	actor or actress; performer	7
羊肉	羊肉	yáng ròu	<i>n.</i>	lamb; goat meat	6
养老	養老	yǎng lǎo	<i>vo.</i>	to enjoy a life in retirement	10
养老院	養老院	yǎnglǎoyuàn	<i>n.</i>	nursing home	10
样式	樣式	yàngshì	<i>n.</i>	type; style	5
摇滚	搖滾	yáo gǔn	<i>n.</i>	rock 'n' roll	7
爷爷	爺爺	yéye	<i>n.</i>	father's father; paternal grandfather	7
一般	一般	yìbān	<i>adv.</i>	generally; in general	6
一共	一共	yí gòng	<i>adv.</i>	altogether	4
一会儿	一會兒	yíhuìr	<i>t.</i>	in a moment; a little while	1
一举两得	一舉兩得	yìjǔ-liǎngdé	<i>idiom</i>	one move, two gains; two birds with one stone	10
一叶知秋	一葉知秋	yíyè-zhīqiū	<i>idiom</i>	the falling of one leaf heralds the coming of autumn (idiom); a small sign can indicate a great trend	3
衣服	衣服	yīfu	<i>n.</i>	clothes	5
已经	已經	yǐjīng	<i>adv.</i>	already	6
以为	以為	yǐwéi	<i>v.</i>	to assume erroneously	8
意思	意思	yìsi	<i>n.</i>	meaning	4
阴天	陰天	yīntiān	<i>n.</i>	cloudy day	3
英雄	英雄	yīngxióng	<i>n.</i>	hero	8
赢	贏	yíng	<i>v.</i>	to beat; to win	8
邮件	郵件	yóujiàn	<i>n.</i>	email	10
邮轮	郵輪	yóulún	<i>n.</i>	cruise	10
游	遊	yóu	<i>v.</i>	to tour	10

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
友谊	友誼	yǒuyì	<i>n.</i>	friendship; companionship; fellowship	8
有的……	有的……	yǒude…	<i>misc.</i>	some..., others...	2
有的……	有的……	yǒude…			
有活力	有活力	yǒu huólì	<i>adj.</i>	energetic; vital	7
有名	有名	yǒumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous; well-known	4
有趣	有趣	yǒuqù	<i>adj.</i>	interesting	2
有时候	有時候	yǒushíhou	<i>adv.</i>	sometimes	6
有一点儿	有一點兒	yǒu yìdiǎnr	<i>adv.</i>	a bit; a little	2
右边	右邊	yòubiān	<i>n.</i>	right side; right	1
鱼	魚	yú	<i>n.</i>	fish	4
雨水	雨水	yǔshuǐ	<i>n.</i>	rainwater	9
预报	預報	yùbào	<i>v./n.</i>	to forecast; forecast	3
远	遠	yuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	far; distant	1
愿意	願意	yuànyì	<i>mv.</i>	to be willing	10
乐器	樂器	yuèqì	<i>n.</i>	musical instrument	7
运动	運動	yùndòng	<i>v./n.</i>	to exercise; sports; exercise	2
运费	運費	yùnfèi	<i>n.</i>	shipping fee	5
Z					
再	再	zài	<i>adv.</i>	then (after something, and not until then)	2
早操	早操	zǎocāo	<i>n.</i>	morning exercises (physical exercises commonly performed en masse at schools and workplaces in East Asian countries)	2

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
怎么回事 (儿)	怎麼回事 (兒)	zěnome huíshìr	phr.	what's the matter; what's going on; how could that be; how did that come about; what's it all about?	9
怎么了	怎麼了	zěnome le	phr.	what's up; what's going on; what happened?	9
长大	長大	zhǎngdà	vc.	to grow up	10
照顾	照顧	zhàogù	v.	to take care of; to look after	10
这样	這樣	zhèyàng	pron.	so; this way; like this	9
珍珠	珍珠	zhēnzhū	n.	pearl; tapioca bubble	8
珍珠奶茶	珍珠奶茶	zhēnzhū nǎichá	n.	bubble milk tea	8
智能	智能	zhìnéng	adj.	intelligent; smart (phone, system)	9
中国风	中國風	Zhōngguófēng	n.	Chinese style	7
中间	中間	zhōngjiān	n.	between; middle	1
中央	中央	zhōngyāng	adj.	central; middle; center	3
中央公园	中央公園	Zhōngyāng- gōngyuán	pn.	Central Park	3
中央空调	中央空調	zhōngyāng kōngtiáo	n.	central air-conditioning	9
终于	終於	zhōngyú	adv.	finally; ultimately; at last; in the end	6
重要	重要	zhòngyào	adj.	important; significant; major	8
主力	主力	zhǔlì	n.	main force; first team; leading player	8
主意	主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea; plan; decision	5
住	住	zhù	v.	to live	1
注意	注意	zhùyì	v./n.	to pay attention to; to notice; attention	9

Vocabulary Index (Chinese-English)

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
抓住	抓住	zhuāzhù	vc.	to grab; to capture	8
赚钱	賺錢	zhuàn qián	vo.	to earn money	10
装	裝	zhuāng	v.	to fill with; to take; to load; to pack	9
准	準	zhǔn	adj.	(shoot) well; accurate	8
自动	自動	zìdòng	adj./adv.	automatic; automatically	9
自习	自習	zìxí	v./n.	to self-study; study hall	1
走	走	zǒu	v.	to walk; to go	1
走路	走路	zǒu lù	vo.	to walk; to go on foot	6
最后	最後	zuìhòu	n.	final; last; finally; at the end	6
最少	最少	zuìshǎo	adv.	at least; minimum; lowest (amount)	6
左边	左邊	zuǒbiān	n.	left; the left side	1
做义工	做義工	zuò yìgōng	vo.	to be a volunteer; to do volunteer work	10

Supplementary Word Bank

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	Part of Speech	English	Lesson
B					
棒球	棒球	bàngqiú	<i>n.</i>	baseball	8
北	北	běi	<i>n.</i>	north	1
冰球	冰球	bīngqiú	<i>n.</i>	ice hockey	8
C					
裁判	裁判	cáipàn	<i>n.</i>	referee; umpire; judge (sports)	8
长笛	長笛	chángdí	<i>n.</i>	flute	7
长短	長短	chángduǎn	<i>n.</i>	length	5
炒饭	炒飯	chǎofàn	<i>n.</i>	fried rice	4
炒面	炒麵	chǎomiàn	<i>n.</i>	stir-fried noodles	4
衬衫	襯衫	chènshān	<i>n.</i>	shirt; blouse	5
吹	吹	chuī	<i>v.</i>	to blow	7
春天	春天	chūntiān	<i>n.</i>	spring (season)	3
刺激	刺激	cìjī	<i>adj./v.</i>	thrilling; exciting; to provoke	7
D					
打雷	打雷	dǎ léi	<i>vo.</i>	to rumble with thunder	3
戴	戴	dài	<i>v.</i>	to put on or wear (glasses, hat, gloves, accessories, etc.)	5
蛋	蛋	dàn	<i>n.</i>	egg	4
地理	地理	dìlǐ	<i>n.</i>	geography	2
地热	地熱	dìrè	<i>n.</i>	geothermal energy	9
笛子	笛子	dízi	<i>n.</i>	flute; bamboo flute	7

顶	頂	dǐng	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word for hats	5
东	東	dōng	<i>n.</i>	east	1
多久	多久	duōjiǔ	<i>pron.</i>	how long	1
多云	多雲	duōyún	<i>n.</i>	cloudy	3
F					
番茄锅	番茄鍋	fānqiéguō	<i>n.</i>	tomato broth pot	6
犯规	犯規	fàn guī	<i>vo.</i>	to break the rules; to foul; a foul	8
放	放	fàng	<i>v.</i>	to put	4
分享	分享	fēnxiǎng	<i>v.</i>	to share	6
风能	風能	fēngnéng	<i>n.</i>	wind power	9
服务	服務	fúwù	<i>n./v.</i>	service; to serve	2
G					
鼓	鼓	gǔ	<i>n.</i>	drum	7
H					
寒假	寒假	hánjià	<i>n.</i>	winter break	10
黑管	黑管	hēiguǎn	<i>n.</i>	clarinet	7
后面	後面	hòumiàn	<i>n.</i>	back; rear; behind	1
壶	壺	hú	<i>mw.</i>	a measure word meaning kettle or pot for water, tea, or other drinks	4
滑雪	滑雪	huá xuě	<i>v.</i>	to ski	3
J					
鸡肉	雞肉	jīròu	<i>n.</i>	chicken meat	4
吉他	吉他	jítā	<i>n.</i>	guitar	7
夹克	夾克	jiákè	<i>n.</i>	jacket	5
价钱	價錢	jiàqian	<i>n.</i>	price	5

节能减排	節能減排	jiénéng jiǎnpái	phr.	to save energy and reduce emissions	9
近	近	jìn	adj.	near; close to	1
K					
可再生 能源	可再生 能源	kězàishēng- néngyuán	n.	renewable energy	9
苦	苦	kǔ	adj.	bitter	4
裤子	褲子	kùzi	n.	trousers; pants	5
L					
喇叭	喇叭	lǎbā	n.	trumpet	7
捞	撈	lāo	v.	to scoop up	6
绿色能源	綠色能源	lǜsè-néngyuán	n.	green energy	9
M					
麻辣锅	麻辣鍋	málàguō	n.	spicy hot broth pot	6
毛衣	毛衣	máoyī	n.	sweater	5
帽子	帽子	màozǐ	n.	hat; cap	5
闷热	悶熱	mēnrè	adj.	muggy; stuffy	3
N					
南	南	nán	n.	south	1
能源	能源	néngyuán	n.	energy	9
牛仔裤	牛仔褲	niúzáikù	n.	jeans	5
暖和	暖和	nuǎnhuo	adj.	warm; nice and warm	3
P					
拍	拍	pāi	v.	to shoot (a film)	6
排球	排球	páiqiú	n.	volleyball	8
乒乓球	乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis; ping-pong	8

Q

前面	前面	qiánmiàn	<i>n.</i>	in front of; ahead	1
清淡	清淡	qīngdàn	<i>adj.</i>	light (taste)	4
清汤锅	清湯鍋	qīngtāngguō	<i>n.</i>	plain broth pot	6
清蒸鱼	清蒸魚	qīngzhēngyú	<i>n.</i>	steamed fish	4

R

热身	熱身	rè shēn	<i>vo.</i>	to warm up (sports)	8
----	----	---------	------------	---------------------	---

S

伞	傘	sǎn	<i>n.</i>	umbrella	3
扫码	掃碼	sǎo mǎ	<i>vo.</i>	to scan a QR code or barcode	6
闪电	閃電	shǎndiàn	<i>n.</i>	lightning	3
上面	上面	shàngmiàn	<i>n.</i>	on top of; above	1
摄氏度	攝氏度	shèshìdù	<i>n.</i>	Celsius	3
生物	生物	shēngwù	<i>n.</i>	biology; living creature	2
实习	實習	shíxí	<i>v./n.</i>	to intern; internship	10
售货员	售貨員	shòuhuòyuán	<i>n.</i>	salesperson	5
暑期学校	暑期學校	shǔqī xuéxiào	<i>n.</i>	summer school	10
水力	水力	shuǐlì	<i>n.</i>	hydropower; water power	9

T

太阳能	太陽能	tàiyángnéng	<i>n.</i>	solar energy	9
踢	踢	tī	<i>v.</i>	to kick; to play (soccer)	8
甜	甜	tián	<i>adj.</i>	sweet	4

W

袜子	襪子	wàzi	<i>n.</i>	socks; stockings	5
外套	外套	wàitào	<i>n.</i>	coat	5

网球	網球	wǎngqiú	<i>n.</i>	tennis	8
卫衣	衛衣	wèiyī	<i>n.</i>	sweatshirt	5
温度	溫度	wēndù	<i>n.</i>	temperature	9
温室气体	溫室氣體	wēnshì qìtǐ	<i>n.</i>	greenhouse gas	9
文学	文學	wénxué	<i>n.</i>	literature	2
雾	霧	wù	<i>n.</i>	fog; mist	3
X					
西	西	xī	<i>n.</i>	west	1
下面	下面	xiàmiàn	<i>n.</i>	under; below	1
夏令营	夏令營	xiàlìngyíng	<i>n.</i>	summer camp	10
小时	小時	xiǎoshí	<i>n.</i>	hour	1
小提琴	小提琴	xiǎotíqín	<i>n.</i>	violin	7
学生会	學生會	xuéshēnghuì	<i>n.</i>	student council	2
Y					
盐	鹽	yán	<i>n.</i>	salt	4
羊肉	羊肉	yáng ròu	<i>n.</i>	lamb; goat meat	4
义工	義工	yìgōng	<i>n.</i>	volunteer worker; volunteer work	2
意想不到	意想不到	yìxiǎng-búdào	<i>adj.</i>	unexpected; previously unimagined	7
饮料	飲料	yǐnliào	<i>n.</i>	drink; beverage	6
优美	優美	yōuměi	<i>adj.</i>	(music) beautiful	7
油	油	yóu	<i>adj./n.</i>	oily; greasy; oil	4
有意义	有意義	yǒu yìyì	<i>adj.</i>	meaningful; significant	10
羽毛球	羽毛球	yǔ máoqiú	<i>n.</i>	badminton	8
语文	語文	yǔwén	<i>n.</i>	literature and language	2

鸳鸯锅	鴛鴦鍋	yuānyāngguō	<i>n.</i>	“mandarin ducks” pot (hot pot with a divider, containing spicy soup on one side, mild soup on the other)	6
乐队	樂隊	yuèduì	<i>n.</i>	band	7
云	雲	yún	<i>n.</i>	cloud	3
Z					
暂停	暫停	zàntíng	<i>v.</i>	time-out (sports)	8
脏	髒	zāng	<i>adj.</i>	dirty	9
蘸料	蘸料	zhànliào	<i>n.</i>	dipping sauce	6
猪肉	豬肉	zhūròu	<i>n.</i>	pork	4
足球	足球	zúqiú	<i>n.</i>	soccer	8

Answer Keys

第一课 参观校园

厅 (hall, central room) : 音乐厅、餐厅

国：中国、美国、国宝、外国

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a

学 (school-related words) : 学校、学生、
上学、学期、放学

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 晚 2. 轻松 3. 放学 4. 下课 5. 无聊

C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b

D Word Search

How many can you find?



Lesson 3 Weather 第三课 天气

A Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

- 天 (weather) : 天气、阴天、晴天、雨天
天 (time expression) : 昨天、明天、今天、每天、白天、星期天
天 (seasons) : 春天、夏天、秋天、冬天

天 (others) : 聊天、天啊

可 miscellaneous : 可是、可爱、可以、可能

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 热 2. 干 3. 低 4. 晴天 5. 以后

C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. c

D Word Search

How many can you find?



Lesson 4 Eat at a Chinese Restaurant

第四课 在中国餐馆吃饭

A Vocabulary Categorization

What words can you use to describe Chinese dishes?

味道	做法	评价
酸、辣、咸、(甜)	红烧、糖醋、手撕、烤	地道、新鲜、香、嫩、有名、好吃、难吃

B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

道: 知道、味道、地道、一(道)菜
菜: 手撕包菜、蔬菜、菜单、特色菜、点菜、中国菜

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 饱 2. 慢 3. 麻烦

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. d 5. c

E Word Search

How many can you find?



Lesson 5 Shopping

第五课 买东西

A Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

网: 网店、网上、上网

意: 万事如意、有意思、不好意思、意思、主意、同意

样: 一样、怎么样、样式

店: 网店、实体店、商店

服: 舒服、服务、服务员、衣服

B Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 便宜 2. 慢 3. 小

C Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c

E Word Search

How many can you find?



Lesson 6 Go to Chinatown to Eat a Hot Pot

第六课 去中国城吃火锅

A Vocabulary Categorization

What transportation means can you brainstorm by using 坐、开、骑、走?

坐: 坐地铁、坐车、坐飞机、坐高铁、坐校车

开: 开车、开飞机

骑: 骑共享单车、骑马

走: 走路

B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

上: 上课、上学、上班、上网、上菜、蚂蚁上树、早上、上午、晚上、网上、上海

下: 下课、下次、下午、下雨、下雪、下单、天下、等一下

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 少 2. 后 3. 上班 4. 吃不下

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. c

E WordSearch

How many can you find?



Lesson 7 Film and Music

第七课 电影和音乐

A Vocabulary Categorization

1. What categories do the following words belong to? Movies or music or both? Put the letters in the bubbles.

电影: a, e, f, h, i, m.

音乐: b, c, d, g, j, k, l, m

2. What verbs can you use to say “play” in Mandarin Chinese? Fill in the blank below with a suitable verb.

打篮球 玩无人机 打/玩电脑游戏、
拉二胡 弹古筝 弹钢琴

B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

地: 地铁、地球、地方、地道、地方风俗

歌: 点歌、听歌、唱歌、歌手、歌词

唱: 唱歌、说唱、演唱会

乐 yuè: 音乐、音乐厅、乐器

乐 lè : 快乐

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 不同 2. 传统

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. b

E Word Search

How many can you find?

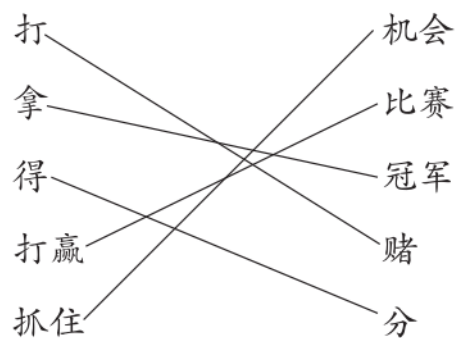


Lesson 8 Sports Game

第八课 运动比赛

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.



B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

结: 结局、结果、结束

比: 比较、比赛、比分

分: 分钟、评分、比分、平分

后: 后面、不落人后、然后、最后、

后来、后来居上、后卫、以后

队: 排队、校队、啦啦队

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 输 2. 结束 3. 下半场

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. c

E Word Search

How many can you find?

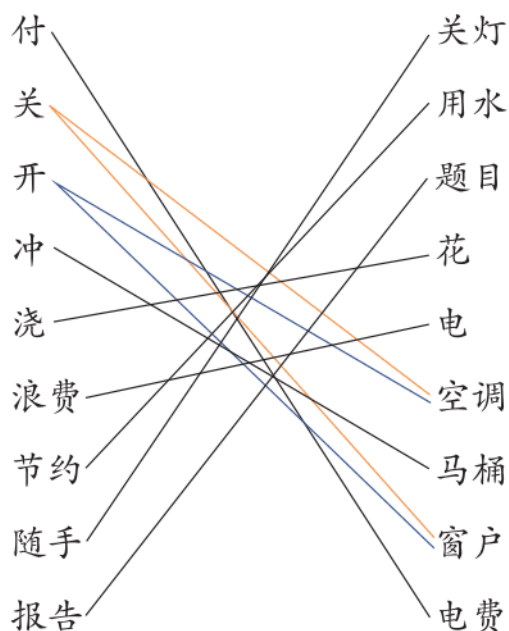


Lesson 9 Energy and Water Saving

第九课 省水省电

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.



B Vocabulary Expansion

What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

开 (to open) : 开店、开窗户、笑口常开
开 (to turn on): 开空调、开灯、开风扇、
开电脑、开电视、开洗衣机、开洗碗机
开 (others): 开车、开心、开始、烧开

洗：洗碗、洗澡、洗衣服、洗衣机、
洗碗机、洗手、洗脑

电：电脑、电视、电话、电影、电风扇、
家电、电费、平板电脑

机：无人机、飞机、手机、洗碗机、
洗衣机、机器人、机会

常：常常、非常、笑口常开、平常、日常生活

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 关 2. 记得 3. 节约 / 省

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a

E Word search

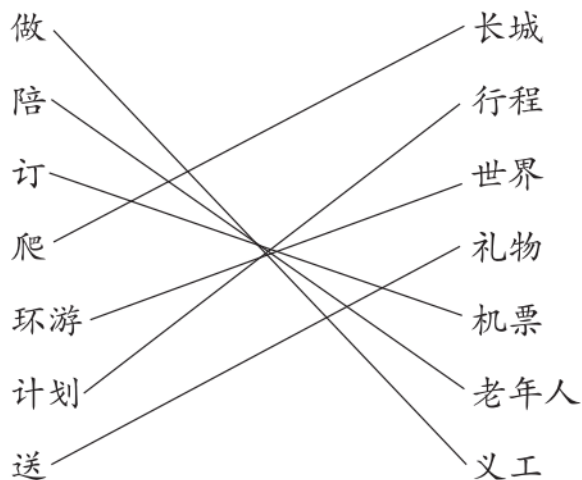
How many can you find?



Lesson 10 Summer Plan 第十课 暑假计划

A Vocabulary Collocation

Draw a line to match verbs with the proper objects.



B Vocabulary Expansion

1. What words can you think of with the character in the bubble?

打: 打游戏、打篮球、打电话、打字、
打包、打折、打卡、打赌、打气、
打算、打工

游: 游戏、游泳、旅游、环游世界、
游西湖

点: 有一点儿、点菜、点赞、点歌、景点

边: 一边、旁边、右边、左边

长 cháng: 多长时间、长城

长 zhǎng: 长大

2. Are you the "King of Idioms"? What are the idioms below?

(1) 一叶知秋

(2) 不落人后

(3) 笑口常开

(4) 后来居上

(5) 一举两得

(6) 人山人海

C Antonyms

What is the antonym of the following words?

1. 下 2. 孩子 3. 花钱

D Imposter Search

Can you spot the word that does not belong in the group? Circle it!

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. c

E Word Search

How many can you find?



项目策划：郝 运
项目统筹：陈万超 袁世奇
责任编辑：左玉齐
装帧设计：黄 莉 邱 彬
插画设计：尧一文化



Scan the QR code for audio recordings.
Additional complimentary learning and
teaching materials are available in:

<http://www.phoenixtree.com>

